

2010

# GS 460 / GS 350

OWNER'S MANUAL

# TABLE OF CONTENTS


| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | **Before driving** | Adjusting and operating features such as door locks, mirrors, and steering column |
| 2 | **When driving** | Driving, stopping and safe-driving information |
| 3 | **Interior features** | Air conditioning and audio systems, as well as other interior features for a comfortable driving experience |
| 4 | **Maintenance and care** | Cleaning and protecting your vehicle, performing do-it-yourself maintenance, and maintenance information |
| 5 | **When trouble arises** | What to do if the vehicle needs to be towed, gets a flat tire, or is involved in an accident |
| 6 | **Vehicle specifications** | Detailed vehicle information |
| 7 | **For owners** | Reporting safety defects for US owners and seat belt instructions for Canadian owners |
| | **Index** | Alphabetical listing of information contained in this manual |

## 1 Before driving

For your information ..... 18
Symbols used throughout this manual ..... 21

### 1-1. Key information

Keys ..... 24

### 1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

Smart access system with push-button start ..... 29
Wireless remote control ..... 41
Doors ..... 43
Trunk ..... 48

### 1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

Front seats ..... 53
Driving position memory system ..... 55
Head restraints ..... 60
Seat belts ..... 63
Steering wheel ..... 70
Inside rear view mirror ..... 71
Outside rear view mirrors ..... 73

### 1-4. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof

Power windows ..... 75
Moon roof ..... 78

### 1-5. Refueling

Opening the fuel tank cap ..... 82

### 1-6. Theft deterrent system

Immobilizer system ..... 85
Alarm ..... 87
Theft prevention labels (U.S.A.) ..... 90

### 1-7. Safety information

Correct driving posture ..... 91
SRS airbags ..... 93
Front passenger occupant classification system ..... 105
Child restraint systems ..... 110
Installing child restraints ..... 114

## 2 When driving

### 2-1. Driving procedures


Driving the vehicle ..... 126
Engine (ignition) switch ..... 135
Automatic transmission ..... 139
Turn signal lever ..... 144
Parking brake ..... 145
Horn ..... 146


### 2-2. Instrument cluster


Gauges and meters ..... 147
Indicators and warning lights ..... 151
Multi-information display ..... 154


### 2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers


Headlight switch ..... 157
Fog light switch ..... 160
Windshield wipers and washer ..... 161
Headlight cleaner switch ..... 166


### 2-4. Using other driving systems


Cruise control ..... 167
Dynamic radar cruise control ..... 171
Intuitive parking assist ..... 183
Rear view monitor system ..... 196
AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension System) ..... 199
Driving assist systems ..... 200
PCS (Pre-Collision System) ..... 207


### 2-5. Driving information


Cargo and luggage ..... 214
Vehicle load limits ..... 218
Winter driving tips ..... 219
Trailer towing ..... 224
Dinghy towing ..... 225


## 3 Interior features

### 3-1. Using the touch screen


Touch screen ..... 228
Setting the touch screen ..... 235

**3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger**

Automatic air conditioning system ..... 246
Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers ..... 255
Windshield wiper de-icer ..... 256

**3-3. Using the audio system**

Audio system type ..... 257
Using the radio ..... 260
Using the CD/DVD player ..... 269
Playing an audio CD ..... 272
Playing MP3 and WMA discs ..... 276
Playing DVD video/audio (with DVD player) ..... 280
Playing a video CD (with DVD player) ..... 294
CD/DVD player and DVD video disc information ..... 297
Listening to Bluetooth® audio ..... 308
Listening to a USB memory/ iPod® ..... 316
Optimal use of the audio/ video system ..... 326
Using the AUX port ..... 328
Using the steering switches ..... 329

**3-4. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)**

Hands-free system (for cellular phone) ..... 332
Using a Bluetooth® phone ..... 338
Setting the hands-free system (for cellular phone) ..... 353

**3-5. Using the interior lights**

Interior lights list ..... 382

**3-6. Using the storage features**

List of storage features ..... 385

**3-7. Other interior features**

Sun visors ..... 393
Vanity mirrors ..... 394
Clock ..... 395
Outside temperature display ..... 396
Ashtrays ..... 397
Cigarette lighter ..... 398
Power outlet ..... 399
Seat heaters/ventilators ..... 400
Armrest ..... 402
Rear sunshade ..... 403
Floor mats ..... 406
Trunk features ..... 408
Garage door opener ..... 411
Compass ..... 417
Safety Connect ..... 421

## 4 Maintenance and care

### 4-1. Maintenance and care


Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior ..... 430
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior ..... 433


### 4-2. Maintenance


Maintenance requirements ..... 436
General maintenance ..... 438
Emission inspection and maintenance (I/M) programs ..... 441


### 4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance


Do-it-yourself service precautions ..... 442
Hood ..... 445
Positioning a floor jack ..... 446
Engine compartment ..... 448
Tires ..... 463
Tire inflation pressure ..... 473
Wheels ..... 477
Air conditioning filter ..... 479
Electronic key battery ..... 482
Checking and replacing fuses ..... 484
Headlight aim ..... 509
Light bulbs ..... 512


## 5 When trouble arises

### 5-1. Essential information


Emergency flashers ..... 520
If your vehicle needs to be towed ..... 521
If you think something is wrong ..... 530
Fuel pump shut off system ..... 531
Event data recorder ..... 532

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds... 534
If a warning message is displayed... 543
If you have a flat tire (Vehicles with standard tires)... 556
If you have a flat tire (Vehicles with run-flat tires)... 566
If the engine will not start... 568
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P"... 569
If you lose your keys... 570
If the electronic key does not operate properly... 571
If the 12 volt battery is discharged... 574
If your vehicle overheats... 578
If the vehicle becomes stuck... 581
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency... 583

6 Vehicle specifications

6-1. Specifications

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.)... 586
Fuel information... 601
Tire information... 604

6-2. Customization

Customizable features... 618

6-3. Initialization

Items to initialize... 624

7 For US owners

Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners... 626
Seat belt instructions for Canadian owners (in French)... 627

Index

Abbreviation list... 630
Alphabetical index... 632
What to do if... 642

# Exterior



Headlight (low beam) P. 157

Parking light P. 157

Hood P. 445

Windshield wipers P. 161

Moon roof* P. 78

Outside rear view mirror P. 73

Side turn signal light P. 144

Side marker light P. 157

Fog light P. 160

Turn signal light P. 144

Headlight (high beam) and daytime running light P. 157, 158



Rear window defogger P. 255

Fuel filler door P. 82

Tail lights P. 157

Trunk P. 48

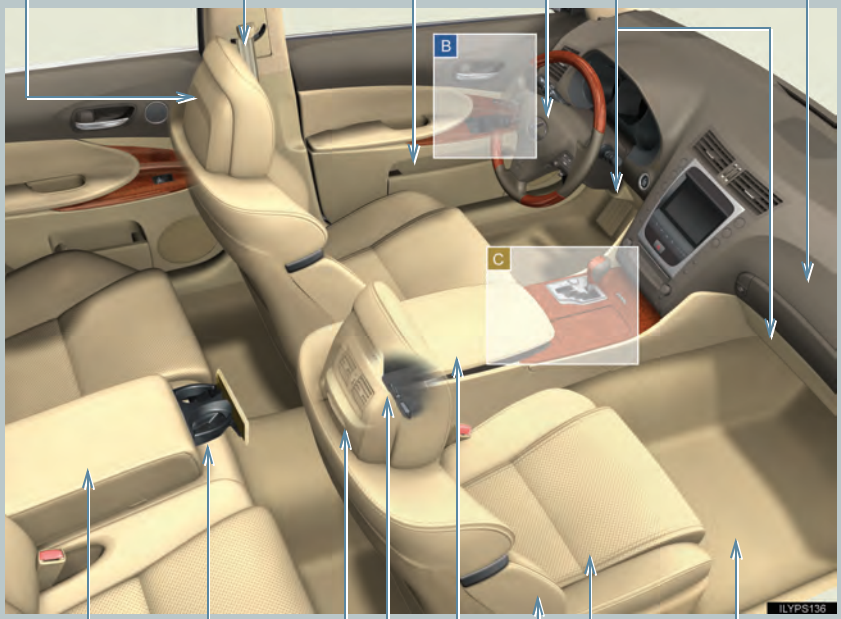
Door P. 43

Tire
- Rotation P. 463
- Replacement P. 556
- Inflation pressure P. 598
- Information P. 604

Turn signal light P. 144

Side marker light P. 157

*: If equipped




Door pocket P. 392

Seat belt P. 63

Head restraint P. 60

SRS driver airbag P. 93

SRS knee airbags P. 93

SRS front passenger airbag P. 93

Armrest P. 402

Cup holders P. 391

Ashtray P. 397

Power outlet P. 399

AUX port P. 328

USB port P. 316

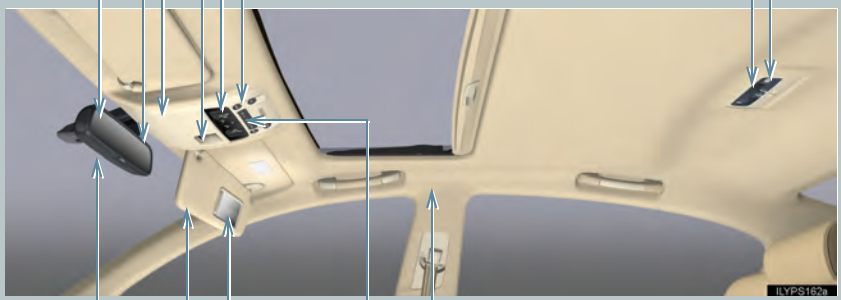
Floor mat P. 406

Front seat P. 53

SRS side airbag P. 93

Console box P. 388

A




Inside rear view mirror P. 71

Compass P. 417

Overhead console* P. 389

SOS button* P. 421

Personal light P. 384

Moon roof switch* P. 78

Personal light P. 384

Interior light P. 383

SRS curtain shield airbag P. 93

Interior light P. 383

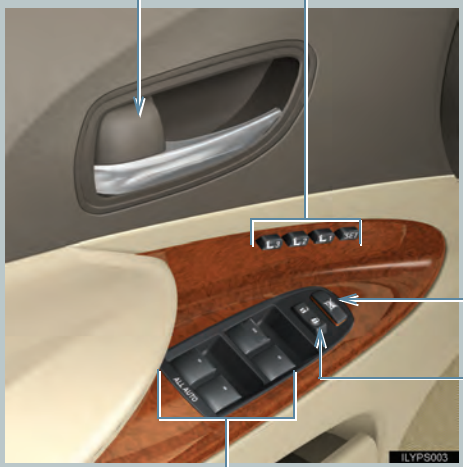
Vanity mirror P. 394

Sun visor P. 393

Garage door opener switches P. 411

*: If equipped

B




Inside lock button P. 43

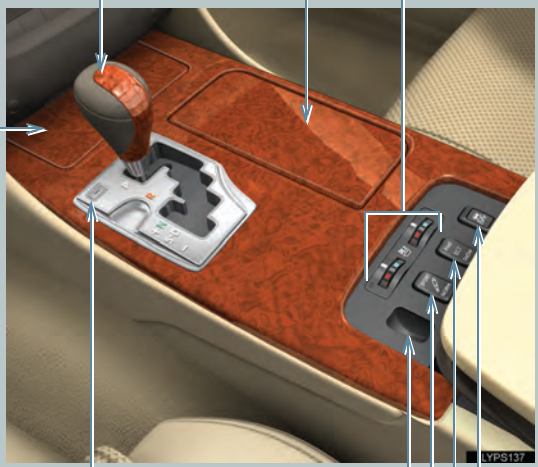
Driving position memory switches P. 55

Window lock switch P. 75

Door lock switch P. 43

Power window switches P. 75

C




Seat heater/ventilator switches* P. 400

Cup holders P. 391

Shift lever P. 139

Cigarette lighter P. 398

Ashtray P. 397

Shift lock override button P. 569

Coin holder P. 390

AVS switch* P. 199

Mode select switch P. 140

VSC OFF switch P. 202

*: If equipped

# Instrument panel




Multi-information display P. 154
Gauges and meters P. 147

Windshield wipers and washer switch P. 161

Trunk opener main switch P. 48

Headlight switch P. 157
Turn signal lever P. 144
Fog light switch P. 160

Glove box P. 387

Engine (ignition) switch P. 135

Pre-collision braking off switch* P. 207

Horn P. 146

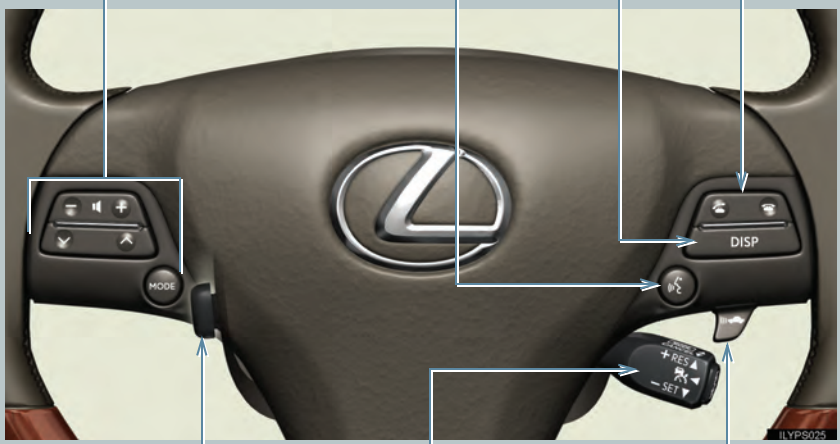
Trunk opener P. 48

Parking brake pedal P. 145

Hood lock release lever P. 445

Fuel filler door opener P. 82

A




"DISP" switch P. 155

Audio remote control switches P. 329

Telephone switch P. 332

Talk switch* P. 347

Tilt and telescopic steering control switch P. 70

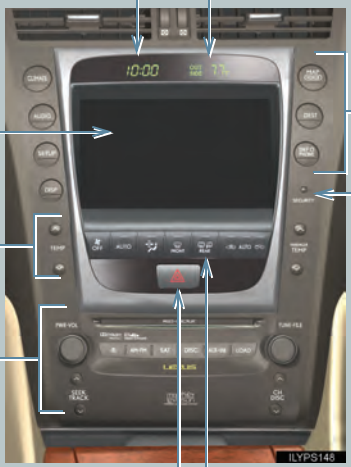
Distance switch* P. 174

Cruise control switch P. 167, 171

*: If equipped

*: Refer to "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

B




Clock P. 395

Outside temperature display P. 396

Touch screen P. 228

Navigation system* *

Security indicator P. 85, 87

Air conditioning system P. 246

Audio system P. 257

Emergency flashers P. 520

Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers P. 255

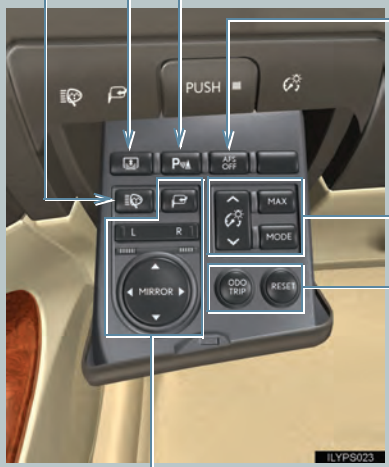
C

Headlight cleaner switch* P. 166

Rear sunshade switch* P. 403

Intuitive parking assist switch* P. 183

"AFS OFF" switch* P. 158




Instrument panel light control P. 148

Odometer/trip meter and trip meter reset buttons P. 148

Outside rear view mirror switches P. 73

*: If equipped

*: Refer to "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

# For your information

## Main Owner's Manual

Please note that this manual applies to all models and explains all equipment, including options. Therefore, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.

All specifications provided in this manual are current at the time of printing. However, because of the Lexus policy of continual product improvement, we reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice.

Depending on specifications, the vehicle shown in the illustration may differ from your vehicle in terms of color and equipment.

## Noise from under vehicle after turning off the engine

Approximately five hours after the engine is turned off, you may hear sound coming from under the vehicle for several minutes. This is the sound of a fuel evaporation leakage check and, it does not indicate a malfunction.

## Accessories, spare parts and modification of your Lexus

A wide variety of non-genuine spare parts and accessories for Lexus vehicles are currently available in the market. You should know that Toyota does not warrant these products and is not responsible for their performance, repair, or replacement, or for any damage they may cause to, or adverse effect they may have on, your Lexus vehicle.

This vehicle should not be modified with non-genuine Lexus products. Modification with non-genuine Lexus products could affect its performance, safety or durability, and may even violate governmental regulations. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from the modification may not be covered under warranty.

## Installation of a mobile two-way radio system

As the installation of a mobile two-way radio system in your vehicle could affect electronic systems such as the multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system, dynamic radar cruise control system, cruise control system, anti-lock brake system, vehicle dynamics integrated management, SRS airbag system and seat belt pretensioner system, be sure to check with your Lexus dealer for precautionary measures or special instructions regarding installation.

## Scrapping of your Lexus

The SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner devices in your Lexus contain explosive chemicals. If the vehicle is scrapped with the airbags and seat belt pretensioners left as they are, this may cause an accident such as fire. Be sure to have the systems of the SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner removed and disposed of by a qualified service shop or by your Lexus dealer before you scrap your vehicle.

## Perchlorate Material

Special handling may apply, See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate.

Your vehicle has components that may contain perchlorate. These components may include airbag, seat belt pretensioners, and wireless remote control batteries.

## ⚠ CAUTION

### General precautions while driving

Driving under the influence: Never drive your vehicle when under the influence of alcohol or drugs that have impaired your ability to operate your vehicle. Alcohol and certain drugs delay reaction time, impair judgment and reduce coordination, which could lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.

Defensive driving: Always drive defensively. Anticipate mistakes that other drivers or pedestrians might make and be ready to avoid accidents.

Driver distraction: Always give your full attention to driving. Anything that distracts the driver, such as adjusting controls, talking on a cellular phone or reading can result in a collision with resulting death or serious injury to you, your occupants or others.

### General precautions regarding children's safety

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the cigarette lighter, the windows, the moon roof, or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

# Symbols used throughout this manual

## Cautions & Notices

**⚠ CAUTION**

This is a warning against anything which may cause injury to people if the warning is ignored. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to reduce the risk of injury to yourself and others.

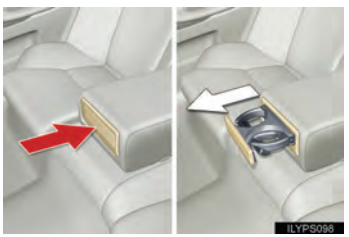
**⚠ NOTICE**

This is a warning against anything which may cause damage to the vehicle or its equipment if the warning is ignored. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to avoid or reduce the risk of damage to your Lexus and its equipment.

## Symbols used in illustrations

### Safety symbol

The symbol of a circle with a slash through it means “Do not”, “Do not do this”, or “Do not let this happen”.




### Arrows indicating operations

➡ Indicates the action (pushing, turning, etc.) used to operate switches and other devices.

⇨ Indicates the outcome of an operation (e.g. a lid opens).

# Before driving 1


**1-1. Key information**

Keys ..... 24

**1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk**

Smart access system with push-button start ..... 29

Wireless remote control ..... 41

Doors ..... 43

Trunk ..... 48

**1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)**

Front seats ..... 53

Driving position memory system ..... 55

Head restraints ..... 60

Seat belts ..... 63

Steering wheel ..... 70

Inside rear view mirror ..... 71

Outside rear view mirrors ..... 73

**1-4. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof**

Power windows ..... 75

Moon roof ..... 78

**1-5. Refueling**

Opening the fuel tank cap ..... 82

**1-6. Theft deterrent system**

Immobilizer system ..... 85

Alarm ..... 87

Theft prevention labels (U.S.A.) ..... 90

**1-7. Safety information**

Correct driving posture ..... 91

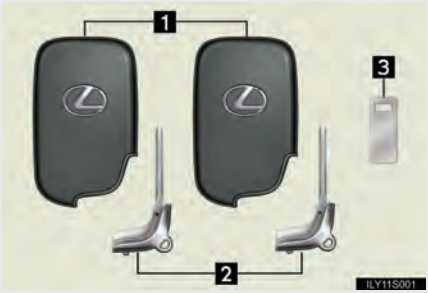
SRS airbags ..... 93

Front passenger occupant classification system ..... 105

Child restraint systems ..... 110

Installing child restraints ..... 114

The following keys are provided with the vehicle.




1 Electronic keys
- Operating the smart access system with push-button start (→P. 29)
- Operating the wireless remote control function (→P. 41)

2 Mechanical keys

3 Key number plate

## Card key (if equipped)




1 Electronic key

Operating the smart access system with push-button start (→P. 29)

2 Mechanical key

## Using the mechanical key




Take out the mechanical key.

The mechanical key can only be inserted in one direction, as the key only has grooves on one side. If the key cannot be inserted in a lock cylinder, turn it over and re-attempt to insert it.

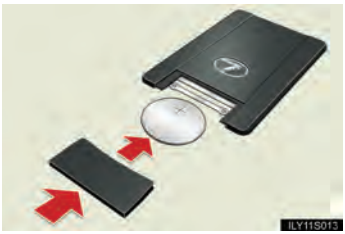
After using the mechanical key, store it in the electronic key. Carry the mechanical key together with the electronic key. If the electronic key battery is depleted or the smart access system with push-button start does not operate properly, you will need the mechanical key. (→P. 571)

## Card key

- The mechanical key that is stored inside the card key should be used only if a problem arises, such as when the key does not operate properly.
- If it is difficult to take out the mechanical key, push down the lock release button using a pen tip etc. If it is difficult to pull it out, use a coin etc.




- To store the mechanical key in the card key, insert it inside while pressing the lock release button.




- If the battery cover is not installed and the battery falls out or if the battery was removed because the key got wet, reinstall the battery with the positive terminal facing the Lexus emblem.
- The card key is not waterproof.

## When required to leave a key to the vehicle with a parking attendant

Turn the trunk opener main switch OFF, lock the glove box and trunk storage extension door as circumstances demand. (→P. 48, 387)
Remove the mechanical key for your own use and provide the attendant with the electronic key only.

## Key number plate

Keep the plate in a safe place such as your wallet, not in the vehicle. In the event that a mechanical key is lost, a new key can be made at your Lexus dealer using the key number plate. (→P. 570)

### When riding in an aircraft

When bringing an electronic key onto an aircraft, make sure you do not press any buttons on the electronic key while inside the aircraft cabin. If you are carrying an electronic key in your bag etc., ensure that the buttons are not likely to be pressed accidentally. Pressing a button may cause the electronic key to emit radio waves that could interfere with the operation of the aircraft.

### NOTICE

### To prevent key damage

Observe the following:

- Do not drop the keys, subject them to strong shocks or bend them.
- Do not expose the keys to high temperatures for a long period of time.
- Do not get the keys wet or wash them in an ultrasonic washer etc.
- Do not attach metallic or magnetic materials to the keys or place the keys close to such materials.
- Do not disassemble the keys.
- Do not place the keys near objects that produce magnetic fields, such as TVs, audio system, glass top ranges, or medical electrical equipment, such as low-frequency therapy equipment.

## ⚠ NOTICE

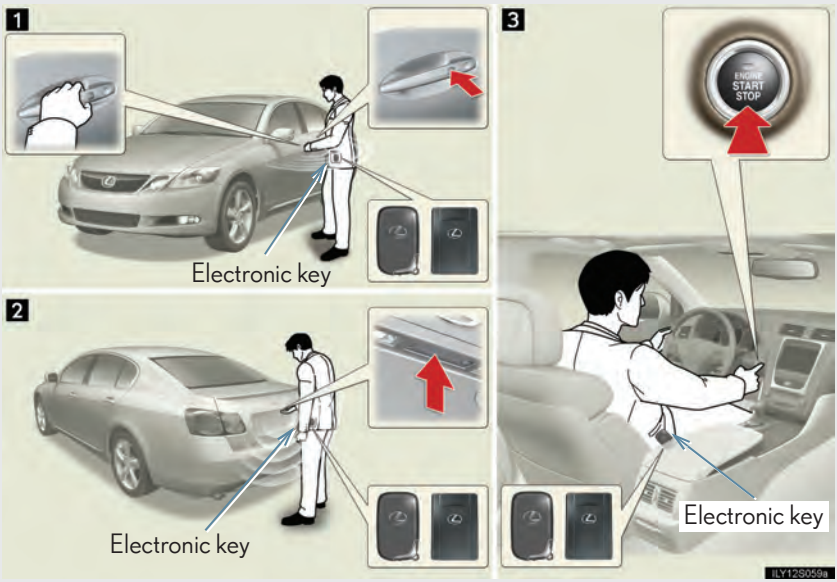
### Precautions for handling the card keys

- Do not apply excess force when inserting the mechanical key to the card key. Doing so may damage the card key.
- If the battery or card key terminals get wet, the battery may corrode and the card key may stop working.
  If the key is dropped into water, or if drinking water etc. is spilled on the key, immediately remove the battery cover and wipe the battery and terminals. (To remove the battery cover, lightly grasp and pull it.) If the battery is corroded, have your Lexus dealer replace the battery.
- Do not crush the battery cover or use a screwdriver to remove the battery cover. Forcibly removing the battery cover may bend or damage the key.
- If the battery cover is frequently removed, the battery cover may become loose.
- When installing the battery, make sure to check the direction of the battery. Installing the battery in the wrong direction may cause the battery to deplete rapidly.
- The surface of the card key may be damaged, or its coating may peel off in the following situations:
  - The card key is carried together with hard objects, such as coins or keys.
  - The card key is scraped with a sharp object, such as a tip of mechanical pencil.
  - The surface of the card key is wiped with thinners or benzene.

# Smart access system with push-button start

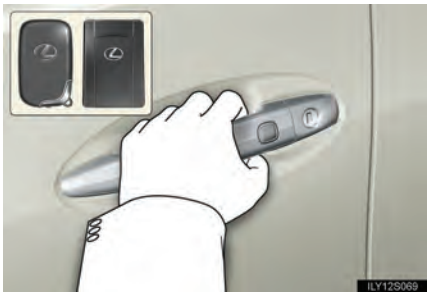


The following operations can be performed simply by carrying the electronic key on your person, for example in your pocket.
(The driver should always carry the electronic key.)




1 Locks and unlocks the doors (→P. 30)
2 Unlocks the trunk (→P. 30)
3 Starts and stops the engine (→P. 135)

## Unlocking and locking the doors




Grip the handle to unlock the door.

Make sure to touch the sensor on the back of the handle.

The door cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the door is locked.




Press the lock button to lock the door.

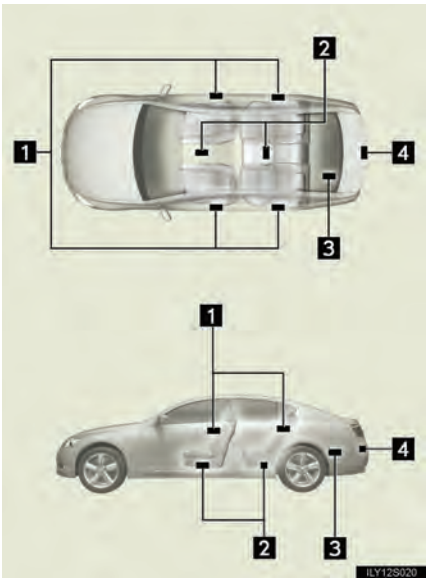
## Unlocking the trunk




Press the button to unlock the trunk.

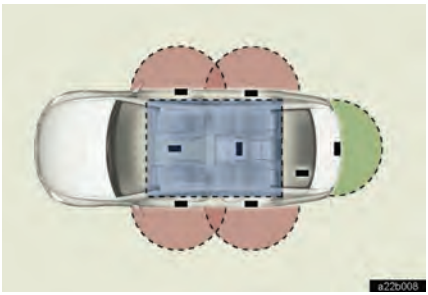
## Antenna location and effective range

### Antenna location




1 Antennas outside cabin
2 Antennas inside cabin
3 Antenna inside trunk
4 Antenna outside trunk

## Effective range (areas within which the electronic key is detected)




- When locking or unlocking the doors
  The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 2.3 ft. (70 cm) of an outside door handle. (Only the doors detecting the key can be operated.)
- When unlocking the trunk
  The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 2.3 ft. (70 cm) of the trunk release button.
- When starting the engine or changing modes
  The system can be operated when the electronic key is inside the vehicle.

### Operation signals

A buzzer sounds and the emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice)

### Conditions affecting operation

The smart access system with push-button start uses weak radio waves. In the following situations, the communication between the electronic key and the vehicle may be affected, preventing the smart access system with push-button start, wireless remote control and immobilizer system from operating properly:
(Way of coping: →P. 571)

- When the electronic key battery is depleted
- Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When carrying a portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication devices
- When the electronic key is in contact with, or is covered by the following metallic objects
  - Cards to which aluminum foil is attached
  - Cigarette boxes that have aluminum foil inside
  - Metallic wallets or bags
  - Coins
  - Hand warmers made of metal
  - Media such as CDs and DVDs
- When multiple electronic keys are in the vicinity
- When other wireless keys (that emit radio waves) are being used nearby
- When carrying or using the electronic key together with the following devices that emit radio waves
  - Another vehicle's electronic key or a wireless key that emits radio waves
  - Personal computers or personal digital assistants (PDAs)
  - Digital audio players
  - Portable game systems
- If window tint with a metallic content or metallic objects are attached to the rear window

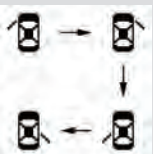
### Switching the door unlock function

It is possible to set which doors the entry function unlocks using the wireless remote control.

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF.

STEP 2 When the indicator light on the key surface is not on, press and hold , , or for approximately 5 seconds while pressing and holding .

The setting changes each time an operation is performed, as shown below. (When changing the setting continuously, release the buttons, wait for at least 5 seconds, and repeat step 2.)

| Multi-information display | Unlocking doors | Beep |
|---|---|---|
|  | Hold the driver's door handle to unlock only the driver's door | Exterior: Beeps 3 times<br>Interior: Rings once |
| | Hold a passenger's door handle to unlock all the doors | |
|  | Hold the door handle to unlock the front and rear doors on your side | Exterior: Beeps 4 times<br>Interior: Rings once |
|  | Hold the door handle to unlock the door | Exterior: Beeps once<br>Interior: Rings once |
|  | Hold a door handle to unlock all doors | Exterior: Beeps twice<br>Interior: Rings once |

STEP 3 Unlock the doors using the wireless remote control and open one of the doors.

If a door is not opened within 60 seconds after is pressed, the doors will be locked again and the alarm will automatically be set.

In case that the alarm is triggered, immediately stop the alarm. (→P. 87)



■ **Battery-saving function**

In the following circumstances, the entry function is disabled in order to prevent the vehicle and electronic key batteries from discharging.

- When the entry function has not been used for a month or more
- When the electronic key has been left within approximately 3 ft. (1 m) of the vehicle for 10 minutes or more

The system will resume operation when...

- The vehicle is locked using the door handle lock switch
- The vehicle is locked/unlocked using the wireless remote control function (→P. 41) or the mechanical key (→P. 571)

■ **Electronic key battery depletion**

- The standard battery life is 1 to 2 years. (The card key battery life is about a year and a half.)
- If the battery becomes low, an alarm will sound in the cabin when the engine stops. (→P. 37)
- The battery becomes depleted even if the electronic key is not used because the key always transmits radio waves. If the smart access system with push-button start or the wireless remote control does not operate, or the detection area becomes smaller, the battery may be depleted. Replace the battery when necessary. (→ P. 482)
- To avoid serious deterioration, do not leave the electronic key within 3 ft. (1 m) of the following electrical appliances that produce a magnetic field:
  - TVs
  - Personal computers
  - Cellular phones, cordless phones and battery chargers
  - Recharging cellular phones or cordless phones
  - Glass top ranges
  - Table lamps

■ **To operate the system properly**

Make sure to carry the electronic key when operating the system. Do not get the electronic key too close to the vehicle when operating the system from the outside of the vehicle.

Depending on the position and holding condition of the electronic key, the key may not be detected correctly and the system may not operate properly. (The alarm may go off accidentally, or the door lock prevention may not function.)

■ **Note for the smart access system with push-button start**

- Even when the electronic key is within the effective range (detection areas), the system may not operate properly in the following cases.
  - The electronic key is too close to the window or outside door handle, near the ground, or in a high place when the doors are locked or unlocked.
  - The electronic key is near the ground or in a high place, or too close to the rear bumper center when the trunk is unlocked.
  - The electronic key is on the instrument panel, rear package tray or floor, or in the glove box when the engine is started or "ENGINE START STOP" switch modes are changed.
- As long as the electronic key is within the effective range, the doors may be locked or unlocked by anyone.
- Even if the electronic key is not inside the vehicle, it may be possible to start the engine if the electronic key is near the window.
- The doors may unlock if a large amount of water splashes on the door handle, such as in the rain or in a car wash when the electronic key is within the effective range. (The doors will automatically be locked after approximately 60 seconds if the doors are not opened and closed.)

- Gripping the door handle when wearing a glove may not unlock the door.
- If the wireless remote control is used to lock the doors when the electronic key is near the vehicle, there is a possibility that the door may not be unlocked by the smart access system with push-button start. (Use the wireless remote control to unlock the doors.)
- A sudden approach to the effective range or door handle operation may prevent the doors from being unlocked. In this case, return the door handle to the original position and check that the doors unlock before pulling the door handle again.

### When the vehicle is not driven for extended periods

To prevent theft of the vehicle, do not leave the electronic key within 6 ft. (2 m) of the vehicle.

### Security feature

If a door is not opened within approximately 60 seconds after the vehicle is unlocked, the theft deterrent system automatically locks the vehicle again.

### Alarms and warning indicators

A combination of exterior and interior alarms as well as warnings displayed on the multi-information display are used to prevent theft of the vehicle and unforeseeable accidents resulting from erroneous operation. Take appropriate measures in response to any warning indications on the multi-information display. (→P. 553)

The following table describes circumstances and correction procedures when only alarms are sounded.

| Alarm | Situation | Correction procedure |
|---|---|---|
| Exterior alarm sounds once for 2 seconds | Tried to lock the doors using the entry function while the electronic key is still inside the passenger compartment | Retrieve the electronic key from the passenger compartment and lock the doors again. |
| | Closed the trunk while the electronic key is still inside and all doors are locked | Retrieve the electronic key from the trunk and close the trunk lid. |
| Exterior alarm sounds once for 60 seconds | Tried to exit the vehicle with the electronic key and lock the doors without first turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF | Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF and lock the doors again. |
| Exterior alarm sounds once for 10 seconds | Tried to lock the vehicle using the entry function while a door is open | Close all of the doors and lock the doors again. |
| Interior alarm sounds continuously | Tried to open the door and exit the vehicle without shifting the shift lever to "P" | Shift the shift lever to "P". |
| Interior alarm rings continuously | Switched to ACCESSORY mode while the driver's door is open (Opened the driver's door when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY mode.) | Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF and close the driver's door. |
| | Turned the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF while the driver's door is open | Close the driver's door. |

■ **If the smart access system with push-button start does not operate properly**

- Locking and unlocking the doors and trunk: Use the mechanical key. (→P. 571)
- Starting the engine: →P. 572

■ **When the electronic key battery is fully depleted**

→P. 482

■ **Customization that can be configured at Lexus dealer**

Settings (e.g. smart access system with push-button start) can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 618)

■ **Certification for the smart access system with push-button start**

▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

FCC ID: HYQ14AAB
FCC ID: HYQ14ABB
FCC ID: HYQ13BZL
FCC ID: HYQ14ABK
FCC ID: HYQ14ABS
FCC ID: HYQ13BZT

FCC ID: NI4TMLF-1

NOTE:
This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

NOTE:
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Caution regarding interference with electronic devices**

- People with implanted pacemakers or cardiac defibrillators should keep away from the smart access system with push-button start antennas. (→P. 31) The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices. If necessary, the smart access system with push-button start can be disabled. Ask your Lexus dealer for details, such as the frequency of radio waves and timing of emitting the radio waves. Then, consult your doctor to see if you should disable the smart access system with push-button start.
- Users of any electrical medical device other than implanted pacemakers and implanted cardiac defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves. Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

Ask your Lexus dealer for details for disabling the smart access system with push-button start.

# Wireless remote control



**The wireless remote control can be used to lock and unlock the vehicle and the trunk from outside the vehicle.**




1 Locks all doors

2 Unlocks all doors

Pushing the button unlocks the driver's door. Pushing the button again within 3 seconds unlocks the other doors.

3 Opens the windows and moon roof (push and hold)*

4 Unlocks the trunk (push and hold)

5 Sounds alarm (push and hold) (→P. 87)

*: This setting must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

## ■ Operation signals

- Doors: A buzzer sounds and the emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice)
- Trunk: A buzzer sounds to indicate that the trunk has been unlocked.
- Windows and moon roof: A buzzer sounds to indicate that the windows and moon roof are opening.

## ■ Door lock buzzer

If a door is not fully closed, a buzzer sounds continuously for 10 seconds if an attempt to lock the door is made. Fully close the door to stop the buzzer, and lock the vehicle once more.

■ **Security feature**

→P. 37

■ **If the wireless remote control does not operate properly**

- Locking and unlocking the doors and trunk: Use the mechanical key. (→P. 571)
- Starting the engine. (→P. 572)

■ **Electronic key battery depletion**

→P. 35

■ **When the electronic key battery is fully depleted**

→P. 482

■ **Conditions affecting operation**

→P. 33

■ **Customization that can be configured at Lexus dealer**

Settings (e.g. 2-step unlocking function, trunk unlocking function) can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 618)

■ **Certification for wireless remote control**

▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A

NOTE:
This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

NOTE:
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked using the smart access system with push-button start, wireless remote control or door lock switch.

## Smart access system with push-button start

→P. 30

## Wireless remote control

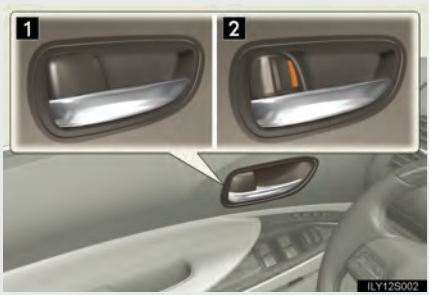
→P. 41

## Door lock switch




1 Locks all doors
2 Unlocks all doors

## Inside lock button




1 Locks the door
2 Unlocks the door

The front doors can be opened by pulling the inside handles even if the lock buttons are in the lock position.

## Locking the front doors from the outside without a key

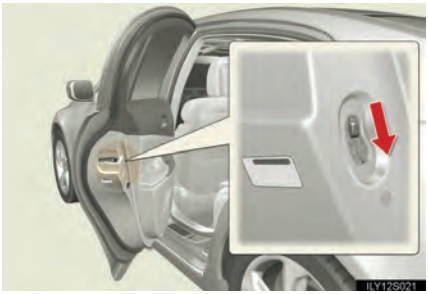
STEP 1 Move the lock button to the lock position.

STEP 2 Close the door.

The door cannot be locked if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in the ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, or the electronic key is left inside the vehicle.

The key may not be detected correctly and the door may be locked.

## Rear door child-protector lock



The door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle when the locks are set.

These locks can be set to prevent children from opening the rear doors. Push down on rear door switches to lock the rear doors.

## Automatic door locking and unlocking systems

The following functions can be set or canceled:

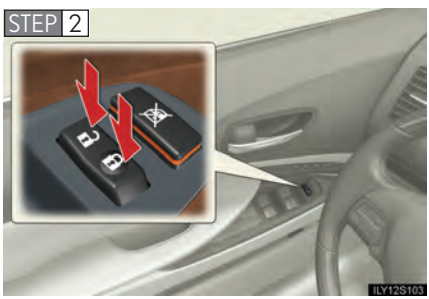
| Function | Operation |
|---|---|
| Shift position linked door locking function | Shifting the shift lever out of "P" locks all doors. |
| Shift position linked door unlocking function | Shifting the shift lever to "P" unlocks all doors. |
| Speed linked door locking function | All doors are locked when the vehicle speed is approximately 12 mph (20 km/h) or higher. |
| Driver's door linked door unlocking function | All doors are unlocked when the driver's door is opened within 10 seconds after turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF. |

### Setting and canceling the functions

To switch between setting and canceling, follow the procedure below:

STEP 1 Close all the doors and switch the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode. (Perform step 2 within 10 seconds.)

STEP 2




Shift the shift lever to "P" or "N", press and hold the driver's door lock switch ( or ) for approximately 5 seconds and then release.

The shift lever and switch positions corresponding to the desired function to be set are shown as follows.

Use the same procedure to cancel the function.

| Function | Shift lever position | Driver's door lock switch position |
|---|---|---|
| Shift position linked door locking function | "P" |  |
| Shift position linked door unlocking function | |  |
| Speed linked door locking function | "N" |  |
| Driver's door linked door unlocking function | |  |

When the setting or canceling operation is complete, all doors are locked and then unlocked.

■ **Closing the front doors from outside with the inside lock button set in the locked position**

The door cannot be locked if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, or the electronic key is left in the vehicle. (However, depending on the key's location, the system may not be able to detect it. In these instances the door lock protection function will not operate properly.)

■ **Using the mechanical key**

The doors can also be locked and unlocked with the mechanical key. (→P. 571)

■ **Customization that can be configured at Lexus dealer**

Settings (e.g. unlocking function using a key) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 620)

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ To prevent an accident**

Observe the following precautions while driving the vehicle.
Failing to do so may result in a door opening and an occupant falling out, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Always use a seat belt.
- Always lock all doors.
- Ensure that all doors are properly closed.
- Do not pull the inside handle of the doors while driving.
  The doors may be opened and the passengers are thrown out of the vehicle and it may result in serious injury or death.
  Be especially careful for the front doors, as the doors may be opened even if the inside lock buttons are in locked position.
- Set the rear door child-protector locks when children are seated in the rear seat.

# Trunk

**The trunk can be opened using the trunk opener, smart access system with push-button start or wireless remote control.**

## Opening the trunk from inside the vehicle



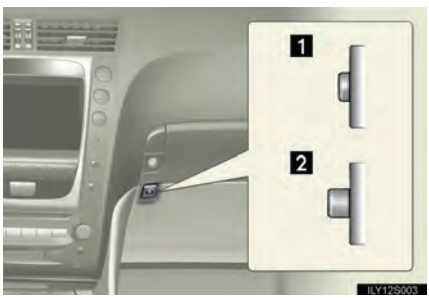
Press the opener switch.

## Opening the trunk from outside the vehicle

▶ Smart access system with push-button start
→P. 30

▶ Wireless remote control
→P. 41

## Canceling the trunk opener feature




Turn the main switch in the glove box OFF to disable the trunk opener.

1 ON
2 OFF

The trunk lid cannot be opened even with the wireless remote control or the smart access system with push- button start.

### Trunk easy closer

When you lower the trunk lid to about half way closed, the automatic trunk closer will close the trunk for you.

### Trunk light

When the trunk light switch is set to ON, the trunk light turns on when the trunk is opened.




1 ON
2 OFF

### Trunk handle



Use the trunk handle when closing the trunk.

### Internal trunk release lever



The trunk lid can be opened by pulling down on the glow-in-the-dark lever located on the inside of the trunk lid.

The lever will continue to glow for some time after the trunk lid is closed.

### Using the mechanical key

The trunk can be also opened using the mechanical key. (→P. 571)

## ⚠ CAUTION

### ■ Caution while driving

- Keep the trunk lid closed while driving.
  If the trunk lid is left open, it may hit near-by objects while driving or luggage in the trunk may be unexpectedly thrown out, causing an accident.
  In addition, exhaust gases may enter the vehicle, causing death or a serious health hazard. Make sure to close the trunk lid before driving.
- Before driving the vehicle, make sure that the trunk lid is fully closed. If the trunk lid is not fully closed, it may open unexpectedly while driving, causing an accident.
- Never let anyone sit in the trunk. In the event of sudden braking or a collision, they are susceptible to death or serious injury.

### ■ When children are in the vehicle

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not allow children to enter the trunk.
  If a child is accidentally locked in the trunk, they could overheat or suffocate.
- Do not allow a child to open or close the trunk lid.
  Doing so may cause the trunk lid operate unexpectedly, or cause the child's hands, head, or neck to be caught by the closing trunk lid.

## CAUTION

### Using the trunk

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause parts of the body to be caught, resulting in serious injury.

- Remove any heavy loads, such as snow and ice, from the trunk lid before opening it. Failure to do so may cause the trunk lid to fall closed again after it is opened.
- When opening or closing the trunk lid, thoroughly check to make sure the surrounding area is safe.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the trunk is about to open or close.
- Use caution when opening or closing the trunk lid in windy weather as it may move abruptly in strong wind.







- The trunk lid may fall if it is not opened fully. It is more difficult to open or close the trunk lid on an incline than on a level surface, so beware of the trunk lid unexpectedly opening or closing by itself. Make sure that the trunk lid is fully open and secure before using the trunk.
- When closing the trunk lid, take extra care to prevent your fingers etc. from being caught.
- When closing the trunk lid, make sure to press it lightly on its outer surface. If the trunk handle is used to fully close the trunk lid, it may result in hands or arms being caught.

- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Lexus parts to the trunk lid. Such additional weight on the trunk lid may cause the lid to fall closed again after it is opened.

## ⚠ CAUTION

### Trunk easy closer




In the event that the trunk lid is left slightly open, the trunk easy closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position. It takes several seconds before the trunk easy closer begins to operate. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else in the trunk lid, as this may cause bone fractures or other serious injuries.

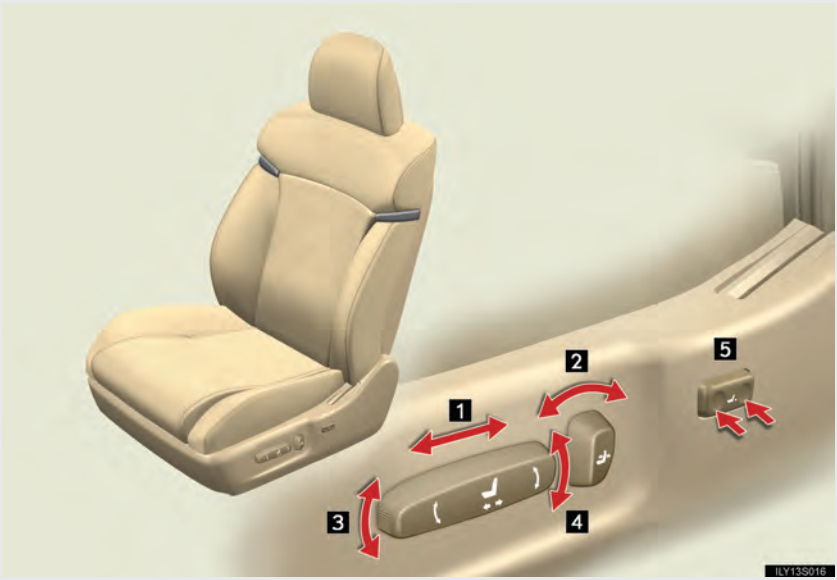
## NOTICE

### To prevent trunk easy closer malfunction

Do not apply excessive force to the trunk lid while the trunk easy closer is operating.

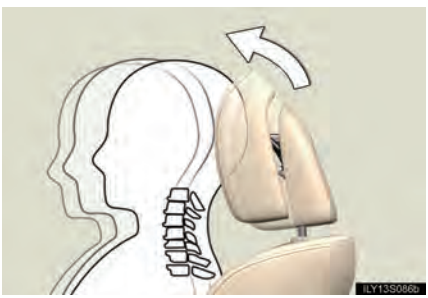
# Front seats





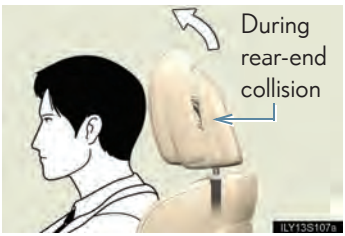

1 Seat position fore/aft control switch
2 Seatback angle control switch
3 Seat cushion (front) angle control switch
4 Vertical height control switch
5 Lumbar support control switch

## Active head restraints




When the occupant's lower back presses against the seatback during a rear-end collision, the front portion of the head restraint moves slightly forward and upward to help reduce the risk of whiplash on the seat occupant.

### Active head restraints




Even small forces applied to the seatback may cause the head restraint to move.

### When the active head restraint has been operated

If the active head restraint has been operated, you will not be able to return it to its original position.
After operation, contact your Lexus dealer.

## CAUTION

### Reclining adjustment

Do not recline the seat more than necessary when the vehicle is in motion, to reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt.
If the seat is too reclined, during an accident the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury.
Adjustments should not be made while driving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

# Driving position memory system



Your preferred driving position (the position of the driver's seat, steering wheel and outside rear view mirrors) can be entered into the computer's memory and recalled with the touch of a button. It is also possible to set this function to activate automatically when the doors are unlocked.
Three different driving positions can be entered into memory.

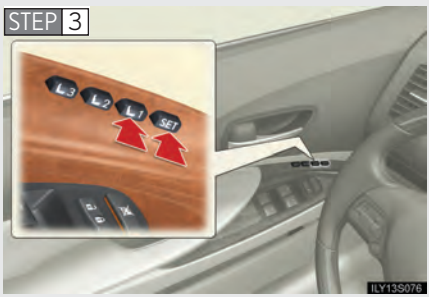
The same buttons are found on the front passenger's side, allowing the position of the front passenger's seat to be memorized. (if equipped)

## Entering a position to memory

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode.

STEP 2 Adjust the driver's seat, steering wheel, and outside rear view mirrors to the desired positions.

STEP 3




While pushing the "SET" button, or within 3 seconds after the "SET" button is pushed, push button "1", "2" or "3" until the signal beeps.

If the selected button has already been preset, the previously recorded position will be overwritten.

### Recalling the memorized position

Check that the shift lever is set in "P".

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode.

STEP 2




Push button "1", "2" or "3" to recall the memorized position.

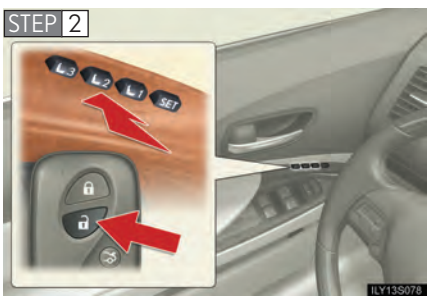
## Linking driving position memory with door unlock operation

Record your driving position to button "1", "2" or "3" before performing the following:

▶ Using the wireless remote control

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to OFF and close the driver's door.

STEP 2




While pushing the desired button ("1", "2" or "3"), push on the wireless remote control until the signal beeps.

The driving position is recalled when the driver's door is unlocked using the entry function or wireless remote control and the driver's door is opened.

STEP 3 Open one of the doors.

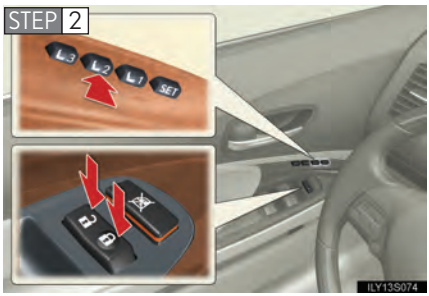
If a door is not opened within 60 seconds after is pushed, the doors will be locked again and the alarm will automatically be set. In case that the alarm is triggered, immediately stop the alarm. (→P. 87)

▶ Using the door lock switch

Carry only the key (including the card key) to which you want to link the driving position. If 2 or more keys are in the vehicle, the driving position cannot be linked properly.

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to OFF mode and close the driver's door.

STEP 2




While pushing the desired button ("1", "2" or "3"), push the lock or unlock side on the door lock switch (either the driver or passenger side) until the signal beeps.

The driving position is recalled when the driver's door is unlocked using the entry function or wireless remote control and the driver's door is opened.

■ **Canceling the linked door unlock operation**

STEP 1 Close the driver's door with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch set to the OFF.

STEP 2 Push the "SET" button and the button on the wireless remote control at the same time for about 1 second until you hear 2 beeps.

■ **Retained accessory power**

▶ With front passenger's seat memory

- Each memorized position (except for the tilt and telescopic steering column) can be recalled within 3 minutes after the corresponding side door is opened, even if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to OFF.
- Driver's side: Each memorized position (except for the tilt and telescopic steering column) can be recalled within 60 seconds after the driver's door is closed, even if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to OFF.

▶ Without front passenger's seat memory

- Each memorized position (except for the tilt and telescopic steering column) can be recalled within 3 minutes after the driver's door is opened, even if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to OFF.
- Each memorized position (except for the tilt and telescopic steering column) can be recalled within 60 seconds after the driver's door is closed, even if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to OFF.

■ **If any position memory button is pushed while the adjustments are being made**

The operation will stop. To reactivate the system, push the desired button ("1", "2" or "3") again.

■ **If the 12 volt battery is disconnected**

The memorized positions must be reset because the computer's memory is erased when the 12 volt battery is disconnected.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Seat adjustment caution**

Take care during seat adjustment so that the seat does not strike the rear passenger or squeeze your body against the steering wheel.

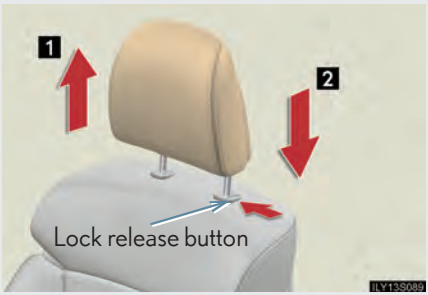
If this happens, you can stop the movement by pressing another driving position memory button.

# Head restraints

Head restraints are provided for all seats.

## Vertical adjustment

▶ Front seats



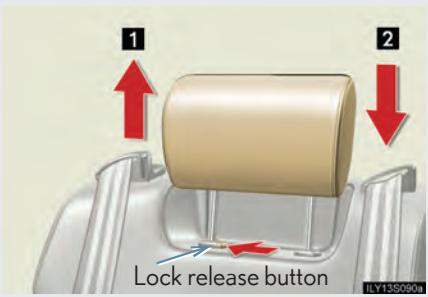

1 Up

Pull the head restraint up.

2 Down

Push the head restraint down while pressing the lock release button.

▶ Outboard rear seats



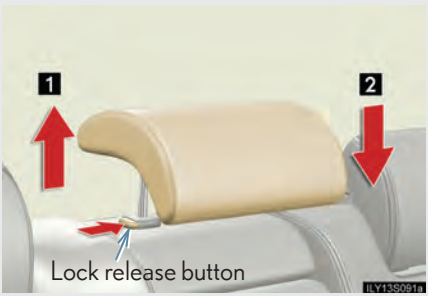

1 Up

Pull the head restraint up.

2 Down

Push the head restraint down while pressing the lock release button.

▶ Center rear seat



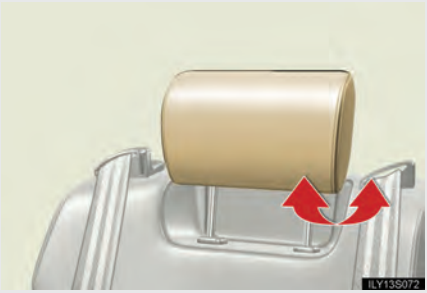

1 Up

Pull the head restraint up.

2 Down

Push the head restraint down while pressing the lock release button.

## Horizontal adjustment (Outboard rear seats)




Grip head restraint and twist to tilt forward or backward.

## Adjusting the height of the head restraints




Make sure that the head restraints are adjusted so that the center of the head restraint is closest to the top of your ears.

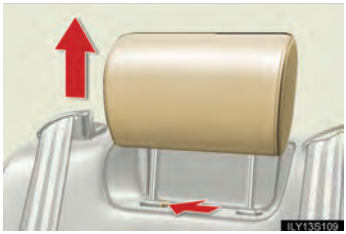
## Adjusting the rear seat head restraint

Always raise the head restraint one level from the stowed position when using.

## Removing and installing the front seat head restraints

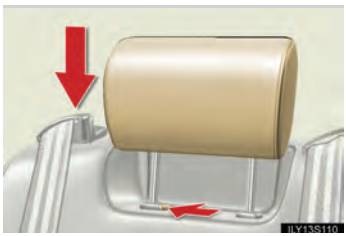
For removal and installation, ask your Lexus dealer.

### Removing the head restraints (except for the front seats)



Pull the head restraint up while pressing the lock release button.

### Installing the head restraints (except for the front seats)



Align the head restraint with the installation holes and push it down to the lock position.

Press and hold the lock release button when lowering the head restraint.

## CAUTION

### Head restraint precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the head restraints. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Use the head restraints designed for each respective seat.
- Adjust the head restraints to the correct position at all times.
- After adjusting the head restraints, push down on them and make sure they are locked in position.
- Do not drive with the head restraints removed.

**Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle.**

## Correct use of the seat belts



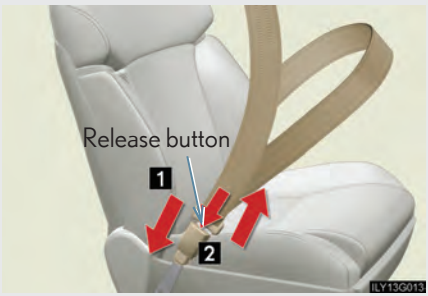

1 Extend the shoulder belt so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.

2 Position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips.

3 Adjust the position of the seatback. Sit up straight and well back in the seat.

4 Do not twist the seat belt.

## Fastening and releasing the seat belt



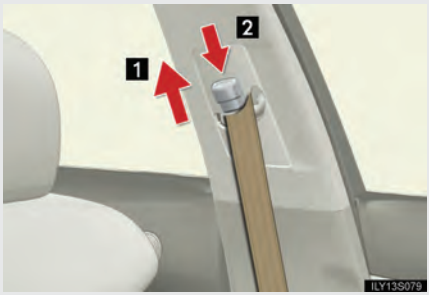

1 Fastening the belt

Push the tab into the buckle until a clicking sound is heard.

2 Releasing the belt

Press the release button.

### Adjusting the height of the belt (front seats)

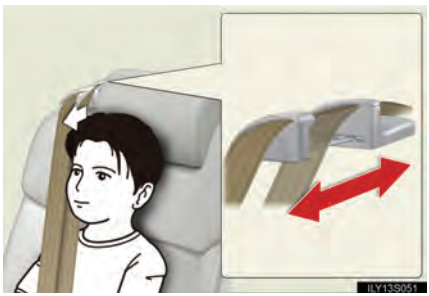



1 Up

2 Down

Move the height adjuster up and down as needed until you hear a click.

## Seat belt comfort guide (outboard rear seats)




If the shoulder belt fits close to a person's neck, slide the seat belt comfort guide forward.

## Seat belt pretensioners (front and outboard rear seats)




The pretensioner helps the seat belt to quickly restrain the occupant by retracting the seat belt when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe frontal collision.

The pretensioner may not activate in the event of a minor frontal impact, a side impact or a rear impact.

## Pre-collision seat belts (front seats of vehicles with pre-collision system)

If the pre-collision sensor detects that a collision is unavoidable, the pre-collision system will retract the seat belt, thus enhancing the effectiveness of the seat belt pretensioner in a crash.

The same will happen if the driver makes an emergency braking or loses control of the vehicle. (→P. 207)

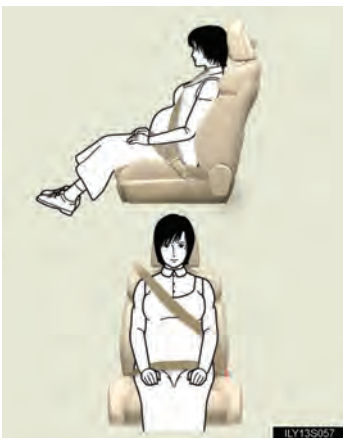
### Emergency locking retractor (ELR)

The retractor will lock the belt during a sudden stop or on impact. It may also lock if you lean forward too quickly. A slow, easy motion will allow the belt to extend, and you can move around fully. Also, when retracting, if the belt is locked, pulling once on the belt strongly will loosen the belt and allow you to move, and the belt can then be pulled out.

### Automatic locking retractor (ALR)

When a passenger's shoulder belt is completely extended and then retracted even slightly, the belt is locked in that position and cannot be extended. This feature is used to hold the child restraint system (CRS) firmly. To free the belt again, fully retract the belt and then pull the belt out once more. (→P. 114)

### Pregnant women




Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P. 63)

Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants. Extend the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and position the belt across the chest. Avoid belt contact over the rounding of the abdominal area.

If the seat belt is not worn properly, not only a pregnant woman, but also the fetus could suffer death or serious injury as a result of sudden braking, sudden swerving or a collision.

### People suffering illness

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P. 63)

### Child seat belt usage

The seat belts of your vehicle were principally designed for persons of adult size.

- Use a child restraint system appropriately for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 110)
- When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt, follow the instructions on P. 63 regarding seat belt usage.

### Replacing the belt after the pretensioner has been activated

If the vehicle is involved in multiple collisions, the pretensioner will activate for the first collision, but will not activate for the second or subsequent collisions.

### Seat belt extender




If your seat belts cannot be fastened securely because they are not long enough, a personalized seat belt extender is available from your Lexus dealer free of charge.

## CAUTION

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident. Failing to do so may cause death or serious injury.

### Wearing a seat belt

- Ensure that all passengers wear a seat belt.
- Always wear a seat belt properly.
- Each seat belt should be used by one person only. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at the same time, including children.
- Lexus recommends that children should be seated in the rear seat and always use a seat belt and/or an appropriate child restraint system.
- Do not recline the seat any more than necessary to achieve a proper seating position. The seat belt is most effective when the occupants are sitting up straight and well back in the seats.
- Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm.
- Always wear your seat belt low and snug across your hips.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Adjustable shoulder anchor**

Always make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of your shoulder. The belt should be kept away from your neck, but not falling off your shoulder. Failure to do so could reduce the amount of protection in an accident and cause death or serious injuries in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or accident. (→P. 64)

**■ Seat belt pretensioners**

- Do not place anything, such as a cushion, on the front passenger's seat. Doing so will disperse the passenger's weight, which prevents the sensor from detecting the passenger's weight properly. As a result, the seat belt pretensioner for the front passenger's seat may not activate in the event of a collision.
- If the pretensioner has activated, the SRS warning light will come on. In that case, the seat belt cannot be used again and must be replaced at your Lexus dealer.

**■ Child restraint lock function belt precaution**

Do not allow children to play with the child restraint lock function belt. If the belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it will not be possible to pull the belt out leading to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death.
If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.

**■ Seat belt damage and wear**

- Do not damage the seat belts by allowing the belt, plate or buckle to be jammed in the door.
- Inspect the seat belt system periodically. Check for cuts, fraying, and loose parts. Do not use a damaged seat belt until it is replaced. Damaged seat belts cannot protect an occupant from injury.
- Ensure that the belt and tab are locked and the belt is not twisted. If the seat belt does not function correctly, immediately contact your Lexus dealer.
- Replace the seat assembly, including the belts, if your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident, even if there is no obvious damage.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of a seat belt. Have any necessary repairs carried out by your Lexus dealer. Inappropriate handling of the pretensioner may cause it to activate or operate improperly and may cause death or serious injury.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Using a seat belt extender**

- Do not wear the seat belt extender, if you can fasten the seat belt without the extender.
- Do not use the seat belt extender when installing a child restraint system, because the belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or accident.
- The personalized extender may not be safe on another vehicle, when used by another person, or at a different seating position other than the one originally intended.

**■ Precaution for pre-collision seat belts**

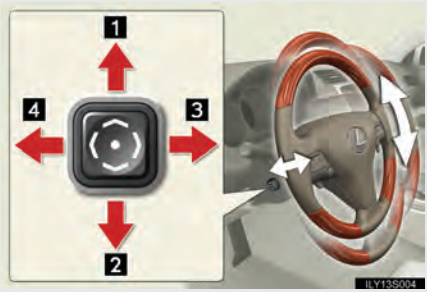
Do not rely solely on the pre-collision system to avoid accidents. Always pay attention to the surrounding conditions, and drive safely and responsibly.

## ⚠ NOTICE

**■ When using a seat belt extender**

When releasing the seat belt, press on the buckle release button on the extender, not on the seat belt.
This helps prevent damage to the vehicle interior and the extender itself.

**The steering wheel can be adjusted to a comfortable position while the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.**




1 Up
2 Down
3 Toward the driver
4 Away from the driver

## Auto tilt away and auto return




When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned OFF, the steering wheel returns to its stowed position by moving up and away to enable easier driver entry and exit.

Switching to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode will return the steering wheel to the original position.

### ⚠ CAUTION

**■ While driving**

Do not adjust the steering wheel.
Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

# Inside rear view mirror

**In the auto mode, sensors are used to detect the headlights of vehicles behind and automatically reduces the reflected light.**




Turns auto mode on/off

The indicator comes on when auto mode is turned on.

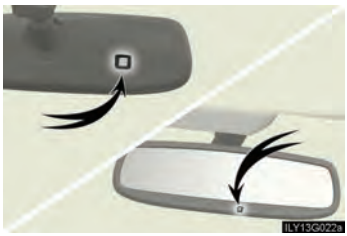
The mirror is automatically set to auto whenever the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned IGNITION ON mode.

## Adjusting the height of rear view mirror




Adjust the height of the rear view mirror by moving it up and down.

■ To prevent sensor error




To ensure correct functioning of the sensors, do not touch or cover the sensors.

**⚠ CAUTION**

■ While driving

Do not adjust the position of the mirror.
Doing so may lead to mishandling of the vehicle and an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

# Outside rear view mirrors



Mirror angle can be adjusted using the switch when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.




1 Select the mirror to adjust ("L": left or "R": right)

2 Adjust the mirror up, down, in, or out using the switch

## Folding and extending the mirrors




1 Press the switch

Pressing again will extend the mirrors.

■ **When the mirrors are fogged up**

Turn on the mirror heaters to defog the mirrors. (→P. 255)

■ **Auto anti-glare function**

When the inside rear view mirror is set to auto mode, the outside rear view mirrors will activate in conjunction with the inside rear view mirror to reduce reflected light. (→P. 71)

■ **Linked mirror function when reversing**

The outside rear view mirrors will automatically angle downwards when the vehicle is reversing in order to give a better view of the ground. However, this function will not operate when the mirror select switch is in the neutral position (neither "L" nor "R" selected).

■ **One-touch adjustment of the mirror angle**

A desired mirror face angle can be entered to memory and adjusted with the touch of a button. (→P. 55)

## ⚠ CAUTION

■ **While driving**

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in losing control of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not adjust the mirrors.
- Do not drive with the mirrors folded back.
- Before driving, be sure to extend mirrors and make an adjustment properly.

■ **When a mirror is moving**

To avoid injury and mirror malfunction, be careful not to get your hand caught by the moving mirror.

■ **When the mirror heaters are operating**

Do not touch the rear view mirror surfaces, as they can become very hot and burn you.

# Power windows



The power windows can be opened and closed using the following switches.




1 Closing
2 One-touch closing*
3 Opening
4 One-touch opening*

*: Pushing the switch in the opposite direction will stop window travel partway.

## Lock switch




Press the switch down to lock passenger window switches.

Use this switch to prevent children from accidentally opening or closing a passenger window.

■ **The power windows can be operated when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Linked door lock window operation**

- The power windows can be opened and closed using the mechanical key. (→P. 571)
- The power windows can be opened using the wireless remote control if customized at your Lexus dealer. (→P. 41)

■ **Operating the power windows after turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF**

The power windows can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is switched to ACCESSORY mode or turned OFF. They cannot, however, be operated once the driver's or front passenger's door is opened.

■ **Jam protection function**

If an object becomes caught between the window and the window frame, window travel is stopped and the window is opened slightly.

■ **Customization that can be configured at Lexus dealer**

Settings (e.g. linked door lock operation) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 620)

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ When closing the windows**

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when a window is being operated.
- Do not allow children to operate the power windows.
  Closing a power window on someone can cause death or serious injury.

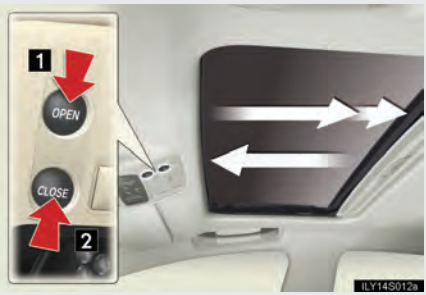
**■ Jam protection function**

- Never try jamming any part of your body to activate the jam protection function intentionally.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the window fully closes.

# Moon roof*

Use the overhead switches to open, close, and tilt the moon roof up and down.

## Opening and closing




1 Open

Stops just before it is opened fully. Press the switch again to fully open.

2 Close

To stop partway, press the switch lightly.

## Tilt up and down




1 Tilt up

2 Tilt down

To stop partway, press the switch lightly.

*: If equipped

■ **The moon roof can be operated when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Linked door lock moon roof operation**

- The moon roof can be opened and closed using the mechanical key. (→P. 571)
- The moon roof can be opened using the wireless remote control if customized at your Lexus dealer.* (→P. 41)

*: This function cannot be customized unless power window operation using the wireless remote control is enabled.

■ **Operating the moon roof after turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF**

The moon roof can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is switched to ACCESSORY mode or turned OFF. It cannot, however, be operated once the driver's door is opened.

■ **Jam protection function**

If an object is detected between the moon roof and the frame while closing or tilting down, travel is stopped and the moon roof opens slightly.

■ **If the moon roof cannot be closed automatically**

Keep the close switch depressed.

■ **To reduce moon roof wind noise**

Drive with the moon roof opened automatically (just before fully opened position).

■ **Sunshade**

The sunshade can be opened and closed manually. However, the sunshade will open automatically when the moon roof is opened.

■ **When the moon roof does not close normally**

Perform the following procedure:

● If the moon roof closes but then re-opens slightly

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle.

STEP 2 Press and hold the "CLOSE" switch.*1
The moon roof will close, reopen and pause for approximately 10 seconds.*2 Then it will close again, tilt up and pause for approximately 1 second. Finally, it will tilt down, open and close.

STEP 3 Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

● If the moon roof tilts down but then tilts back up

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle.

STEP 2 Press and hold the "UP" switch*1 until the moon roof moves into the tilt up position and stops.

STEP 3 Release the "UP" switch once and then press and hold the "UP" switch again.*1

The moon roof will pause for approximately 10 seconds in the tilt up position.*2 Then it will adjust slightly and pause for approximately 1 second. Finally, it will tilt down, open and close.

STEP 4 Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

*1: If the switch is released at the incorrect time, the procedure will have to be performed again from the beginning.

*2: If the switch is released after the above mentioned 10 second pause, automatic operation will be disabled. In that case, press and hold the "CLOSE" or "UP" switch, and the moon roof will tilt up and pause for approximately 1 second. Then it will tilt down, open and close. Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

If the moon roof does not fully close even after performing the above procedure correctly, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

### Customization that can be configured at Lexus dealer

Settings (e.g. linked door lock operation) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 620)

## CAUTION

### When opening the moon roof

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Do not allow any passengers to put their hands or heads outside the vehicle while it is moving.
- Do not sit on top of the moon roof.

### When closing the moon roof

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their bodies in a position where they could be caught when the moon roof is being operated.
- Do not allow children to operate the moon roof.
  Closing the moon roof on someone can cause death or serious injury.

### Jam protection function

- Never try jamming any part of your body to activate the jam protection function intentionally.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the moon roof fully closes.

# Opening the fuel tank cap

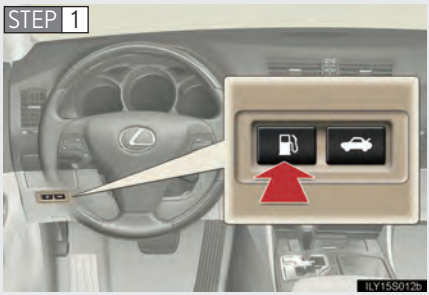
Perform the following steps to open the fuel tank cap.

## Before refueling the vehicle

Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF and ensure that all the doors and windows are closed.

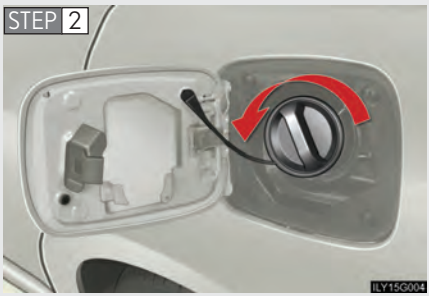
## Opening the fuel tank cap

STEP 1




Press the fuel filler door opener switch.

STEP 2




Turn the fuel tank cap slowly to open.

STEP 3




Hang the fuel tank cap on the back of the fuel filler door.

## Closing the fuel tank cap



After refueling, turn the fuel tank cap clockwise until you hear a click. The cap will revolve slightly in the opposite direction once released.

### Fuel types

Use premium unleaded gasoline. (Octane Rating 91 [Research Octane Number 96] or higher)

### Fuel tank capacity

Approximately 18.7 gal. (71 L, 15.6 Imp.gal.)

### When the fuel filler door opener switch is inoperable



The lever can be used to open the fuel filler door if the fuel filler door cannot be opened using the inside switch because the 12 volt battery is discharged or for any other reason.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ When refueling the vehicle**

Observe the following precautions while refueling the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Touch the vehicle or some other metal surface to discharge any static electricity.
  Sparks resulting from discharging static electricity may cause the fuel vapors to ignite.
- Always hold the grips on the fuel tank cap and turn it slowly to remove it.
  A whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel tank cap is loosened. Wait until the sound cannot be heard before fully removing the cap. In hot weather, pressurized fuel may spray out of the filler neck and cause injury.
- Do not allow anyone that has not discharged static electricity from their bodies to come close to an open fuel tank.
- Do not inhale vaporized fuel.
  Fuel contains substances that are harmful if inhaled.
- Do not smoke while refueling the vehicle.
  Doing so may cause the fuel to ignite and cause a fire.
- Do not return to the vehicle or touch any person or object that is statically charged.
  This may cause static electricity to build up, resulting in a possible ignition hazard.

**■ When replacing the fuel tank cap**

Do not use anything but a genuine Lexus fuel tank cap designed for your vehicle. Failure to do so may cause a fire or other incident which may result in death or serious injury.

## NOTICE

**■ Refueling**

Do not spill fuel during refueling.
Failing to do so may damage the vehicle, such as causing the exhaust systems to operate abnormally or damaging fuel system components or the vehicle's painted surface.

# Immobilizer system



**The vehicle's keys have built-in transponder chips that prevent the engine from starting if the key has not been previously registered in the vehicle's on-board computer.**

**Never leave the keys inside the vehicle when you leave the vehicle.**




The indicator light flashes after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been turned OFF to indicate that the system is operating.

The indicator light stops flashing after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode to indicate that the system has been canceled.

---

■ **System maintenance**

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type immobilizer system.

■ **Conditions that may cause the system to malfunction**

- If the grip portion of the key is in contact with a metallic object.
- If the key is in close proximity to or touching a key to the security system (key with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle.

■ **Certifications for the immobilizer system**

▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

FCC ID: NI4TMIMB-1

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

**⚠ CAUTION**

■ **Certifications for the immobilizer system**

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

**⚠ NOTICE**

■ **To ensure the system operates correctly**

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

# Alarm



**The system sounds the alarm and flashes lights when forcible entry is detected.**

## Triggering of the alarm

The alarm is triggered in the following situations.

- A locked door or trunk is unlocked or opened in any way other than by using the smart access system with push-button start, wireless remote control or mechanical key. (The doors will lock again automatically.)
- The hood is opened while the vehicle is locked.

## Setting the alarm system




Close the doors, trunk and hood, and lock all doors.
The system will be set automatically after 30 seconds.

The indicator light changes from being on to flashing when the system is set.

## Deactivating or stopping the alarm

Do one of the following to deactivate or stop the alarm.

- Unlock the doors or trunk.
- Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, or start the engine. (The alarm will be deactivated or stopped after a few seconds.)

### System maintenance

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type alarm system.

### Items to check before locking the vehicle

To prevent unexpected triggering of the alarm and vehicle theft, make sure of the following:

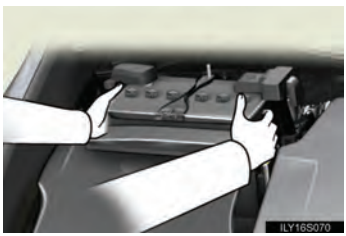
- Nobody is in the vehicle.
- The windows and moon roof are closed before the alarm is set.
- No valuables or other personal items are left in the vehicle.

### Triggering of the alarm

The alarm may be triggered in the following situations.
(Stopping the alarm deactivates the alarm system.)




- A person inside the vehicle opens a door, the trunk or hood.




- The 12 volt battery is recharged or replaced when the vehicle is locked.

### When the 12 volt battery is disconnected

Be sure to cancel the alarm system.
If the 12 volt battery is disconnected before canceling the alarm, the system may be triggered when the battery is reconnected.

### Alarm-operated door lock

- When the alarm is operating, the doors are locked automatically to prevent intruders.
- Do not leave the key inside the vehicle when the alarm is operating, and make sure the key is not inside the vehicle when recharging or replacing the 12 volt battery.

### Panic mode




When is pressed for longer than about one second, an alarm will sound intermittently and the vehicle lights will flash to deter any person from trying to break into or damage your vehicle.

To stop the alarm, press any button on the electronic key.

NOTICE

### To ensure the system operates correctly

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

# Theft prevention labels (U.S.A.)




These labels are attached to the vehicle to reduce vehicle theft by facilitating the tracing and recovery of parts from stolen vehicles. Do not remove under penalty of law.

# Correct driving posture



Drive with a good posture as follows:




1. Sit upright and well back in the seat. (→P. 53)
2. Adjust the position of the seat forward or backward to ensure the pedals can be reached and easily depressed to the extent required. (→P. 53)
3. Adjust the seatback so that the controls are easily operable.
4. Adjust the tilt and telescopic positions of the steering wheel downward so the airbag is facing your chest. (→P. 70)
5. Lock the head restraint in place with the center of the head restraint closest to the top of your ears. (→P. 60)
6. Wear the seat belt correctly. (→P. 63)

## ⚠ CAUTION

### While driving

- Do not adjust the position of the driver's seat.
  Doing so could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- Do not place a cushion between the driver or passenger and the seatback.
  A cushion may prevent correct posture from being achieved, and reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and head restraint, increasing the risk of death or serious injury to the driver or passenger.
- Do not place anything under the front seats.
  Objects placed under the front seats may become jammed in the seat tracks and stop the seat from locking in place. This may lead to an accident. The adjustment mechanism may also be damaged.

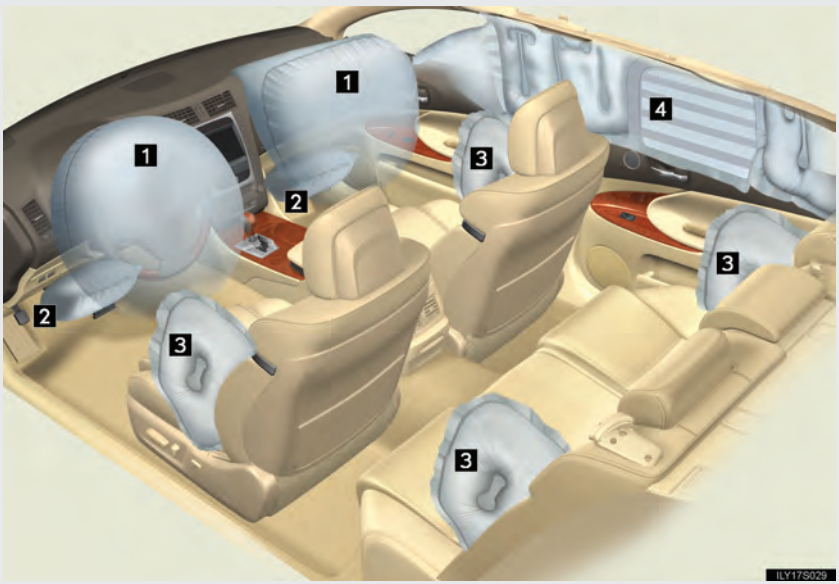
### Adjusting the seat position

- Take care when adjusting the seat position to ensure that other passengers are not injured by the moving seat.
- Do not put your hands under the seat or near the moving parts to avoid injury.
  Fingers or hands may become jammed in the seat mechanism.

# SRS airbags



**The SRS airbags inflate when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe impacts that may cause significant injury to the occupants. They work together with the seat belts to help reduce the risk of death or serious injury.**




▶ Front airbags

1 Driver airbag/front passenger airbag
Can help protect the head and chest of the driver and front passenger from impact with interior components.

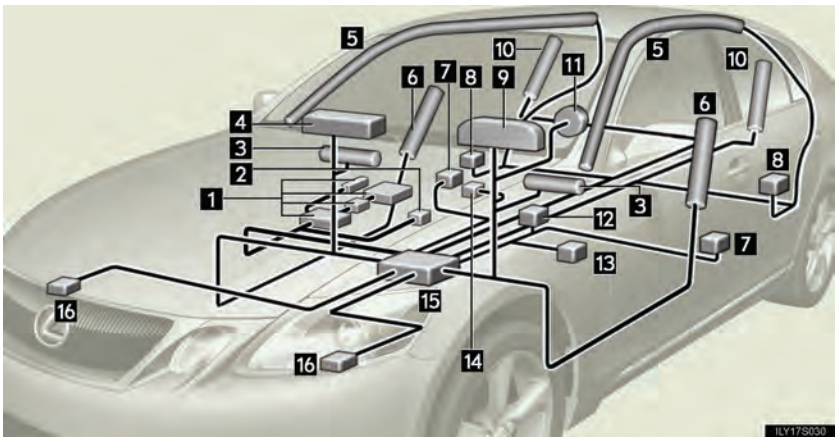
2 Knee airbag
Can help provide driver and front passenger protection.

▶ Side and curtain shield airbags

3 Front side airbag/rear side airbag (rear side airbags are optional)
Can help protect the torso of the front occupants and rear outboard occupants.

4 Curtain shield airbag
Can help protect primarily the head of front occupants and rear outboard occupants.

## Airbag system components




1 Occupant detection system (ECU and sensors)
2 Front passenger's seat belt buckle switch
3 Knee airbag
4 Front passenger airbag
5 Curtain shield airbag
6 Front side airbag
7 Side and curtain shield airbag sensor
8 Curtain shield and rear side airbag sensor
9 SRS warning light
10 Rear side airbag (if equipped)
11 Driver airbag
12 Driver's seat belt buckle switch
13 Driver's seat position sensor
14 "AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights
15 Airbag sensor assembly
16 Front airbag sensor

Your vehicle is equipped with "ADVANCED AIRBAGS" designed based on US motor vehicle safety standards (FMVSS208). The airbag system controls airbag deployment power for the driver and front passenger. The driver airbag system consists of the driver's seat position sensor etc. The front passenger's airbag system consists of the front passenger occupant classification sensor etc.

The main SRS airbag system components are shown above. The SRS airbag system is controlled by the airbag sensor assembly. The airbag sensor assembly consists of a safing sensor and an airbag sensor.

In certain types of severe frontal or side impacts, the SRS airbag system triggers the airbag inflators. A chemical reaction in the inflators quickly fills the airbags with non-toxic gas to help restrain the motion of the occupants.

---

■ **If the SRS airbags deploy (inflate)**

- Bruising and slight abrasions may result from contact with a deploying (inflating) SRS airbag.
- A loud noise and white powder will be emitted.
- Parts of the airbag module (steering wheel hub, airbag cover and inflator) as well as the seats, and parts of the front pillar and roof side rail, may be hot for several minutes. The airbag itself may also be hot.
- The windshield may crack.
- For vehicles with Safety Connect: For Safety Connect subscribers, if the SRS airbags deploy or in the event of a severe collision, the system is designed to send an emergency call to the response center, notifying them of the vehicle's location (without needing to push the "SOS" button) and an agent will attempt to speak with the occupants to ascertain the level of emergency and assistance required. If the occupants are unable to communicate, the agent automatically treats the call as an emergency and helps to dispatch the necessary emergency services. (→P. 421)

■ **SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS front airbags)**

- The SRS front airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to an approximately 12 - 18 mph [20 - 30 km/h] frontal collision with a fixed wall that does not move or deform).

  However, this threshold velocity will be considerably higher if the vehicle strikes an object, such as a parked vehicle or sign pole, which can move or deform on impact, or if the vehicle is involved in an underride collision (e.g. a collision in which the front of the vehicle "underrides", or goes under, the bed of a truck, etc.).

- It is possible that in some collisions where the forward deceleration of the vehicle is very close to the designed threshold level, the SRS front airbags and the seat belt pretensioners may not activate together.

- The SRS front passenger airbag will not activate, if there is not passenger sitting in the front passenger seat. However, the front passenger airbag may deploy, if luggage is put in the seat, or the seat belt is fastened, even if the seat is unoccupied. (→P. 105)

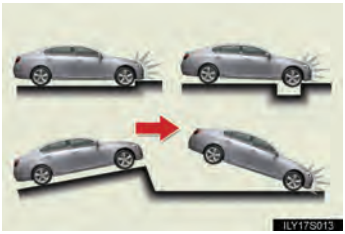
■ **SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS side airbags and SRS curtain shield airbags)**

- The SRS side airbags and SRS curtain shield airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to the impact force produced by an approximately 3300 lb. [1500 kg] vehicle colliding with the vehicle cabin from a direction perpendicular to the vehicle orientation at an approximately speed of 12 - 18 mph [20 - 30 km/h]).

- The SRS front side airbag on the passenger seat will not activate if there is no passenger sitting in the front passenger seat. However, the front side airbag on the passenger seat may deploy if luggage is put in the seat, or the seat belt is fastened, even if the seat is unoccupied. (→P. 105)

### Conditions under which the SRS airbags may deploy (inflate), other than a collision

The SRS front airbags may also deploy if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle. Some examples are shown in the illustration.




- Hitting a curb, edge of pavement or hard surface
- Falling into or jumping over a deep hole
- Landing hard or vehicle falling

### Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbag (front airbags)

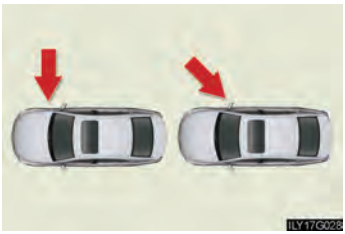
The SRS front airbags are generally not designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a side or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision. But, whenever a collision of any type causes sufficient forward deceleration of the vehicle, deployment of the SRS front airbags may occur.




- Collision from the side
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover

### Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbag (side and curtain shield airbags)

The SRS side airbag and curtain shield airbag system may not activate if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from the side at certain angles, or a collision to the side of the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment.



- Collision from the side to the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment
- Collision from the side at an angle

The SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags are generally not designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a frontal or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed side collision.

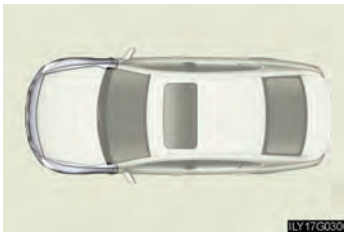


- Collision from the front
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover

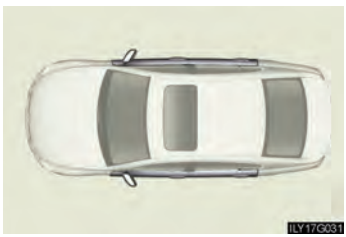
## When to contact your Lexus dealer

In the following cases, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

- Any of the SRS airbags have been inflated.




- The front of the vehicle is damaged or deformed, or was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS airbags to inflate.




- A portion of the doors is damaged or deformed, or the vehicle was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags to inflate.




- The pad section of the steering wheel, front passenger airbag cover or lower portion of the instrument panel is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.




- The surface of the seats with the side airbag is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.
- The portion of the front pillars, rear pillars or roof side rail garnishes (padding) containing the curtain shield airbags inside is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.

## ⚠ CAUTION

### SRS airbag precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the airbags. Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- The driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly. The SRS airbags are supplemental devices to be used with the seat belts.
- The SRS driver airbag deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the driver is very close to the airbag. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration ("NHTSA") advises:

  Since the risk zone for driver airbag is the first 2 - 3 in. (50 - 75 mm) of inflation, placing yourself 10 in. (250 mm) from your driver airbag provides you with a clear margin of safety. This distance is measured from the center of the steering wheel to your breastbone. If you sit less than 10 in. (250 mm) away now, you can change your driving position in several ways:

  - Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
  - Slightly recline the back of the seat. Although vehicle designs vary, many drivers can achieve the 10 in. (250 mm) distance, even with the driver seat all the way forward, simply by reclining the back of the seat somewhat. If reclining the back of your seat makes it hard to see the road, raise yourself by using a firm, non-slippery cushion, or raise the seat if your vehicle has that feature.
  - If your steering wheel is adjustable, tilt it downward. This points the airbag toward your chest instead of your head and neck.

The seat should be adjusted as recommended by NHTSA above, while still maintaining control of the foot pedals, steering wheel, and your view of the instrument panel controls.

## CAUTION

### SRS airbag precautions



- If the seat belt extender has been connected to the driver's seat belt buckle but the seat belt extender has not also been fastened to the latch plate of the driver's seat belt, the SRS driver's airbag system will judge that the driver is wearing the seat belt even though the seat belt has not been connected. In this case, the driver's airbag may not activate correctly in a collision, resulting in death or serious injury in the event of collision. Be sure to wear the seat belt with the seat belt extender.
- The SRS front passenger airbag also deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the front passenger is very close to the airbag. The front passenger seat should be as far from the airbag as possible with the seatback adjusted, so the front passenger sits upright.
- Improperly seated and/or restrained infants and children can be killed or seriously injured by a deploying airbag. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system. Lexus strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seats of the vehicle and properly restrained. The rear seats are the safest for infants and children. (→P. 110)

## ⚠ CAUTION

### ■ SRS airbag precautions



● Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the dashboard.



● Do not allow a child to stand in front of the SRS front passenger airbag unit or sit on the knees of a front passenger.

● Do not drive the vehicle while the driver or passenger have items resting on their knees.



● Do not lean against the door, the roof side rail or the front, side and rear pillars.



● Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seat toward the door or put their head or hands outside the vehicle.

## CAUTION

### SRS airbag precautions




- Do not attach anything to or lean anything against areas such as the dashboard, steering wheel pad or lower portion of the instrument panel. These items can become projectiles when SRS driver, front passenger and knee airbags deploy.




- Do not attach anything to areas such as the door, windshield glass, side door glass, front and rear pillars, roof side rail or assist grip.
- Do not hang coat hangers or other hard objects on the coat hooks. All of these items could become projectiles and may cause death or serious injury, should the SRS curtain shield airbag deploy.

- If the vinyl cover is put on the area where the SRS knee airbag will deploy, be sure to remove it.
- Do not use seat accessories which cover the parts where the SRS side airbags inflate as they may interfere with inflation of the airbags.
- Do not strike or apply significant levels of force to the area of the SRS airbag components shown on P. 94. Doing so can cause the SRS airbags to malfunction.
- Do not touch any of the component parts immediately after the SRS airbags have deployed (inflated) as they may be hot.

## ⚠ CAUTION

### ■ SRS airbag precautions

- If breathing becomes difficult after the SRS airbag has deployed, open a door or window to allow fresh air in, or leave the vehicle if it is safe to do so. Wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent skin irritation.
- If the areas where the SRS airbags are stored, such as the steering wheel pad and front pillar garnish, are damaged or cracked, have them replaced by your Lexus dealer.
- Do not place anything, such as a cushion, on the front passenger's seat. Doing so will disperse the passenger's weight, which prevents the sensor from detecting the passenger's weight properly. As a result, the SRS front passenger airbag may not deploy in the event of a collision.

### ■ Modification and disposal of SRS airbag system components

Do not dispose of your vehicle or perform any of the following modifications without consulting your Lexus dealer. The SRS airbags may malfunction or deploy (inflate) accidentally, causing death or serious injury.

- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of the SRS airbags
- Repairs, modifications, removal or replacement of the steering wheel, instrument panel, dashboard, seats or seat upholstery, front, side and rear pillars or roof side rail
- Repairs or modifications of the front fender, front bumper, or side of the occupant compartment
- Installation of snow plows, winches, etc. to the front grille (bull bars, kangaroo bar etc.)
- Modifications to the vehicle's suspension system
- Installation of electronic devices such as mobile two-way radios or CD players
- Modifications to your vehicle for a person with a physical disability

# Front passenger occupant classification system



Your vehicle is equipped with a front passenger occupant classification system. This system detects the conditions of the front passenger seat and activates or deactivates the devices for front passenger.




1 SRS warning light
2 "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light
3 "AIR BAG ON" indicator light
4 Front passenger's seat belt reminder light

## Condition and operation in the front passenger occupant classification system

### Adult*1

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Indicator/ warning light | "AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights | "AIR BAG ON" |
| | SRS warning light | Off |
| | Front passenger's seat belt reminder light | Flashing*2 |
| Devices | Front passenger airbag and knee airbag | Activated |
| | Side airbag in the front passenger seat | |
| | Curtain shield airbag on the front passenger side | |
| | Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner | |

### Child*3 or child restraint system*4

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Indicator/ warning light | "AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights | "AIR BAG OFF"*5 |
| | SRS warning light | Off |
| | Front passenger's seat belt reminder light | Flashing*2 |
| Devices | Front passenger airbag and knee airbag | Deactivated |
| | Side airbag in the front passenger seat | |
| | Curtain shield airbag on the front passenger side | Activated |
| | Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner | |

## Unoccupied

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Indicator/ warning light | "AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights | Not illuminated |
| | SRS warning light | Off |
| | Front passenger's seat belt reminder light | |
| Devices | Front passenger airbag and knee airbag | Deactivated |
| | Side airbag in the front passenger seat | |
| | Curtain shield airbag on the front passenger side | Activated |
| | Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner | Deactivated |

## System malfunction

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Indicator/ warning light | "AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights | "AIR BAG OFF" |
| | SRS warning light | On |
| | Front passenger's seat belt reminder light | Off |
| Devices | Front passenger airbag and knee airbag | Deactivated |
| | Side airbag in the front passenger seat | |
| | Curtain shield airbag on the front passenger side | Activated |
| | Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner | |

*1: The system judges a person of adult size as an adult. When a smaller adult sits in the front passenger seat, the system may recognize him/her as a child depending on his/her physique and posture.
*2: In the event the front passenger does not wear a seat belt.
*3: When a large child who has outgrown a child restraint system sits in the front passenger seat, the system may recognize him/her as an adult depending on his/her physique and posture.
*4: Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat. A forward-facing child restraint system should only be installed on the front passenger seat when it is unavoidable. (→P. 110)
*5: In case the indicator is not illuminated, consult this manual on how to install the child restraint system properly. (→P. 114)

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Front passenger occupant classification system precautions**

Observe the following precautions regarding the front passenger occupant classification system.

Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Wear the seat belt properly.
- Make sure the front passenger's seat belt tab has not been left inserted into the buckle before someone sits in the front passenger seat.
- Make sure the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is not illuminated when using the seat belt extender for the front passenger seat. If the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated, disconnect the extender tongue from the seat belt buckle, then reconnect the seat belt. Reconnect the seat belt extender after making sure the "AIR BAG ON" indicator light is illuminated. If you use the seat belt extender while the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated, the front passenger airbag, side airbag on the front passenger side and front passenger knee airbag may not activate correctly, which could cause death or serious injury in the event of a collision.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Front passenger occupant classification system precautions**

- Do not apply a heavy load to the front passenger seat or equipment.
- Do not put weight on the front passenger seat by putting your hands or feet on the front passenger seat seatback from the rear seat.
- Do not let a rear seat passenger lift the front passenger seat with their feet or press on the seatback with their legs.
- Do not put objects under the front passenger seat.
- Do not recline the front passenger seatback so far that it touches a rear seat. This may cause the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light to be illuminated, which indicates that the passenger's airbags will not deploy in the event of a severe accident. If the seatback touches the rear seat, return the seatback to a position where it does not touch the rear seat. Keep the front passenger seatback as upright as possible when the vehicle is moving. Reclining the seatback excessively may lessen the effectiveness of the seat belt system.
- If an adult sits in the front passenger seat, the "AIR BAG ON" indicator light is illuminated. If the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator is illuminated, ask the passenger to sit up straight, well back in the seat, feet on the floor, and with the seat belt worn correctly. If the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator still remains illuminated, either ask the passenger to move to the rear seat, or if that is not possible, move the front passenger seat fully rearward.
- When it is unavoidable to install a forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, install the child restraint system on the front passenger seat in the proper order. (→P. 114)
- Do not modify or remove the front seat.
- Do not kick the front passenger seat or subject it to severe impact. Otherwise, the SRS warning light may come on to indicate a malfunction in the detection system. In this case, contact your Lexus dealer immediately.
- Do not use a seat accessory, such as a cushion or seat cover, that covers the seat cushion surface.
- Child restraint systems installed on the rear seat should not contact the front seatbacks.

# Child restraint systems

**A child restraint system for a small child or baby must itself be properly restrained on the seat with the lap portion of the lap/shoulder belt.**

**The laws of all 50 states of the U.S.A. and Canada now require the use of child restraint systems.**

## Points to remember

Studies have shown that installing a child restraint on a rear seat is much safer than installing one to the front passenger seat.

- Choose a child restraint system that suits your vehicle and is appropriate to the age and size of the child.
- For installation details, follow the instructions provided with the child restraint system.
  General installation instructions are provided in this manual. (→P. 114)

## Types of child restraints

Child restraint systems are classified into the following 3 types according to the age and size of the child.

▶ Rear facing — Infant seat/convertible seat




▶ Forward facing — Convertible seat




▶ Booster seat



■ Selecting an appropriate child restraint system

- Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.
- If a child is too large for a child restraint system, sit the child on a rear seat and use the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 63)

## ⚠ CAUTION

■ Using a child restraint system

The use of a child restraint system not suitable for the vehicle may not properly secure the infant or child, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Child restraint precautions

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system depending on the age and size of the child. Holding a child in your arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield, or between you and the vehicle's interior.
- Lexus strongly urges the use of a proper child restraint system that conforms to the size of the child, installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.
- Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat even if the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated. In the event of an accident, the force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child if the rear-facing child restraint system is installed on the front passenger seat.
- A forward-facing child restraint system may be installed on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. A child restraint system that requires a top tether strap should not be used in the front passenger seat since there is no top tether strap anchor for the front passenger seat. Adjust the seatback as upright as possible and always move the seat as far back as possible even if the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated, because the front passenger airbag could inflate with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, the child may be killed or seriously injured.

## ⚠ CAUTION

### Child restraint precautions

- Do not use the seat belt extender when installing a child restraint system on the front or rear passenger seat. If installing a child restraint system with the seat belt extender connected to the seat belt, the seat belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, which could cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or accident.
- Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front pillar or roof side rail from which the side airbags or curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the side airbags and curtain shield airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.
- Make sure you have complied with all installation instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and that the system is properly secured. If it is not secured properly, it may cause death or serious injury to the child in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or an accident.

### Child restraint lock function belt precaution

Do not allow children to play with the child restraint lock function belt. If the belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it will not be possible to pull the belt out leading to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death.
If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.

### When the child restraint system is not in use

- Keep the child restraint system properly secured on the seat even if it is not in use. Do not store the restraint unsecured in the passenger compartment.
- If it is necessary to detach the child restraint system, remove it from the vehicle or store it securely in the trunk. This will prevent it from injuring passengers in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or accident.

# Installing child restraints

**Follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions. Firmly secure child restraints to the rear seats using the LATCH anchors or a seat belt. Attach the top tether strap when installing a child restraint.**

**The lap/shoulder belt can be used if your child restraint system is not compatible with the LATCH (Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children) system.**

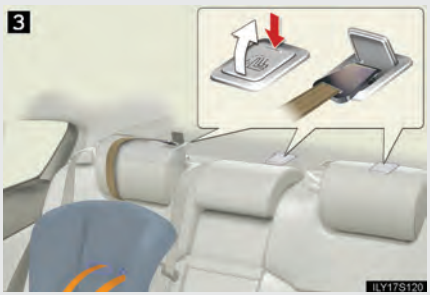



1 Child restraint LATCH anchors

LATCH anchors are provided for the outboard rear seats. (Buttons displaying the location of the anchors are attached to the seats.)




2 Seat belts equipped with a child restraint locking mechanism (ALR/ELR belts except driver's seat belt)

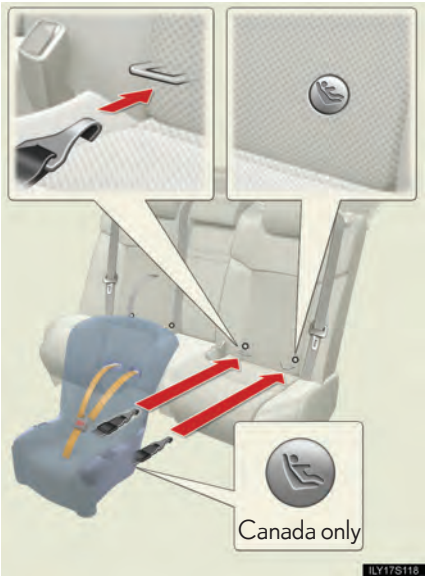



3 Anchor bracket (for top tether strap)

Anchor brackets are provided for all rear seats.

## Installation with LATCH system

▶ Type A



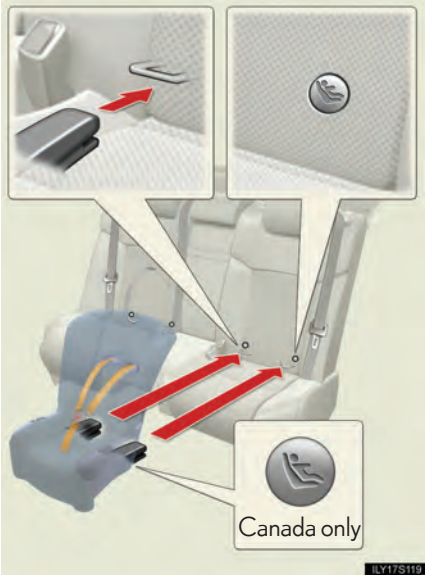

STEP 1 Widen the gap between the seat cushion and seatback slightly.

STEP 2 Latch the hooks of the lower straps onto the LATCH anchors.

STEP 3 If the child restraint has a top tether strap, the top tether strap should be latched onto the top tether strap anchor.

For owners in Canada:
The symbol on a child restraint system indicates the presence of a lower connector system.

▶ Type B




STEP 1 Widen the gap between the seat cushion and seatback slightly.

STEP 2 Latch the buckles onto the LATCH anchors.

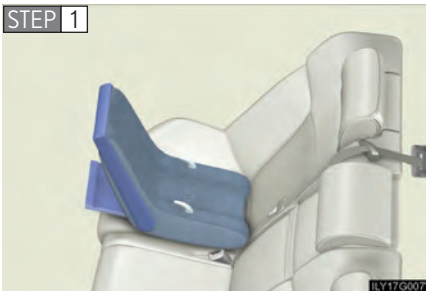
STEP 3 If the child restraint has a top tether strap, the top tether strap should be latched onto the top tether strap anchor.

For owners in Canada:
The symbol on a child restraint system indicates the presence of a lower connector system.

## Installing child restraints using a seat belt (child restraint lock function belt)

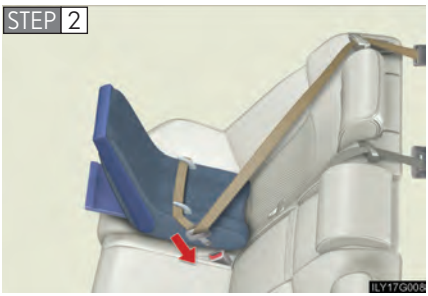
### Rear-facing — Infant seat/convertible seat

STEP 1



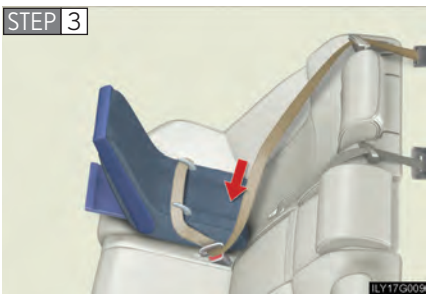
Place the child restraint system on the rear seat facing the rear of the vehicle.

STEP 2



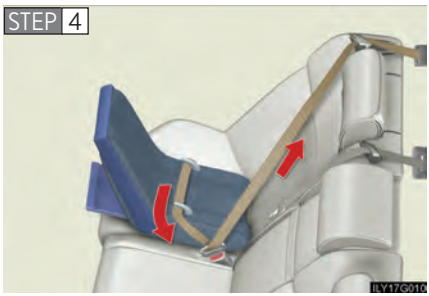
Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

STEP 3



Fully extend the shoulder belt and then allow it to retract slightly in order to activate the ALR lock mode.

Lock mode allows the seat belt to retract only.




While pushing the child restraint system down into the rear seat, allow the shoulder belt to retract until the child restraint system is securely in place.

After the shoulder belt has retracted to a point where there is no slack in the belt, pull the belt to check that it cannot be extended.

## Forward-facing — Convertible seat




Place the child restraint system on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.




Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

STEP 3



Fully extend the shoulder strap and then allow it to retract slightly into the ALR lock mode.

Lock mode allows the seat belt to retract only.

STEP 4



While pushing the child restraint system into the rear seat, allow the shoulder belt to retract until the child restraint system is securely in place.

After the shoulder belt has retracted to a point where there is no slack in the belt, pull the belt to check that it cannot be extended.

STEP 5 If the child restraint has a top tether strap, the top tether strap should be latched onto the top tether strap anchor. (→P. 121)

## Booster seat



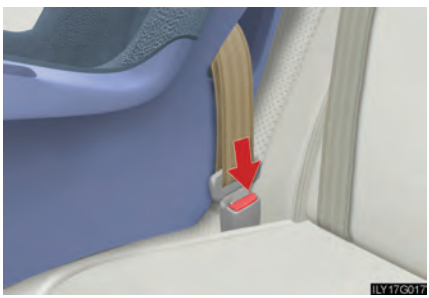

Place the child restraint system on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.




Sit the child in the child restraint system. Fit the seat belt to the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

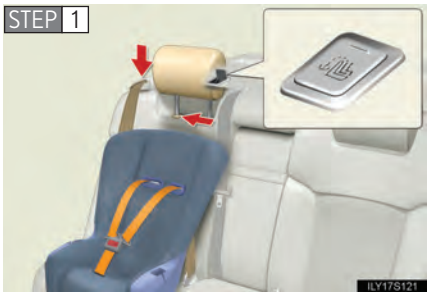
Check that the shoulder belt is correctly positioned over the child's shoulder, and that the lap belt is as low as possible. (→P. 63)

### Removing a child restraint installed with a seat belt

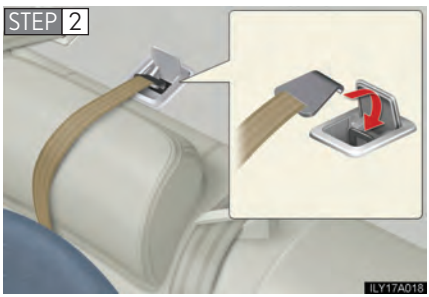



Push the buckle release button and fully retract the seat belt.

## Child restraint systems with a top tether strap




Secure the child restraint system using a seat belt or lower anchors, and move the head restraint in place at the lowest position.




Open the anchor bracket cover, latch the hook onto the anchor bracket and tighten the top tether strap.

Make sure the top tether strap is securely latched.

### Laws and regulations pertaining to anchorages

The LATCH system conforms to FMVSS225 or CMVSS210.2.
Child restraint systems conforming to FMVSS213 or CMVSS213 specifications can be used.
This vehicle is designed to conform to the SAE J1819.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ When installing a booster seat**

Do not fully extend the shoulder belt to prevent the belt from going to ALR lock mode: (→P. 66)

ALR mode causes the belt to tighten only which could cause injury or discomfort to the child.

**■ When installing a child restraint system**

Follow the directions given in the child restraint system installation manual and fix the child restraint system securely in place.
If the child restraint system is not correctly fixed in place, the child or other passengers may be injured or even killed in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.







- If the driver's seat interferes with the child restraint system and prevents it from being attached correctly, attach the child restraint system to the right-hand rear seat.
- Adjust the front passenger seat so that it does not interfere with the child restraint system.
- Only put a forward-facing child restraint system on the front seat when unavoidable. When installing a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible even if the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury if the airbags deploy (inflate).

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ When installing a child restraint system**

- When a booster seat is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
- Ensure the belt and tab are securely locked and that the seat belt is not twisted.
- Push and pull the child restraint system from side to side and forward to be sure it is secure.
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

**■ Do not use a seat belt extender**

If a seat belt extender is used when installing a child restraint system, the seat belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, which could cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of sudden stop, sudden swerve or an accident.

**■ To correctly attach a child restraint system to the anchors**

When using the LATCH anchors, be sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchors and that the seat belt is not caught behind the child restraint system. Make sure the child restraint system is securely attached, or it may cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or accident.

# When driving 2


**2-1. Driving procedures**

Driving the vehicle ..... 126
Engine (ignition) switch ..... 135
Automatic transmission ..... 139
Turn signal lever ..... 144
Parking brake ..... 145
Horn ..... 146

**2-2. Instrument cluster**

Gauges and meters ..... 147
Indicators and warning lights ..... 151
Multi-information display ..... 154

**2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers**

Headlight switch ..... 157
Fog light switch ..... 160
Windshield wipers and washer ..... 161
Headlight cleaner switch ..... 166

**2-4. Using other driving systems**

Cruise control ..... 167
Dynamic radar cruise control ..... 171
Intuitive parking assist ..... 183
Rear view monitor system ..... 196
AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension System) ..... 199
Driving assist systems ..... 200
PCS (Pre-Collision System) ..... 207

**2-5. Driving information**

Cargo and luggage ..... 214
Vehicle load limits ..... 218
Winter driving tips ..... 219
Trailer towing ..... 224
Dinghy towing ..... 225

**The following procedures should be observed to ensure safe driving.**

## Starting the engine (→P. 135)

## Driving

STEP 1 With the brake pedal depressed, shift the shift lever to "D". (→P. 139)

STEP 2 Release the parking brake. (→P. 145)

STEP 3 Gradually release the brake pedal and gently push the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

## Stopping

STEP 1 With the shift lever in "D", push the brake pedal.

STEP 2 If necessary, set the parking brake.

When the vehicle is stopped for an extended period of time, shift the shift lever to "P". (→P. 139)

## Parking the vehicle

STEP 1 With the shift lever in "D", push the brake pedal.

STEP 2 Set the parking brake. (→P. 145)

STEP 3 Shift the shift lever to "P". (→P. 139)

STEP 4 Stop the engine.

STEP 5 Lock the door, making sure that you have the electronic key on your person.

## Starting on a steep incline

STEP 1 Firmly set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to "D".

STEP 2 Gently depress the accelerator pedal.

STEP 3 Release the parking brake.

■ **Driving in the rain**

- Drive carefully when it is raining, because visibility will be reduced, the windows may become fogged-up, and the road will be slippery.
- Drive carefully when it starts to rain, because the road surface will be especially slippery.
- Refrain from high speeds when driving on an expressway in the rain, because there may be a layer of water between the tires and the road surface, preventing the steering and brakes from operating properly.

■ **Breaking in your new Lexus**

To extend the life of the vehicle, the following precautions are recommended to observe:

- For the first 186 miles (300 km):
  Avoid sudden stops.
- For the first 621 miles (1000 km):
  - Do not drive at extremely high speeds.
  - Avoid sudden acceleration.
  - Do not drive continuously in the low range in the "S" position.
  - Do not drive at a constant speed for extended periods.

■ **Drum-in-disc type parking brake system**

Your vehicle has a drum-in-disc type parking brake system.
This type of brake system needs bedding-down of the brake shoes periodically or whenever the parking brake shoes and/or drums are replaced.
Have your Lexus dealer perform the bedding-down.

■ **Operating your vehicle in a foreign country**

Comply with the relevant vehicle registration laws and confirm the availability of the correct fuel. (→P. 589)

■ **When starting on an incline**

The hill-start assist control may operate. (→P. 200)

## ⚠ CAUTION

### When starting the vehicle

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while stopped with the engine running. This prevents the vehicle from creeping.

### When driving the vehicle

- Do not drive if you are unfamiliar with the location of the brake and accelerator pedals to avoid depressing the wrong pedal.
  - Accidentally depressing the accelerator pedal instead of the brake pedal will result in sudden acceleration that may lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.
  - When backing up, you may twist your body around, leading to a difficulty in operating the pedals. Make sure to operate the pedals properly.
  - Make sure to keep a correct driving posture even when moving the vehicle only slightly, allowing you to depress the brake and accelerator pedals properly.
  - Depress the brake pedal using your right foot. Depressing the brake pedal using your left foot may delay response in an emergency, resulting in an accident.
- Do not drive the vehicle over or stop the vehicle near flammable materials.
  The exhaust system and exhaust gases can be extremely hot. This may cause a fire if there is any flammable material nearby.
- Do not let the vehicle roll backwards while the shift lever is in a driving position, or roll forward while the shift lever is in "R".
  Doing so may cause the engine not to operate or lead to poor brake and steering performance, resulting in an accident or damage to the vehicle.
- If the smell of exhaust is noticed inside the vehicle, open the windows and check that the trunk is closed.
  Large amounts of exhaust in the vehicle can cause driver drowsiness and an accident, resulting in death or a serious health hazard. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

## ⚠ CAUTION

### ■ When driving the vehicle

- Do not under any circumstances shift the shift lever to "P", "R" or "N" while the vehicle is moving.
  Doing so can cause significant damage to the automatic transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to "N" while the vehicle is moving.
  Doing so may cause the engine brake not to operate properly and lead to an accident.
- Do not turn the engine off while driving.
  The power steering and brake actuator (GS460) or brake booster (GS350) will not operate properly if the engine is off.
- Use engine braking (downshift) to maintain a safe speed when driving down a steep hill.
  Using the brakes continuously may cause the brakes to overheat and lose effectiveness. (→P. 141)
- When stopped on an inclined surface, use the brake pedal and parking brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling backward or forward and causing an accident.
- Be careful when driving on slippery surfaces, as the vehicle may spin or skid when downshifting, rapidly accelerating, braking or turning.
- Do not adjust the position of the steering wheel, the seat, or the inside or outside rear view mirrors while driving.
  Doing so may result in a loss of vehicle control that can cause accidents that may result in death or serious injury.
- Always check that all passengers' arms, heads or other parts of their bodies are not outside the vehicle, as this may result in death or serious injury.
- Do not drive in excess of the speed limit. Even if the legal speed limit permits it, do not drive over 85 mph (140 km/h) unless your vehicle has high-speed capability tires. Driving over 85 mph (140 km/h) may result in tire failure, loss of control and possible injury. Be sure to consult a tire dealer to determine whether the tires on your vehicle are high-speed capability tires or not before driving at such speeds.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ When driving on slippery road surfaces**

- Sudden braking, acceleration and steering may cause tire slippage and reduce your ability to control the vehicle, resulting in an accident.
- Sudden changes in engine speed, such as engine braking caused by up-shifting or down-shifting, may cause the vehicle to skid, resulting in an accident.
- After driving through a puddle, lightly depress the brake pedal to make sure that the brakes are functioning properly. Wet brake pads may prevent the brakes from functioning properly. If the brakes on only one side are wet and not functioning properly, steering control may be affected, resulting in an accident.

**■ When shifting the shift lever**

Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed.
This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.

**■ When the vehicle is stopped**

- Do not race the engine.
  If the vehicle is in any positions other than "P" or "N" the vehicle may accelerate suddenly and unexpectedly, and may cause an accident.
- Do not leave the vehicle with the engine on for a long time.
  If such a situation cannot be avoided, park the vehicle in an open space and check that exhaust fumes do not enter the vehicle interior.
- In order to prevent accidents due to the vehicle rolling away, always keep depressing the brake pedal while the engine is running, and apply the parking brake as necessary.
- If the vehicle is stopped on an incline, in order to prevent accidents caused by the vehicle rolling forward or backward, always depress the brake pedal and securely apply the parking brake as needed.
- Avoid revving or racing the engine. Running the engine at high speed while the vehicle is stopped may cause the exhaust system to overheat, which could result in a fire if combustible material is nearby.

## ⚠ CAUTION

### ■ When the vehicle is parked

- Do not leave glasses, cigarette lighters, spray cans, or soft drink cans in the vehicle when it is in the sun.
  Failure to do so may result in the following:
  - Gas may leak from a cigarette lighter or spray can, and may lead to a fire.
  - The temperature inside the vehicle may cause the plastic lenses and plastic material of eye glasses to deform or crack.
  - Soft drink cans may fracture, causing the contents to spray over the interior of the vehicle, and may also cause a short circuit in the vehicle's electrical components.
- Always apply the parking brake, shift the shift lever to "P", stop the engine and lock the vehicle.
  Do not leave the vehicle unattended while the engine is running.
- Do not touch the exhaust pipe while the engine is running or immediately after turning the engine off.
  Doing so may cause burns.
- Do not leave the engine running in an area with snow build-up, or where it is snowing. If snowbanks build up around the vehicle while the engine is running, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

### ■ Exhaust gases

Exhaust gases include harmful carbon monoxide (CO) that is colorless and odorless. Inhaling exhaust gases may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

- If the vehicle is in a poorly ventilated area, stop the engine. In a closed area, such as a garage, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.
- The exhaust should be checked occasionally. If there is a hole or crack caused by corrosion, damage to a joint or abnormal exhaust noise, be sure to have the vehicle inspected and repaired by your Lexus dealer. Failure to do so may allow exhaust gases to enter the vehicle, resulting in death or a serious health hazard.

## ⚠ CAUTION

### When taking a nap in the vehicle

Always turn the engine off. Otherwise, you may accidentally move the shift lever or depress the accelerator pedal, which could cause an accident or fire due to engine overheating. Additionally, if the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated area, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle, leading to death or a serious health hazard.

### When braking the vehicle

- When the brakes are wet, drive more cautiously.
  Braking distance increases when the brakes are wet, and may cause one side of the vehicle to brake differently than the other side. Also the parking brake may not securely hold the vehicle.
- If the brake actuator (GS460) or brake booster (GS350) does not operate, do not follow other vehicles closely and avoid downhill or sharp turns that require making.
  In this case, braking is still possible, but it will require more force on the pedal than usual. Braking distance may also increase.
- Do not pump the brake pedal if turning the engine off.
  Each push on the brake pedal uses up the reserve for the power-assisted brakes.
- The brake system consists of 3 (GS460) or 2 (GS350) individual hydraulic systems: If one of the systems fails, the other will still operate. In this case, the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual and braking distance becomes longer.
  Do not drive your vehicle with only a single brake system. Have your brakes fixed immediately.

### If the vehicle becomes stuck or bogged (4WD models)

Do not spin the wheels recklessly when any of the tires is up in the air, or stuck in sand or mud, etc. This may damage the drive system components or propel the vehicle forward (or in another direction) and cause an accident.

NOTICE

**While driving the vehicle**

Do not use the accelerator pedal or depress accelerator and brake pedals together to hold the vehicle on a hill.

**When parking the vehicle**

Always put the shift lever in "P". Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to move or the vehicle may accelerate suddenly if the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed.

**Avoiding damage to vehicle parts**

- Do not turn the steering wheel fully in either direction and hold it there for a long time.
  Doing so may damage the power steering motor.
- When driving over bumps in the road, drive as slowly as possible to avoid damaging the wheels, underside of the vehicle, etc.

**If you hear a squealing or scraping noise (brake pad wear limit indicators)**

Have your Lexus dealer check and replace the brake pads as soon as possible.
The rotor damage can result if the pads are not replaced when needed.

Front brake only: Moderate levels of the brake pad and disc wear allow enhanced front braking power. As a result, the discs may wear more quickly than conventional brake discs. Therefore, when replacing the brake pads, Lexus recommends that you also have the thickness of the discs measured.
It is dangerous to drive the vehicle when the wear limits of the brake pads and/or that of the brake discs are exceeded.

NOTICE

■ **If you get a flat tire while driving**

A flat or damaged tire may cause the following situations. Hold the steering wheel firmly and gradually press the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle.

- It may be difficult to control your vehicle.
- The vehicle will make abnormal sounds.
- The vehicle will behave abnormally.

Replace a flat tire with a new one. (→P. 559)

■ **When encountering flooded roads**

Do not drive on a road that has flooded after heavy rain etc. Doing so may cause the following serious damage to the vehicle.

- Engine stalling
- Short in electrical components
- Engine damage caused by water immersion

In the event that you drive on a flooded road and the vehicle is flooded, be sure to have your Lexus dealer check the following.

- Brake function
- Changes in quantity and quality of oil and fluid used for the engine, automatic transmission, transfer (4WD models), differentials, etc.
- Lubricant condition for the propeller shaft, bearings and suspension joints (where possible) and the function of all joints, bearings, etc.

**Performing the following operations when carrying the electronic key on your person starts the engine or changes "ENGINE START STOP" switch modes.**

## Starting the engine

STEP 1 Check that the parking brake is set.

STEP 2 Check that the shift lever is set in "P".

STEP 3 Sit in the driver's seat and firmly depress the brake pedal.

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch indicator turns green.

STEP 4

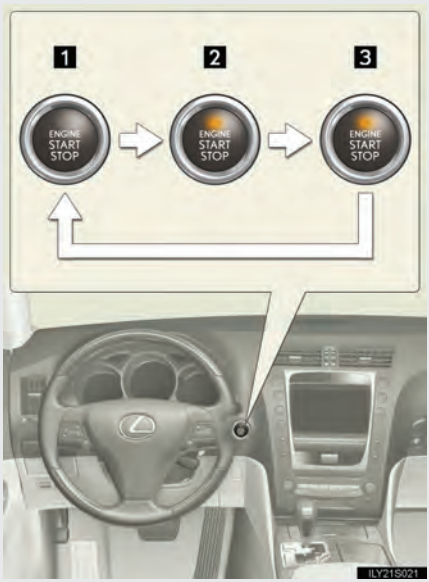



Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch.

The engine can be started from any mode.

## Changing “ENGINE START STOP” switch mode

**Modes can be changed by pressing the “ENGINE START STOP” switch with the brake pedal released. (The mode changes each time the switch is pressed.)**




**1** OFF*

Emergency flashers can be used.

**2** ACCESSORY mode

Some electrical components such as the audio system can be used.

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch indicator turns amber.

**3** IGNITION ON mode

All electrical components can be used.

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch indicator turns amber.

*: If the shift lever is in a position other than “P” when turning off the engine, the “ENGINE START STOP” switch will be turned to ACCESSORY mode, not to OFF.

■ **If the engine does not start**

The immobilizer system may not have been deactivated. (→P. 85)

■ **When the steering lock cannot be released**




The green indicator light on the "ENGINE START STOP" switch will flash and a message will be shown on the multi-information display. Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch again while turning the steering wheel left and right.

■ **When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch indicator flashes in amber**

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ **Auto power OFF function**

If the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode (the engine is not running) for more than an hour with the shift lever in P, the "ENGINE START STOP" switch will automatically turn off. However, this function cannot entirely prevent battery discharge. Do not leave the vehicle with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode for long periods of time when the engine is not running.

■ **Electronic key battery depletion**

→P. 35

■ **When the electronic key battery is discharged**

→P. 482

■ **Conditions affecting operation**

→P. 33

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ When starting the engine**

Always start the engine while sitting in the driver's seat. Do not press the accelerator pedal while starting the engine under any circumstances.
Doing so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

**■ Stopping the engine in an emergency**

If you want to stop the engine in an emergency while driving the vehicle, push and hold the "ENGINE START STOP" switch for more than 3 seconds.
However, do not touch the "ENGINE START STOP" switch while driving except in an emergency. If the engine stops while the vehicle is being driven, this could lead to an unexpected accident.

## ⚠ NOTICE

**■ To prevent 12 volt battery discharge**

Do not leave the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode for long periods if the engine is not running.

**■ When starting the engine**

- Do not race the engine.
- If the engine becomes difficult to start or stalls frequently, have the engine checked immediately.

Select a shift position appropriate for the driving conditions.

## Shifting the shift lever




While the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode, depress the brake pedal and move the shift lever.

## Shift position uses

| Shift position | Function |
|---|---|
| P | Parking the vehicle or starting the engine |
| R | Reversing |
| N | Neutral |
| D | Normal driving*1 |
| S | "S" mode driving*2 (→P. 141) |

*1: To improve fuel consumption and reduce noises, set the shift lever in the "D" position for normal driving.

*2: By selecting shift ranges using "S" mode, you can control engine braking forces.

## Selecting a driving mode

The following patterns can be selected to suit current driving and operating conditions.




1 Power mode

For powerful acceleration and driving in mountainous regions.

2 Normal mode

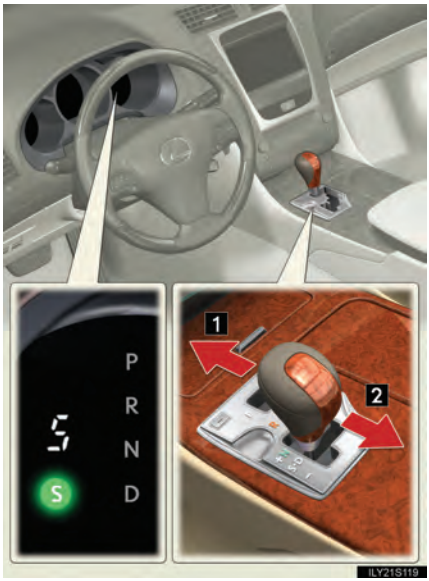
3 Snow mode

For accelerating and driving on slippery road surfaces, such as on snow.

Press "SNOW" to return to normal mode.

## Changing shift ranges in “S” mode

Shift the shift lever to the “S” position and operate the shift lever.




1 Upshifting
2 Downshifting

▶ GS460

The initial shift range in “S” mode is automatically set to “6”, “5” or “4” according to vehicle speed. However, the initial shift range may be set to “3” or “2” if the AI-SHIFT has operated while the shift lever was in the “D” position. (→P. 143)

▶ GS350

The initial shift range in “S” mode is automatically set to “4” according to vehicle speed. However, the initial shift range may be set to “3” or “2” if the AI-SHIFT has operated while the shift lever was in the “D” position. (→P. 143)

■ **Shift ranges and their functions**

- You can choose from 8 levels (GS460) or 6 levels (GS350) of engine braking force.
- A lower shift range will provide greater engine braking force than a higher shift range, and the engine revolutions will also increase.
- If you accelerate while in ranges "1" to "7" (GS460) or "1" to "5" (GS350), the shift range may automatically range up in accordance with the vehicle's speed.
- A higher shift range is automatically selected when the automatic transmission fluid temperature is high.

---

■ **"S" mode**

- When the shift range is "6" (GS460) or "4" (GS350) or lower, holding the shift lever toward "+" sets the shift range to "8" (GS460) or "6" (GS350).
- To prevent the engine from over-revving, upshifting may automatically occur.

■ **Downshifting restrictions warning buzzer (in the "S" mode)**

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the shift lever is operated. (The warning buzzer will sound twice.)

■ **When driving with the cruise control system (or dynamic radar cruise control system)**

The engine brake will not operate in the "S" mode, even when downshifting to "7", "6", "5" or "4" (GS460) or "5" or "4" (GS350). (→P. 167, 171)

■ **Snow mode automatic deactivation**

Snow mode is automatically deactivated if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode after driving in snow mode.

■ **If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P"**

→P. 569

### If the indicator does not come on even after shifting the shift lever to "S"

This may indicate a malfunction in the automatic transmission. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.
(In this situation, the vehicle will operate as if the shift lever is in "D".)

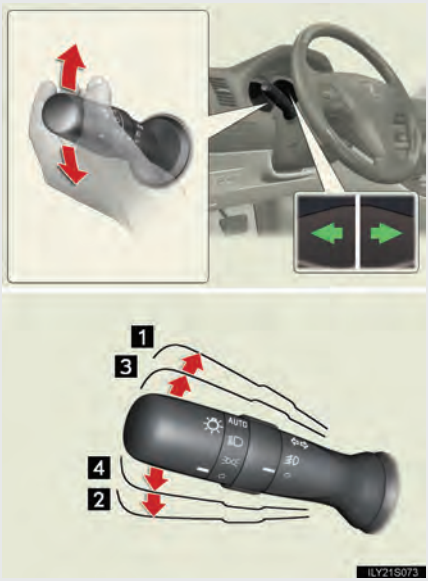
### AI-SHIFT

The AI-SHIFT automatically shifts the gear to the optimal position according to the driver's input and driving conditions.

GS460: The AI-SHIFT automatically operates when the shift lever is in the "D" or "S" position.

GS350: The AI-SHIFT automatically operates when the shift lever is in the "D" position. (Shifting the shift lever to the "S" position cancels the function.)

# Turn signal lever




1 Right turn

2 Left turn

3 Move and hold the lever partway to signal a lane change

The right hand signal will flash until you release the lever.

4 Move and hold the lever partway to signal a lane change

The left hand signal will flash until you release the lever.

---

■ **Turn signals can be operated when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **If the indicators flash faster than usual**

Check that a light bulb in the front or rear turn signal lights has not burned out.




Sets the parking brake*
(Depressing the pedal again releases the parking brake.)

*: Fully depress the parking brake pedal with your left foot while depressing the brake pedal with your right foot.



■ **Usage in winter time**

See "Winter driving tips" for parking brake usage in winter time. (→P. 219)

⚠ NOTICE

■ **Before driving**

Fully release the parking brake.
Driving the vehicle with the parking brake set will lead to brake components overheating, which may affect braking performance and increase brake wear.

# Horn




To sound the horn, press on or close to the mark.




The units used on the speedometer may differ depending on the target region.

The following gauges, meters and display illuminate when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

**1** Tachometer

Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute.

**2** Speedometer

Displays the vehicle speed.

**3** Fuel gauge

Displays the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank.

**4** Engine coolant temperature gauge

Displays the engine coolant temperature.

**5** Multi-information display

→P. 154

6 Odometer and trip meter

▶ Odometer

Displays the total distance the vehicle has been driven.

▶ Trip meter

Displays the distance the vehicle has been driven since the meter was last reset. Trip meters A and B can be used to record and display different distances independently.

## Odometer/trip meter and trip meter reset buttons

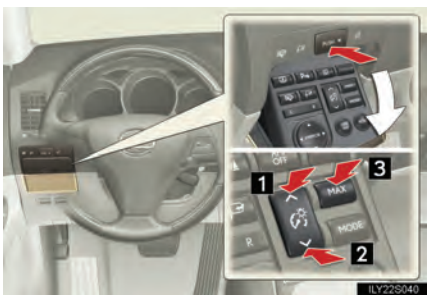



1 Changes the display

2 Resets the trip meter driving range to "0".

## Instrument panel light control

The brightness of the instrument panel lights excluding the clock and outside temperature display, can be adjusted.



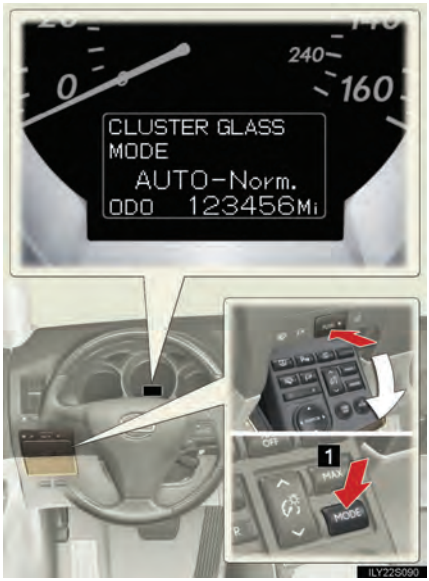

1 Brighter

2 Darker

3 Maximum brightness

## Light sensitive optitron meter

To reduce glare or reflection of the instrument cluster, the cluster glass is tinted automatically or manually. You can select a setting from 7 modes.




**1** Display the present setting, then change the mode.

To change the mode, press the button once and then again within 6 seconds.
Each time you press the button, the mode changes in the following order:

1. "AUTO - Norm."
2. "AUTO - Lo"
3. "AUTO - Hi"
4. "MANUAL - 1"
5. "MANUAL - 2"
6. "MANUAL - 3"
7. "MANUAL - 4"

Mode 1 to 3: The cluster glass tint will be adjusted automatically depending on the intensity of sunlight in the surrounding.
Mode 4 to 7: The cluster glass tint will be fixed when a certain level of sunlight is reached in the surrounding.
("Norm." to "Hi", "1" to "4" referring to the level of cluster glass tint.)

## ⚠ NOTICE

**■ To prevent damage to the engine and its components**

- The engine may be overheating if the engine coolant temperature gauge is in the red zone ("H"). In this case, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place. Check the engine after it has cooled completely. (→P. 578)
- Do not let the indicator needle of the tachometer enter the red zone, which indicates the maximum engine speed.

**■ To activate the light sensitivity function properly**

Do not affix a sticker or window tint to the rear window glass, or put an object behind the rear seat.

**The indicator and warning lights on the instrument cluster and center panel inform the driver of the status of the vehicle's various systems.**

▶ Instrument cluster




The units used on the speedometer and some indicators may differ depending on the target region.

▶ Center panel



## Indicators

The indicators inform the driver of the operating state of the vehicle's various systems.


Turn signal indicator (→P. 144)


Headlight high beam indicator (→P. 157)


(U.S.A.)
Headlight indicator (→P. 157)


(Canada)
Tail light indicator (→P. 157)


Fog light indicator (→P. 160)



*
(if equipped)
"AFS OFF" indicator (→P. 158)



"ECT SNOW" indicator (→P. 140)



"ECT PWR" indicator (→P. 140)



(if equipped)
"SPORT" mode indicator (→P. 199)



Shift position and shift range indicators (→P. 141)



Cruise control indicator (→P. 167, 171)


(if equipped)
Intuitive parking assist indicator (→P. 184)


*
Slip indicator (→P. 201)



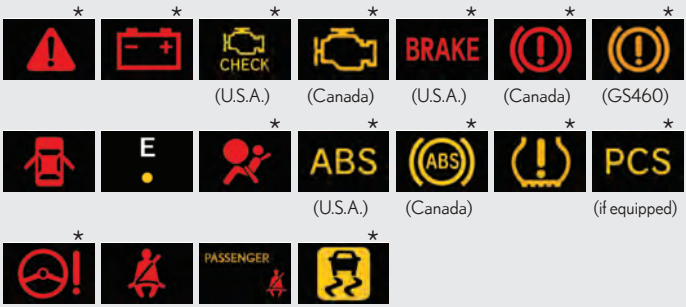
*
Slip off indicator (→P. 202)



*
"AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicators (→P. 105)

## Warning lights

Warning lights inform the driver of malfunctions in the indicated vehicle's systems. (→P. 534)




(U.S.A.) (Canada) (U.S.A.) (Canada) (GS460)

(U.S.A.) (Canada) (if equipped)

*: These lights turn on when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is on, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if the lights do not come on, or turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

### CAUTION

**If a safety system warning light does not come on**

Should a safety system light such as ABS and the SRS airbag warning light not come on when you turn to IGNITION ON mode, this could mean that these systems are not available to help protect you in an accident, which could result in death or serious injury. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately if this occurs.

# Multi-information display

**The multi-information display presents the driver with a variety of driving-related data, including the current driving range.**




- Trip information (→P. 155)

  Displays driving range, fuel consumption and other cruising related information.

- Intuitive parking assist display (if equipped) (→P. 185)

  Automatically displayed when using intuitive parking assist.

- Dynamic radar cruise control display (if equipped) (→P. 171)

  Automatically displayed when using dynamic radar cruise control.

- Warning messages (→P. 543)

  Automatically displayed when a malfunction occurs in one of the vehicle's systems.




Display items can be switched by pushing the "DISP" switch.



## Trip information

### Driving range




Displays the estimated maximum distance that can be driven with the quantity of fuel remaining.

- This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption. As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.
- When only a small amount of fuel is added to the tank, the display may not be updated.

### Average fuel consumption




Displays the average fuel consumption since the function was reset.

The function can be reset by pushing the "DISP" switch for longer than one second when the average fuel consumption is displayed.

## Current fuel consumption




Displays the current rate of fuel consumption.

## Outside temperature




Displays the outside air temperature.

The temperature range that can be displayed is from -40°F (-40°C) to 122°F (50°C).

---

### System check display

After switching the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode, "CHECK" is displayed while system operation is checked. When the system check is complete, "COMPLETED" is displayed before returning to the normal screen.

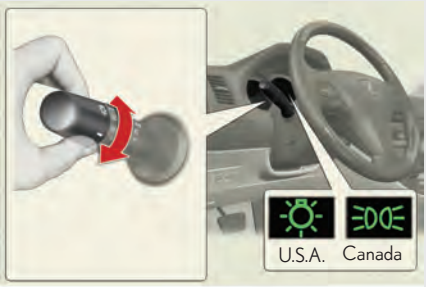
### ⚠ NOTICE

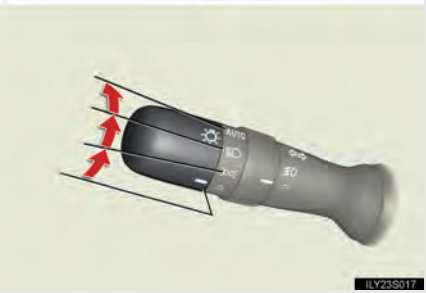
### The multi-information display at low temperatures

Allow the interior of the vehicle to warm up before using the liquid crystal information display. At extremely low temperatures, the information display monitor may respond slowly, and display changes may be delayed.

# Headlight switch

**The headlights can be operated manually or automatically.**



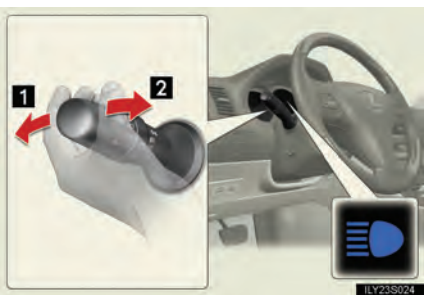

The side marker, parking, tail, license plate and instrument panel lights turn on.

The headlights and all lights listed above turn on.

**AUTO** The headlights, daytime running lights and all the lights listed above turn on and off automatically. (When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.)

The daytime running lights turn on.

## Turning on the high beam headlights




**1** With the headlights on, push the lever forward to turn on the high beams.

Pull the lever back to the center position to turn the high beams off.

**2** Pull the lever toward you to turn on the high beams.

Release to turn them off. You can flash the high beams with the headlights on or off.

## AFS (Adaptive Front lighting System) (if equipped)

AFS improves visibility at intersections and on curves by automatically adjusting the level of the headlights according to vehicle speed and the degree of the tire angle that are controlled by steering input.

Operates at speeds of 6 mph (10 km/h) or higher.

### Deactivating AFS




1 Press the switch to turn it off.

The AFS OFF indicator turns on when the AFS is deactivated.

### Daytime running light system

- To make your vehicle more visible to other drivers, the headlights turn on automatically (at a reduced intensity) whenever the engine is started and the parking brake is released. Daytime running lights are not designed for use at night.
- Compared to turning on the headlights, the daytime running light system offers greater durability and consumes less electricity, so it can help improve fuel economy.

### Headlight control sensor



The sensor may not function properly if an object is placed on the sensor, or anything that blocks the sensor is affixed to the windshield.
Doing so interferes with the sensor detecting the level of ambient light and may cause the automatic headlight system to malfunction.

### Automatic light off system

The headlights and tail lights turn off 30 seconds after all doors are closed if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been switched to ACCESSORY mode or turned OFF while the headlights are turned on. (The lights turn off immediately if the button on the key is pressed after all doors are locked.)

To turn the lights on again, switch to IGNITION ON mode, or turn the light switch off once and then back to the or position.

### Automatic headlight leveling system

The level of the headlights is automatically adjusted according to the number of passengers and the loading condition of the vehicle to ensure that the headlights do not interfere with other road users.

### If the AFS OFF indicator flashes...

It may indicate a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

### Customization that can be configured at Lexus dealer

Settings (e.g. light sensor sensitivity) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 621)

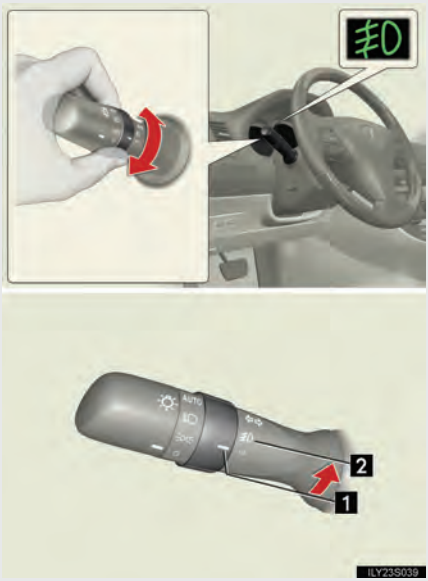
NOTICE

### To prevent 12 volt battery discharge

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

# Fog light switch

The fog lights improve visibility in difficult driving conditions, such as in rain or fog. They can be turned on only when the headlights are on low beam.

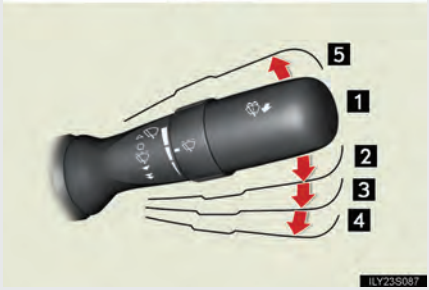



1 OFF
2 ON

▶ Intermittent wiper with interval adjuster

Wiper intervals can be adjusted for intermittent operation (when  is selected).





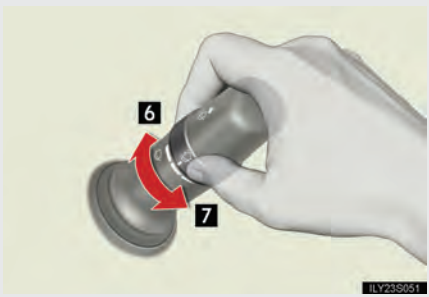

1 ○ Off

2  Intermittent windshield wiper operation

3 ▼ Low speed windshield wiper operation

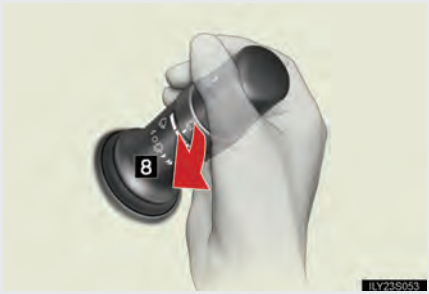
4 ▼▼ High speed windshield wiper operation

5 △ Temporary operation




6 Increases the intermittent windshield wiper frequency

7 Decreases the intermittent windshield wiper frequency




8 Washer/wiper dual operation

Wipers will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts.

▶ Rain-sensing windshield wipers

With AUTO selected, the wipers will operate automatically when the sensor detects falling rain. The system automatically adjusts wiper timing in accordance with rain volume and vehicle speed.



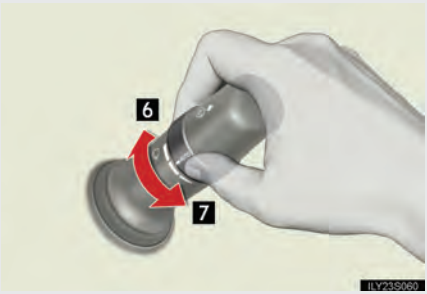

1 ○ Off

2 AUTO Rain-sensing wiper operation

3 ▼ Low speed wiper operation

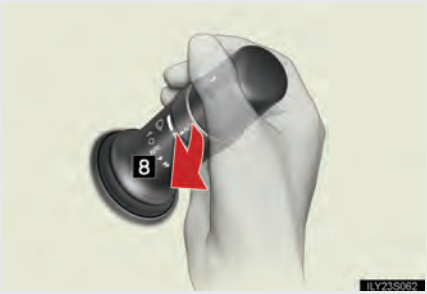
4 ▼▼ High speed wiper operation

5 △ Temporary operation




6 Sensor sensitivity (high)

7 Sensor sensitivity (low)




8 Washer/wiper dual operation

Wipers will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts.

■ **The windshield wiper and washer can be operated when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Dripping prevention wiper sweep**

After washing and wiping operation several times, the wipers operate one more time after a short delay to prevent dripping.

However, the last sweep will not happen if the vehicle is traveling above 106 mph (170 km/h).

■ **Effects of vehicle speed on wiper operation**

Vehicle speed affects the following even when the wipers are not "AUTO" mode.

- Intermittent wiper interval ( mode)
- Wiper operation when the washer is being used (delay until drip prevention wiper sweep occurs)

With ▼ selected, wiper operation will be switched from low speed to intermittent wiper operation only when the vehicle is stationary.

■ **Rain drop sensor (vehicles equipped with rain-sensing windshield wipers)**



- The raindrop sensor judges the amount of raindrops.

  An optical sensor is adopted. It may not operate properly when sunlight from the rising or setting of the sun intermittently strikes the windshield, or if bugs etc. are present on the windshield.

- If the wiper switch is turned to the "AUTO" position while the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode, the wipers will operate once to show that "AUTO" mode is activated.
- If the temperature of the raindrop sensor is 167°F (75°C) or higher, or 14°F (-10°C) or lower, automatic operation may not occur. In this case, operate the wipers in any mode other than "AUTO".

■ **If no windshield washer fluid sprays**

Check that the washer nozzles are not blocked if there is washer fluid in the windshield washer fluid reservoir.

■ **Customization that can be configured at Lexus dealer**

Settings (e.g. drip prevention function) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 622)



**⚠ CAUTION**

■ **Caution regarding the use of windshield wipers in "AUTO" mode**

The windshield wipers may operate unexpectedly if the sensor is touched or the windshield is subject to vibration in "AUTO" mode. Take care that your fingers or anything else do not become caught in the windshield wipers.

**⚠ NOTICE**

■ **When the windshield is dry**

Do not use the wipers, as they may damage the windshield.

■ **When there is no washer fluid spray from the nozzle**

Damage to the washer fluid pump may be caused if the lever is pulled toward you and held continually.

# Headlight cleaner switch*

**Washer fluid can be sprayed on the headlights.**




1 Press the switch to clean the headlights.

---

**■ The headlight cleaner can be operated when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode and the headlight switch is turned ON.

⚠ NOTICE

**■ When the washer fluid tank is empty**

Do not press the switch continually, as the washer fluid pump may overheat.

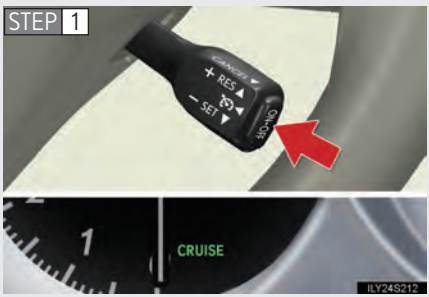
*: If equipped

**Use the cruise control to maintain a set speed without using the accelerator.**




1 Indicator
2 Cruise control switch

## Set the vehicle speed




Press the "ON-OFF" button to activate the cruise control.

Press the button once more to deactivate the cruise control.




Accelerate or decelerate to the desired speed and press the lever down to set the cruise control speed.



*: If equipped

## Adjusting the speed setting




1 Increase speed

2 Decrease speed

Hold the lever until the desired speed setting is obtained.

Fine adjustment of the set speed can be made by lightly pressing the lever up or down and releasing it.

## Canceling and resuming regular acceleration




1 Cancel

Pull the lever towards you to cancel cruise control.

The setting is also canceled when the brake pedal is depressed.

2 Resume

To resume cruise control and return to the set speed, push the lever up.

■ **Cruise control can be set when**

- The shift lever is in the D or "4", "5", "6", "7" or "8" (GS460) or "4", "5", or "6" (GS350) range of S has been selected.
- Vehicle speed is above approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).

■ **Accelerating**

The vehicle can be accelerated normally. After acceleration, the set speed resumes.

■ **Automatic cruise control cancelation**

The set speed is automatically canceled in any of the following situations.

- Actual vehicle speed falls more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below the preset vehicle speed
  At this time, the memorized set speed is not retained.
- Actual vehicle speed is below 25 mph (40 km/h)
- Enhanced VSC is activated

■ **If the cruise control indicator light flashes**

Press the "ON-OFF" button off once, and then reactivate the system.
If the cruise control speed cannot be set or if the cruise control cancels immediately after being activated, there may be a malfunction in the cruise control system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ To avoid operating the cruise control by mistake**

Keep the "ON-OFF" button off when not in use.

**■ Situations unsuitable for cruise control**

Do not use cruise control in any of the following situations.
Doing so may result in control of the vehicle being lost and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep hills
  Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- On winding roads
- When emergency towing

# Dynamic radar cruise control*

Dynamic radar cruise control supplements conventional cruise control with a vehicle-to-vehicle distance control. In the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle automatically accelerates or decelerates in order to maintain a set following distance from vehicles ahead.




1 Indicator
2 Display
3 Cruise control switch
4 Distance switch



*: If equipped

## Set the vehicle speed



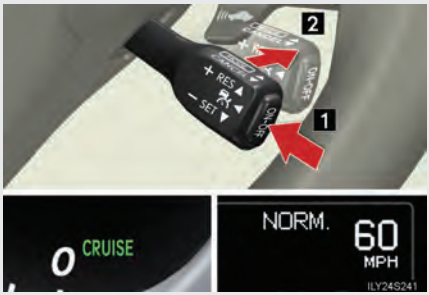

1 Press the “ON-OFF” button to activate the cruise control.

Press the button once more to deactivate.




Accelerate or decelerate to the desired speed and press the lever down to set.

## Selecting conventional constant speed control mode




1 Press the "ON-OFF" button to activate the cruise control.

Press the button once more to deactivate the cruise control.

2 Switch to constant speed control mode.
(Push the lever away from you and hold for approximately 1 second.)

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is always reset when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is switched to IGNITION ON mode.

## Adjusting the speed setting




1 Increase speed

2 Decrease speed

Hold the lever until the desired speed setting is displayed.

In the constant speed control mode, fine adjustment of the set speed can be made by lightly pressing the lever up or down and releasing it.

## Canceling and resuming the speed setting




**1** Cancel

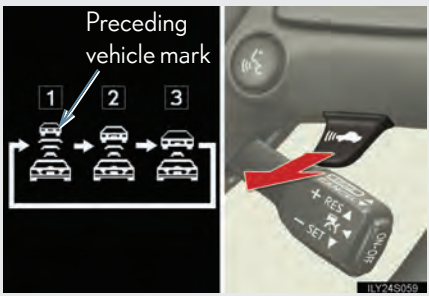
Pull the lever towards you to cancel cruise control.

The setting is also canceled when the brake pedal is depressed.

**2** Resume

To resume cruise control and return to the set speed, push the lever up.

## Changing the vehicle-to-vehicle distance




Each pull of the switch changes the vehicle-to-vehicle distance

**1** Long

**2** Medium

**3** Short

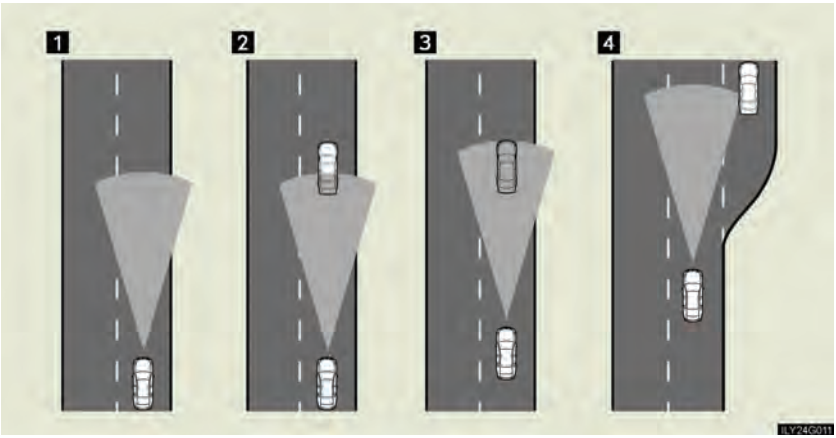
The vehicle-to-vehicle distance is automatically set to the long mode when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is set to the IGNITION ON mode.

A mark will be displayed to indicate the presence of the vehicle if a vehicle is running ahead of you.

## Cruising in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

This mode employs a radar sensor to detect the presence of vehicles within 400 ft. (120 m) ahead and to judge the distance between your vehicle and those vehicles.

Note that vehicle-to-vehicle distance will close when traveling on long downhill slopes.




**1** Example of constant speed cruising
When there are no vehicles ahead

The vehicle travels at the speed set by the driver. The desired vehicle-to-vehicle distance can also be set by operating the vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch.

**2** Example of deceleration cruising
When the vehicle ahead is driving slower than the set speed

When a vehicle is detected running ahead of you, in the same lane, the system automatically decelerates your vehicle. When a greater reduction in vehicle speed is necessary, the system applies the brakes. A warning tone warns you when the system cannot decelerate sufficiently to prevent your vehicle from closing on the vehicle ahead.

3 Example of follow-up cruising

When following a vehicle driving slower than the set speed

The system continues follow-up cruising while adjusting for changes in the speed of the vehicle ahead in order to maintain the vehicle-to-vehicle distance set by the driver.

4 Example of acceleration

When there are no longer vehicles driving slower than the set speed in the lane ahead

When the vehicle ahead of you executes a lane change, the system slowly accelerates until the set vehicle speed is reached. The system then returns to fixed speed cruising.

## Approach warning

When your vehicle is too close to a vehicle ahead, and sufficient automatic deceleration via the cruise control is not possible, the display will flash and a buzzer will sound to alert the driver. An example of this would be if another driver cuts in front of you while you are following a vehicle. Apply the brakes to ensure an appropriate vehicle-to-vehicle distance.

---

**■ Warning lights and messages for dynamic radar cruise control**

Warning lights, messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution while driving. (→P. 546)

**■ Switching modes**

The mode cannot be switched to constant speed control mode if vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode has been used. The mode also cannot be switched from constant speed control to vehicle-to-vehicle control mode. Turn the system off by pressing the “ON-OFF” button, and turn it on again.

■ **Dynamic radar cruise can be set when**

- The shift lever is in D. (Recommended)
  Dynamic radar cruise control can also be set when the shift lever is in the S position and range "4", "5", "6", "7" or "8" (GS460) or "4", "5" or "6" (GS350) has been selected.
- Vehicle speed is above approximately 30 mph (50 km/h).

■ **Accelerating**

The vehicle can be accelerated normally. After acceleration, the set speed resumes.

■ **Automatically canceling vehicle-to-vehicle distance control**

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control driving is automatically canceled in the following situations.

- Actual vehicle speed falls below 25 mph (40 km/h)
- Enhanced VSC is activated
- The windshield wipers are operating at high speed
- The mode select switch is set to snow mode
- The sensor cannot operate correctly because it is covered in some way
  Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control driving must be reset by turning the "ON-OFF" button on again.

If vehicle-to-vehicle distance control driving is automatically canceled for any other reason, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Automatically canceling constant speed control**

The set speed is automatically canceled in the following situations.

- Actual vehicle speed is more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below the preset vehicle speed
- Actual vehicle speed falls below 25 mph (40 km/h)
- Enhanced VSC is activated

### Vehicle-to-vehicle distance settings

Select a distance from the table below. Note that the distances shown correspond to a vehicle speed of 50 mph (80 km/h). Vehicle-to-vehicle distance increases/decreases in accordance with vehicle speed.

| Distance options | Vehicle-to-vehicle distance |
|---|---|
| Long | Approximately 210 ft. (65 m) |
| Medium | Approximately 150 ft. (45 m) |
| Short | Approximately 100 ft. (30 m) |

### Radar sensor and grille cover

Always keep the sensor and grille cover clean to ensure that the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control operates properly. (Some obstructions, such as snow, ice or plastic objects, cannot be detected by the obstruction sensor.)
Dynamic radar cruise control is canceled if an obstruction is detected.




1 Grille cover
2 Radar sensor

### Approach warning

In the following instances, there is a possibility that the warnings will not occur:

- When the speed of the vehicle ahead matches or exceeds your vehicle's speed
- When the vehicle ahead is traveling at an extremely slow speed
- Immediately after the cruise control speed has been set
- At the instant the accelerator is applied

■ Certification

▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

FCC ID: HYQDNMWR005

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Radio frequency radiation exposure Information:

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment.

This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 20 cm between the radiator and your body.

This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

L'utilisation de ce dispositif est autorisée seulement aux deux conditions suivantes: (1) il ne doit pas produire de brouillage et (2) l'utilisateur du dispositif doit être prêt à accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique reçu, même si ce brouillage est susceptible de compromettre le fonctionnement du dispositif.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Before using dynamic radar cruise control**

Do not overly rely on vehicle-to-vehicle distance control.
Be aware of the set vehicle speed. If automatic deceleration/acceleration is not appropriate, adjust the vehicle speed, as well as the distance between your vehicle and vehicles ahead by applying the brakes, etc.

**■ To avoid operating the dynamic radar cruise control by mistake**

Keep the "ON-OFF" button off when not in use.

**■ Situations unsuitable for dynamic radar cruise control**

Do not use dynamic radar cruise control in any of the following situations.
Doing so may result in inappropriate control of speed and could cause serious or fatal accident.

- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep downhills, where there are sudden changes between sharp up and down gradients
  Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- At entrances to expressways
- When weather conditions are bad enough that they may prevent the sensors from functioning correctly (fog, snow, sandstorm, etc.)
- When the approach warning buzzer can be heard often
- When emergency towing

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ When the radar sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead**

Apply the brakes as necessary when any of the following types of vehicles are in front of you.
As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect these types of vehicles, the proximity alarm (→P. 551) will not be activated, and a serious or fatal accident may result.

- Vehicles that cut in suddenly
- Vehicles traveling at low speeds
- Vehicles that are not moving
- Vehicles with small rear ends (trailers with no load on board etc.)
- Motorcycles traveling in the same lane

**■ Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control may not function correctly**

Apply the brakes as necessary in the following conditions as the radar sensor may not be able to correctly detect vehicles ahead, and a serious or fatal accident may result.

- When water or snow thrown up by the surrounding vehicles hinders the functioning of the sensor
- When your vehicle is pointing upwards (caused by a heavy load in the trunk, etc.)
- When the road curves or when the lanes are narrow
- When steering wheel operation or your position in the lane is unstable
- When the vehicle ahead of you decelerates suddenly

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ To ensure the radar sensor functions correctly**

Do not do the following to the sensor or grille cover as doing so may cause the sensor not to function correctly and could result in a serious or fatal accident.

- Stick or attach anything to them
- Leave them dirty
- Disassemble, subject them to strong shocks
- Modify or paint them
- Replace them with non-genuine parts

**■ Handling the radar sensor**

Observe the following to ensure the cruise control system can function effectively.

- Keep the sensor and front grille clean at all times.
  Clean the sensor and front grille with a soft cloth so you do not mark or damage them.
- Do not subject the sensor or surrounding area to a strong impact.
  If the sensor moves even slightly off position, the system may malfunction. If the sensor or surrounding area is subject to a strong impact, always have the area inspected and adjusted by a Lexus dealer.
- Do not disassemble the sensor.
- Do not attach accessories or stickers to the sensor, grille or surrounding area.
- Do not modify or paint the sensor and grille.

# Intuitive parking assist*

Intuitive parking assist uses sensors in the front and rear of the vehicle to detect the distance between the vehicle and any obstacles, and informs the driver of this distance using the multi-information display, the touch screen, and warning beeps.

The system may be used at speeds less than about 6 mph (10 km/h).

## Sensor types




**1** Dual sensors

There are 4 sensors installed in the front bumper, two in the center section to detect obstacles directly ahead, and one in each corner of the bumper, to detect obstacles in those areas.

The dual sensors detect obstacles ahead of the vehicle, and judge whether avoidance maneuvers are necessary (whether the obstacle will come within 0.8 ft. [25 cm] of the vehicle), according to the distance between the obstacle and the vehicle, and the steering wheel position. The screen display and beeps will change accordingly.

**2** Rear corner sensors

These sensors detect obstacles around the rear corners of the vehicle.

**3** Back sensors

These sensors detect obstacles behind the vehicle.



*: If equipped

## Intuitive parking assist switch




1 Press the switch to turn the system on/off.

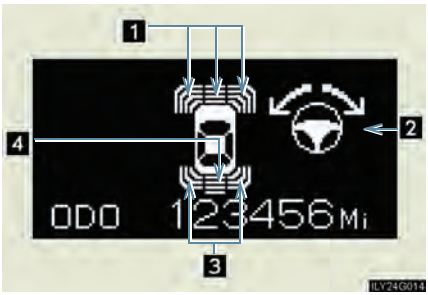
If the intuitive parking assist is turned on, the indicator light will come on, and the system will operate under the following conditions:

- The dual sensors will operate if the shift lever is in a position other than “R” or “P”.
- All corner sensors and the back sensors will operate if the shift lever is in “R”.

## Multi-information display and touch screen

If the sensors detect an obstacle, it is displayed on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster.
You can change the conditions under which information is displayed on the touch screen. (→P. 245)

▶ Multi-information display




1 Dual sensor detection
2 Steering guide symbol
3 Rear corner sensor detection
4 Back sensor detection

▶ Touch screen




1 Dual sensor detection
2 Steering guide symbol
3 Rear corner sensor detection
4 Back sensor detection

If the intuitive parking assist is operated while the rear view monitor is showing, the intuitive parking assist will be shown in the upper right corner of the screen. (→P. 188)

## Sensor detection display, obstacle distance and beeps

When the intuitive parking assist is activated, the approximate distance to the obstacle is displayed. Also, if an obstacle with which a collision is possible is detected, a warning beep will sound.

### Dual sensor

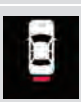
| Approximate distance to obstacle | Multi-information display | Touch screen | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | With beeps (danger of collision) | No beeps (no danger of collision) |
| 3.0 ft. (100 cm) to 1.5 ft. (50 cm) |  (continuous) |  (continuous) |  (continuous) |
| 1.5 ft. (50 cm) to 1.1 ft. (37.5 cm) |  (continuous) |  (continuous) |  (continuous) |
| 1.1 ft. (37.5 cm) to 0.8 ft. (25 cm) |  (continuous) |  (continuous) |  (continuous) |
| Less than 0.8 ft. (25 cm) |  (blinking) |  (continuous) | — |

- If the shift lever is in "R", only the corner sensors will detect obstacles.

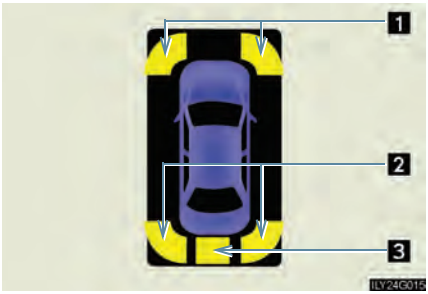
## Rear corner sensor

| Approximate distance to obstacle | Multi-information display | Touch screen |
|---|---|---|
| 1.5 ft. (50 cm) to 1.1 ft. (37.5 cm) |  (continuous) |  (continuous) |
| 1.1 ft. (37.5 cm) to 0.8 ft. (25 cm) |  (continuous) |  (continuous) |
| Less than 0.8 ft. (25 cm) |  (blinking) |  (continuous) |

## Back sensor

| Approximate distance to obstacle | Multi-information display | Touch screen |
|---|---|---|
| 5.0 ft. (150 cm) to 2.0 ft. (60 cm) |  (continuous) |  (continuous) |
| 2.0 ft. (60 cm) to 1.4 ft. (45 cm) |  (continuous) |  (continuous) |
| 1.4 ft. (45 cm) to 1.1 ft. (35 cm) |  (continuous) |  (continuous) |
| Less than 1.1 ft. (35 cm) |  (blinking) |  (continuous) |

## Touch screen (insert display)




1 Dual sensor (corner) detection
2 Rear corner sensor detection
3 Back sensor detection

The tire display and the steering guide symbol will not be displayed.

### Dual sensor

| Approximate distance to obstacle | With beeps (danger of collision) | No beeps (no danger of collision) |
|---|---|---|
| 3.0 ft. (100 cm) to 1.5 ft. (50 cm) |  (blinking slowly) |  (continuous) |
| 1.5 ft. (50 cm) to 1.1 ft. (37.5 cm) |  (blinking) |  (continuous) |
| 1.1 ft. (37.5 cm) to 0.8 ft. (25 cm) |  (blinking rapidly) |  (continuous) |
| Less than 0.8 ft. (25 cm) |  (continuous) | — |

## Rear corner sensor

| Approximate distance to obstacle | Touch screen |
|---|---|
| 1.5 ft. (50 cm) to 1.1 ft. (37.5 cm) |  (blinking) |
| 1.1 ft. (37.5 cm) to 0.8 ft. (25 cm) |  (blinking rapidly) |
| Less than 0.8 ft. (25 cm) |  (continuous) |

## Back sensor

| Approximate distance to obstacle | Touch screen |
|---|---|
| 5.0 ft. (150 cm) to 2.0 ft. (60 cm) |  (blinking slowly) |
| 2.0 ft. (60 cm) to 1.4 ft. (45 cm) |  (blinking) |
| 1.4 ft. (45 cm) to 1.1 ft. (35 cm) |  (blinking rapidly) |
| Less than 1.1 ft. (35 cm) |  (continuous) |

## Steering guide symbol

Displays the steering maneuvers required to avoid an obstacle. Move the steering wheel in the direction shown by the arrow.




The steering guide symbol only shows the maneuvers necessary to avoid an obstacle.

When using the system, always check your surroundings for safety.

## Beeps and obstacle distance

A beep sounds when an obstacle with which there is a danger of collision is detected. As the vehicle moves closer to the obstacle, the interval of the beep becomes shorter.

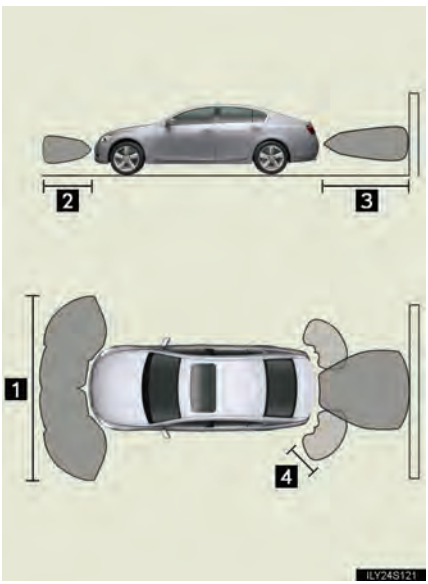
- When the following obstacle distances are reached, the beep changes from intermittent to continuous:
  - If the distance to the obstacle detected by the dual sensors or rear corner sensors is less than 0.8 ft. (25 cm).
  - If the distance to the obstacle detected by the back sensors is less than 1.1 ft. (35 cm).
- If obstacles are detected by the dual sensors in 2 places at once, or if both rear corner sensors detect obstacles at the same time, the system will sound a warning beep for the closer of the 2 obstacles.

● If multiple obstacles are detected in front and behind the vehicle at the same time, the warning beep will change in the following manner:

- If an obstacle has been detected within 0.8 ft. (25 cm) of the front or rear of the vehicle (a continuous beep is sounding), and a new obstacle is detected near a different area of the vehicle, the warning beep will sound 6 beeps then one continuous beep.
- If an obstacle has been detected within 0.8 ft. (25 cm) of the front or rear of the vehicle (a continuous beep is sounding), and a new obstacle is detected within 0.8 ft. (25 cm) of a different area of the vehicle, the warning beeps will sound 2 beeps then one continuous beep.

● You can change the volume of the warning beeps. (→P. 245)

## Obstacle detection range




1 About 10.0 ft. (300 cm)
2 About 3.0 ft. (100 cm)
3 About 5.0 ft. (150 cm)
4 About 1.5 ft. (50 cm)

The detection area of the sensors is shown to the left.
If obstacles move too close to the sensors, they will not be detected.
If the malfunction screen is displayed, the dual sensor detection range will be shortened from 3.0 ft. (100 cm) to 1.5 ft. (50 cm).

■ **The intuitive parking assist can be operated when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in the IGNITION ON mode.

■ **When the system malfunctions**

- If a malfunction occurs and no obstacles have been detected, a warning is displayed, and a malfunction beep sounds for 7 seconds.
  If an obstacle has been detected, or another malfunction occurs in a different sensor, the malfunction beeps will not sound.
- In the following circumstances the displayed warning will disappear:
  - If you switch the screen to a different mode.
  - If you turn off the intuitive parking assist main switch.
  - If the vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h). Once the vehicle speed drops below 6 mph (10 km/h), the warning will be displayed again.
- If the malfunction screen is displayed, the detection range of the dual sensors is shortened. In this case, the necessity for obstacle evasion (whether the obstacle will come within 0.8 ft. [25 cm] of the vehicle or not) will not be calculated.

■ **When using the intuitive parking assist**

- The sensors' detection areas and reaction times are limited. When moving forward or reversing, check the areas surrounding the vehicle (especially the sides of the vehicle) for safety, and drive slowly, using the brake to control the vehicle's speed.
  - The sensors' detection areas are limited to the areas around the vehicle's front and rear bumpers.
  - Depending on the shape of the obstacle and other factors, the detection distance may shorten, or detection may be impossible.
  - There will be a short delay between obstacle detection and display. Even at slow speeds, there is a possibility that the obstacle will come within 0.8 ft. (25 cm) of the vehicle before the display is shown and the warning beep sounds.
  - Braking distance may differ according to the road conditions (rain, gravel etc.).
  - It might be difficult to hear beeps due to the volume of audio system or air flow noise of air conditioning system.
  - For long obstacles such as walls, the obstacle warning may change as the obstacle gets closer.

● In the following situations, the intuitive parking assist may not function correctly, possibly leading to an accident.

- There is ice, snow or mud on the sensors. (Wiping the sensors will resolve this problem.)
- The sensor area is frozen. (Thawing the area will resolve this problem.)
  In especially cold weather, if a sensor is frozen the screen may show an abnormal display, or obstacles may not be detected.
- The vehicle angle is especially wide.
- In harsh sunlight or intense cold weather.
- When driving on bumpy, sloped or gravel roads, or over grass.
- If there is something producing ultrasonic waves nearby, such as another vehicle's horn, motorcycle engine noise, air braking sound from heavy-duty vehicles, or another vehicle using the intuitive parking assist.
- In heavy rain, or if water is splashed on the sensors.
- If a commercial fender pole or radio antenna is installed.
- If towing eyelet is installed on your vehicle.
- If moving towards a high curb or a curb corner.
- Objects such as signs may cause the detection distance to shorten.
- The area directly under the bumpers is not detected.
  Objects lower than the sensors or thin stakes etc. may be detected initially, but as they draw closer, they may cease to be detected.
- If obstacles draw too close to the sensor.

■ **Obstacles that may not be detected correctly**

The following obstacles may not be detected.

● Thin objects such as wire, fencing or rope.

● Objects that absorb sound waves, such as cotton or snow.

● Objects with sharp corners.

● Objects where the upper section projects out over the lower section.

● Low objects.

■ **If the display flashes and a message is displayed**

→P. 552

■ **Warning beep volume and touch screen settings**

You can change the warning beep volume etc. (→P. 245)

### Certification

▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions;

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

This ISM device complies with Canadian ICES-001.

Cet appareil ISM est conforme a la norme NMB-001 du Canada.

### ⚠ CAUTION

**While driving**

To reduce the chance of injury in the event of an accident or sudden stop, keep the switch box closed.

**When using the intuitive parking assist**

Observe the following precautions.

- The back sensors and rear corner sensors do not judge whether there is danger of a collision, nor whether the obstacle can be avoided using the steering wheel. When reversing, always check your surroundings and behind the vehicle for safety.
- The steering guide symbol (arrow) is an approximate guide regarding obstacles. It is not driving instructions. When moving forward or reversing, always check your surroundings for safety and drive carefully.
- Do not install accessories within the sensors' detection areas, as this may cause the intuitive parking assist to function incorrectly, possibly leading to an accident.

## NOTICE

### When using the intuitive parking assist

In the following situations, the system may not function correctly due to a sensor malfunction etc. Have the vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

- A beep does not sound when you turn the main switch on.
- The intuitive parking assist operation display flashes, and a beep sound when no obstacle has been detected.
- If the area around a sensor collides with something, or is subjected to strong impact.
- If the bumper collides with something.
- If the display shows continuously without a beep.

### When changing tires

If you install tires of a size other than that recommended by the manufacturer, the system will be unable to correctly detect steering wheel movement. Always use tire sizes recommended by the manufacturer.

### When washing the vehicle

When washing the vehicle using high pressure cleaning equipment, do not spray water directly on the sensors. Subjecting the sensors to high pressure impact may cause a malfunction.

# Rear view monitor system*

**The rear view monitor system assists the driver by displaying an image of the view behind the vehicle while reversing. The image is displayed in reverse on the screen. This allows the image to appear in the same manner as that of the rear view mirror.**

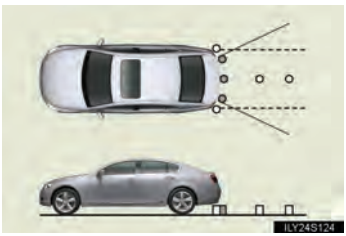


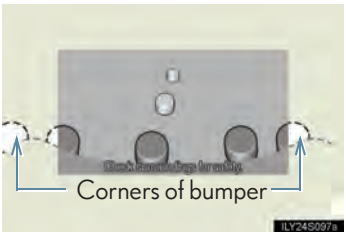

Rear view image is displayed when the shift lever is in "R".

If you move the lever out of "R", the screen returns to the previous one.

*: If equipped

## Displayed area




The area covered by the camera is limited. Objects which are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper cannot be seen on the screen.

The area displayed on the screen may vary according to vehicle orientation or road conditions.

## Rear view monitor system camera




In the following cases, it may be difficult to see the images on the screen, even when the system is functioning correctly.

- In the dark (e.g. at night).
- If the temperature near the lens is extremely high or low.
- If water droplets get on the camera, or when humidity is high (e.g. when it rains).
- If foreign matter (e.g. snow or mud) get on the camera lens.
- If the sun or headlights are shining directly into the camera lens.

### Smear effect




If a bright light (for example, sunlight reflected off the vehicle body) is picked up by the camera, a smear effect* peculiar to the camera may occur.

*: Smear effect—A phenomenon that occurs when a bright light (for example, sunlight reflected off the vehicle body) is picked up by the camera; when transmitted by the camera, the light source appears to have a vertical streak above and below it.

## CAUTION

### When using the rear view monitor system

Observe the following precautions to avoid an accident that could result in death or serious injuries.

- Never depend solely on the monitor system when reversing.
- Always check visually and with the mirrors to confirm your intended path is clear.
- Depicted distances between objects and flat surfaces differ from actual distances.
- Do not use the system if the trunk is open.

### Conditions which may affect the rear view monitor system

- If the back of the vehicle is hit, the camera's position and mounting angle may change. Contact your Lexus dealer.
- Rapid temperature changes, such as when hot water is poured on the vehicle in cold weather, may cause the system to function abnormally.
- If the camera lens is dirty, it cannot transmit a clear image. Rinse with water and wipe with a soft cloth. If extremely dirty, wash with a mild cleanser and rinse.
- The displayed image may be darker and moving images may be slightly distorted when the system is cold.

# AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension System)*

AVS controls the suspension according to the road and driving conditions. Selecting an optimum driving mode allows good vehicle posture and steering wheel operation in conjunction with VGRS (GS460), EPS and active stabilizer suspension system (if equipped).




**1** Sports mode

For winding mountain road driving or high speed driving.

**2** Normal mode

For normal driving.



*: If equipped

**To help enhance driving safety and performance, the following systems operate automatically in response to various driving situations. Be aware, however, that these systems are supplementary and should not be relied upon too heavily when operating the vehicle.**

### ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)

Helps to prevent wheel lock when the brakes are applied suddenly, or if the brakes are applied while driving on a slippery road surface.

### Brake assist

Generates an increased level of braking force after the brake pedal is depressed, when the system detects a panic stop situation.

### Enhanced VSC (Enhanced Vehicle Stability Control)

Helps the driver to control skidding when swerving suddenly or turning on slippery road surfaces.

### TRAC (Traction Control)

Helps to maintain drive power and prevent the rear wheels from spinning when starting the vehicle or accelerating on slippery roads.

### Hill-start assist control

Helps prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards when starting on an incline or slippery slope. It operates for approximately 5 seconds at maximum.

### EPS (Electric Power Steering)

Employs an electric motor to reduce the amount of effort needed to turn the steering wheel.

### Active stabilizer suspension system (if equipped)

Reduces sway when cornering according to steering wheel movement and the selected suspension damping mode, in order to maintain a stable vehicle posture.

### PCS (Pre-Collision System) (if equipped)

→P. 207

### VGRS (Variable Gear Ratio Steering) (GS460)

Adjusts the wheel turning angle in accordance with the vehicle speed and steering wheel movement.

### VDIM (Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Management)

Provides integrated control of the ABS, Enhanced VSC, TRAC, hill-start assist control, VGRS (GS460) and EPS systems.
Helps to maintain vehicle stability when swerving on slippery road surfaces by controlling the brakes, engine output, and the movement of the front wheels.



## When the Enhanced VSC/TRAC/hill-start assist control systems are operating




If the vehicle is in danger of slipping, rolling backwards when starting on an incline, or if the rear wheels (2WD models) or all wheels (4WD models) spin, the slip indicator light flashes to indicate that the Enhanced VSC/TRAC/hill-start assist control systems have been engaged.

A buzzer (intermittent) sounds to indicate that Enhanced VSC is operating.

The stop lights and high mounted stoplight turn on when the hill-start assist control system is operating.

GS460: The slip indicator light flashes as well when ABS is operating.

## To disable TRAC and/or Enhanced VSC

If the vehicle gets stuck in fresh snow or mud, TRAC and Enhanced VSC may reduce power from the engine to the wheels. You may need to turn the system off to enable you to rock the vehicle in order to free it.

### Turning off TRAC only

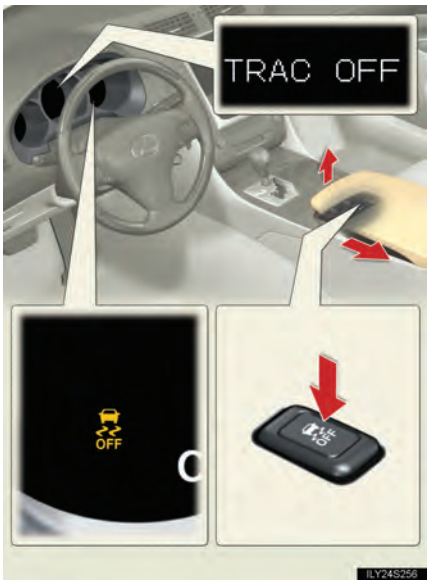



Quickly push and release the button to turn off TRAC.

The message "TRAC OFF" appears on the multi-information display.

Push the button again to turn the system back on.

## Turning off both TRAC and Enhanced VSC




Push and hold the button for more than 3 seconds while the vehicle is stopped to turn off TRAC and Enhanced VSC.

The slip off indicator light should come on and the message “TRAC OFF” appears on the multi-information display.

Push the button again to turn the system back on.

■ **Automatic reactivation of TRAC and Enhanced VSC**

Turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF after turning off the TRAC and Enhanced VSC systems will automatically re-enable them.

■ **Automatic TRAC reactivation**

If only the TRAC system is turned off, the TRAC system will turn on when the vehicle speed increases.

■ **Automatic TRAC and Enhanced VSC reactivation**

If the TRAC and Enhanced VSC systems are turned off, the systems will not turn on even when the vehicle speed increases.

■ **Sounds and vibrations caused by the ABS, brake assist, Enhanced VSC, TRAC, hill-start assist control and VGRS (GS460) systems**

- A sound may be heard from the engine compartment when the engine is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This sound does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred in any of these systems.
- Any of the following conditions may occur when the above systems are operating. None of these indicates that a malfunction has occurred.
  - Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
  - A motor sound may be heard after the vehicle comes to a stop.
  - The brake pedal may pulsate slightly after the ABS is activated.
  - The brake pedal may move down slightly after the ABS is activated.

■ **Hill-start assist control operating conditions**

This system comes into operation under the following conditions after the brake pedal has been depressed and the vehicle has come to a stop:

- The shift lever is in the "D" or "S".
- The system has detected that the vehicle is moving backwards.
- GS350: The brake pedal is not depressed.

■ **EPS operation sound**

When the steering wheel operates, a motor sound (whirring sound) may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ **Reduced effectiveness of EPS**

The effectiveness of EPS is reduced to prevent the system from overheating when there is frequent steering input over an extended period of time. The steering wheel may feel heavy as a result. Should this occur, refrain from excessive steering input or stop the vehicle and turn the engine off. The system should return to normal about 10 minutes.

■ **GS460: VGRS is disabled in the following situations**

- During stopping or the steering wheel has been moved for a long time while driving at lower speeds.
- After the engine is restarted at less than -22°F (-30°C).



## ⚠ CAUTION

Any of the following conditions may result in an accident which could cause death or serious injury:

■ **The ABS does not operate effectively when**

- The limits of tire gripping performance have been exceeded.
- The vehicle hydroplanes while driving at high speed on a wet or slick road.

■ **Stopping distance when the ABS is operating will exceed that of normal conditions**

The ABS is not designed to shorten the vehicle's stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you in the following situations.

- When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads
- When driving with tire chains
- When driving over bumps in the road
- When driving over roads with potholes or roads with uneven roads

■ **TRAC may not operate effectively when**

Directional control and power may not be achievable while driving on slippery road surfaces, even if the TRAC is operating.
Do not drive the vehicle in conditions where stability and power may be lost.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ If the hill-start assist control does not operate effectively**

Do not overly rely on the hill-start assist control. The hill-start assist control may not operate effectively on steep inclines and roads covered in ice.

**■ When the Enhanced VSC is activated**

The slip indicator light flashes and a warning buzzer sounds. Always drive carefully. Reckless driving may cause an accident. Exercise particular care when the indicator light flashes and a buzzer sounds.

**■ When TRAC and Enhanced VSC are off**

Be especially careful and drive at a speed appropriate to the road conditions. As these are systems to ensure vehicle stability and driving force, do not turn off TRAC and Enhanced VSC unless necessary.

**■ Replacing tires**

Make sure that all tires are of the same size, brand, tread pattern and total load capacity. In addition, make sure that the tires are inflated to the specified tire pressure level.

The ABS and Enhanced VSC will not function correctly if different tires are fitted on the vehicle.
Contact your Lexus dealer for further information when replacing tires or wheels.

**■ Handling of tires and suspension**

Using tires with any kind of problem or modifying the suspension will affect the driving assist systems, and may cause the system to malfunction.

# PCS (Pre-Collision System)*

**When the radar sensor detects that a frontal collision is highly likely or even unavoidable, safety systems such as the brakes and seat belts are automatically engaged to lessen impact and injuries to occupants as well as vehicle damage.**

## Pre-collision seat belts (front seats only)

If the pre-collision sensor detects that a collision is unavoidable, the pre-collision system will retract the seat belt before the collision occurs.
The same will happen if the driver makes an emergency braking or loses control of the vehicle. (→P. 65)

## Pre-collision brake assist

Applies greater braking force in relation to how strongly the brake pedal is depressed.

## Pre-collision braking

When there is a high possibility of a frontal collision, the system warns the driver using a warning light, warning display and buzzer. If the system determines that a collision is unavoidable, the brakes are automatically applied to reduce the collision speed. Pre-collision braking can be disabled using the pre-collision braking off button.

## AVS (if equipped)

If the system determines that the collision is unavoidable, the operation of AVS (→P. 199) helps prevent the vehicle front from going down when hard brakes are applied.



*: If equipped

## Disabling pre-collision braking




1 Pre-collision braking enabled

2 Pre-collision braking disabled

The “PCS” warning light flashes when pre-collision braking is disabled.

## Radar sensor




Detects vehicles or other obstacles on or near the road ahead and determines whether a collision is imminent based on the position, speed, and heading of the obstacles.

1 Grille cover

2 Radar sensor

■ **Obstacles not detected**

The sensor cannot detect plastic obstacles such as pylons. There may also be occasions when the radar sensor cannot detect pedestrians, animals, bicycles, motorcycles, trees, or snowdrifts.

■ **The pre-collision system is operational when**

● Pre-collision seat belts (linked to the radar sensor)

- Vehicle speed is above 3 mph (5 km/h).
- The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or oncoming vehicle exceeds 18 mph (30 km/h).
- The front occupants are wearing a seat belt.

● Pre-collision seat belts (linked to brake operation)

- Vehicle speed exceeds 18 mph (30 km/h).
- The system detects sudden braking or skidding.
- The front occupants are wearing a seat belt.

● Pre-collision brake assist

- Vehicle speed is above 18 mph (30 km/h).
- The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or oncoming vehicle exceeds 18 mph (30 km/h).
- The brake pedal is depressed.

● Pre-collision braking

- The pre-collision braking off button is not pressed.
- Vehicle speed is greater than about 9 mph (15 km/h).
- The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or the vehicle running ahead of you is greater than about 9 mph (15 km/h).

● AVS (if equipped)

- Vehicle speed is above 3 mph (5 km/h).
- The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or oncoming vehicle exceeds 18 mph (30 km/h).

■ **Conditions that may trigger the system even if there is no danger of collision**

- When there is an object by the roadside at the entrance to a curve
- When passing an oncoming vehicle on a curve
- When driving over a narrow iron bridge
- When there is a metal object on the road surface
- When driving on an uneven road surface
- When passing an oncoming vehicle on a left-turn
- When your vehicle rapidly closes on the vehicle in front
- When a grade separation/interchange, sign, billboard, or other structure appears to be directly in the vehicle's line of travel
- When an extreme change in vehicle height occurs
- When there is an abnormality in the radar sensor
- When climbing a steep hill causes an overhead billboard or other metallic structure to appear directly in the vehicle's line of travel

When the system is activated in the situations described above there is also a possibility that the seat belts will retract quickly and the brakes will be applied with a force greater than normal. When the seat belt is locked in the retracted position, stop the vehicle in a safe place, release the seat belt and refasten.

■ **When there is a malfunction in the system**

Warning lights and/or warning messages will turn on or flash. (→P. 535, 545)

■ **Certification**

▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

FCC ID: HYQDNMWR005

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Radio frequency radiation exposure Information:

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment.

This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 20 cm between the radiator and your body.

This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

L'utilisation de ce dispositif est autorisée seulement aux deux conditions suivantes: (1) il ne doit pas produire de brouillage et (2) l'utilisateur du dispositif doit être prêt à accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique reçu, même si ce brouillage est susceptible de compromettre le fonctionnement du dispositif.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Handling the radar sensor**

Observe the following to ensure the pre-collision system can function effectively.

- Keep the sensor and front grille clean at all times.
  Clean the sensor and front grille with a soft cloth so you do not mark or damage them.
- Do not subject the sensor or surrounding area to a strong impact.
  If the sensor moves even slightly off position, the system may malfunction. If the sensor or surrounding area are subject to a strong impact, always have the area inspected and adjusted by a Lexus dealer.
- Do not disassemble the sensor.
- Do not attach accessories or stickers to the sensor, grille cover or surrounding area.
- Do not modify or paint the sensor and grille.

**■ Limitations of the pre-collision system**

Do not rely on the pre-collision system. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings and checking for any obstacles or other road hazards.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Cautions regarding the assist contents of the system**

By means of alarms and brake control, the pre-collision system is intended to assist the driver in avoiding collisions through the process of "LOOK-JUDGE-ACT". There are limits to the degree of assistance the system can provide, so please keep in mind the following important points.

- Assisting the driver in watching the road
  The pre-collision system is only able to detect obstacles directly in front of the vehicle, and only within a limited range. It is not a mechanism that allows careless or inattentive driving, and it is not a system that can assist the driver in low-visibility conditions. It is still necessary for the driver to pay close attention to the vehicle's surroundings.
- Assisting the driver in making correct judgment
  When attempting to estimate the likelihood of a collision, the only data available to the pre-collision system is that from obstacles it has detected directly in front of the vehicle. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary for the driver to remain vigilant and to determine whether or not there is a possibility of collision in any given situation.
- Assisting the driver in taking action
  The pre-collision system's braking assist feature is designed to help reduce the severity of a collision, and so only acts when the system has judged that a collision is unavoidable. This system by itself is not capable of automatically avoiding a collision or bringing the vehicle to a stop safely. For this reason, when encountering a dangerous situation the driver must take direct and immediate action in order to ensure the safety of all involved.

# Cargo and luggage

**Take notice of the following information about storage precautions, cargo capacity and load.**

- Stow cargo and luggage in the trunk whenever possible. Be sure all items are secured in place.
- Be careful to keep the vehicle level. Placing the weight as far forward as possible helps maintain vehicle balance.
- For better fuel economy, do not carry unnecessary weight.

## Capacity and distribution

Cargo capacity depends on the total weight of the occupants.

(Cargo capacity) = (Total load capacity) – (Total weight of occupants)

**Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit –**

(1) Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.

(2) Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

(3) Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.

(4) The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity.

For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400 - 750 (5 × 150) = 650 lbs.)

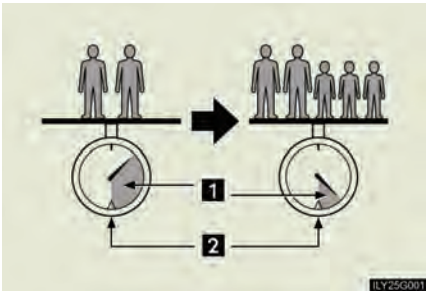
(5) Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle.

That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

(6) If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle. (→P. 218)

Lexus does not recommend towing a trailer with your vehicle. Your vehicle is not designed for trailer towing.

## Example on your vehicle




1 Cargo capacity
2 Total load capacity

When 2 people with the combined weight of 366 lb. (166 kg) are riding in your vehicle, which has a total load capacity of 815 lb. (370 kg), the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity will be as follows:

815 lb. – 366 lb. = 449 lb. (370 kg –166 kg = 204 kg)

In this condition, if 3 more passengers with the combined weight of 388 lb. (176 kg) get on, the available cargo and luggage load will be reduced as follows:

449 lb. – 388 lb. = 61 lb. (204 kg – 176 kg = 28 kg)

As shown in the above example, if the number of occupants increases, the cargo and luggage load equaling the combined weight of the occupants who got on later, by an amount. In other words, if an increase in the number of occupants causes an excess of the total load capacity (combined weight of occupants plus cargo and luggage load), you must reduce the cargo and luggage on your vehicle.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Things that must not be carried in the trunk**

The following things may cause a fire if loaded in the trunk.

- Receptacles containing gasoline
- Aerosol cans

**■ Storage precautions**

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not place cargo or luggage in or on the following locations as the item may get under the brake or accelerator pedal and prevent the pedals from being depressed properly, block the driver's vision, or hit the driver or passengers, causing an accident.
  - Driver's feet
  - Front passenger or rear seats (when stacking items)
  - Package tray
  - Instrument panel
  - Dashboard
- Secure all items in the occupant compartment, as they may shift and injure someone during sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

**■ Weight of the load**

- Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control resulting in an accident which may cause death or serious injury.
- Do not exceed the maximum axle weight rating or the total vehicle weight rating.
- Even if the total load of occupant's weight and the cargo load is less than the total load capacity, do not apply the load unevenly. Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control which may cause death or serious injury.

# Vehicle load limits

**Vehicle load limits include total load capacity, seating capacity, towing capacity and cargo capacity.**

## Total load capacity: 815 lb. (370 kg)

Total load capacity means the combined weight of occupants, cargo and luggage.

## Seating capacity: 5 occupants (Front 2, Rear 3)

Seating capacity means the maximum number of occupants whose estimated average weight is 150 lb. (68 kg) per person.

Even if the number of occupants are within the seating capacity, do not exceed the total load capacity.

## Towing capacity

Lexus does not recommend towing a trailer with your vehicle.

## Cargo capacity

Cargo capacity may increase or decrease depending on the weight and the number of occupants.

---

### Total load capacity and seating capacity

These details are also described on the tire and loading information label.
(→P. 473)

**⚠ CAUTION**

### Overloading the vehicle

Do not overload the vehicle.
It may not only cause damage to the tires, but also degrade steering and braking ability, resulting in an accident.

# Winter driving tips

**Carry out the necessary preparations and inspections before driving the vehicle in winter. Always drive the vehicle in a manner appropriate to the prevailing weather conditions.**

## Pre-winter preparations

- Use fluids that are appropriate to the prevailing outside temperatures.
  - Engine oil
  - Engine coolant
  - Washer fluid
- Have a service technician inspect the level and specific gravity of battery electrolyte.
- Have the vehicle fitted with four snow tires or purchase a set of tire chains for the rear tires.

  Ensure that all tires are the same size and brand, and that chains match the size of the tires.

## Before driving the vehicle

Perform the following according to the driving conditions.

- Do not try to forcibly open a window or move a wiper that is frozen. Pour warm water over the frozen area to melt the ice. Wipe away the water immediately to prevent it from freezing.
- To ensure proper operation of the climate control system fan, remove any snow that has accumulated on the air inlet vents in front of the windshield.
- Remove any ice that has accumulated on the vehicle chassis.
- Periodically check for and remove any excess ice or snow that may have accumulated in the wheel well or on the brakes.

### When driving the vehicle

Accelerate the vehicle slowly and drive at a reduced speed suitable to road conditions.

### When parking the vehicle

Park the vehicle and move the shift lever to "P" without setting the parking brake. The parking brake may freeze up, preventing it from being released. If necessary, block the wheels to prevent inadvertent sliding or creeping.

## Regulations on the use of tire chains

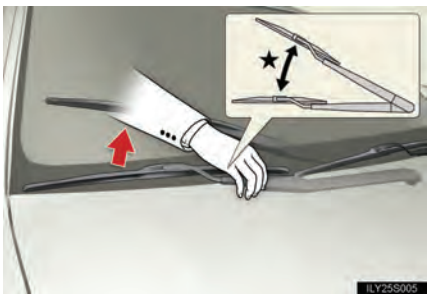
- Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary according to location and type of road. Always check local regulations before installing chains.
- Use SAE Class "S" type radial tire chains, with the exception of radial cable chains or V-bar type chains.
  - Install the chains on the rear tires.
  - Refer to the explanation that comes with the tire chains for installation instructions.
- Retighten the chains after driving 1/4 - 1/2 mile (0.5 - 1.0 km).

## Shifting the windshield wiper position

You can shift the wipers to the rest position manually. (In heavy snow or icy condition etc.)

Grip the wiper arm firmly when shifting the wiper position.

▶ To rest position

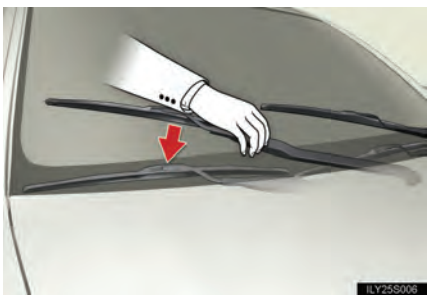



Raise the wiper in line with the windshield.

You can stand the wipers up for the rest position.

*: More than 3.9 in. (10 cm)

▶ To retract position




Lower the wipers by pressing on the wiper arm.

### Snow chain installation

Observe the following precautions when installing and removing chains.

- Install and remove tire chains in a safe location.
- Install tire chains on the rear tires only. Do not install tire chains on front tires.
- Install tire chains following the instructions provided in the accompanying instructions.

## CAUTION

### Driving with snow tires

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.
Failing to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control and cause death or serious injury.

- Use tires of the size specified for your vehicle.
- Maintain the specified level of tire inflation pressure.
- Do not drive in excess of 75 mph (120 km/h), regardless of the type of snow tires being used.
- Use snow tires on all, not just some wheels.

### Driving with snow chains

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.
Failing to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely, and may cause death or serious injury.

- Do not drive in excess of the speed limit specified for the tire chains being used, or 30 mph (50 km/h), whichever is lower.
- Avoid driving on bumpy road surfaces or over potholes.
- Avoid sudden turns and braking, as use of chains may adversely affect vehicle handling.
- Slow down sufficiently before entering a curve to ensure that vehicle control is maintained.

NOTICE

**Repairing or replacing snow tires**

Request repairs of and obtain replacement snow tires from Lexus dealers or legitimate tire retailers.
This is because the removal and attachment of snow tires affects the operation of the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters.

**Fitting tire chains**

The tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not function correctly when tire chains are fitted.

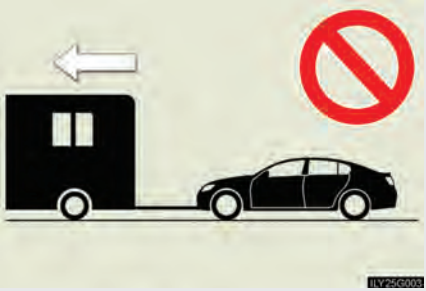
# Trailer towing

Lexus does not recommend towing a trailer with your vehicle. Lexus also does not recommend the installation of a tow hitch or the use of a tow hitch carrier for a wheelchair, scooter, bicycle, etc. Your Lexus is not designed for trailer towing or for the use of tow hitch mounted carriers.



# Dinghy towing

Your vehicle is not designed to be dinghy towed (with 4 wheels on the ground) behind a motor home.



NOTICE

**To avoid serious damage to your vehicle**

Do not tow your vehicle with 4 wheels on the ground.

**3-1. Using the touch screen**
Touch screen ..... 228
Setting the touch screen ..... 235

**3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger**
Automatic air conditioning system..... 246
Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers ..... 255
Windshield wiper de-icer.... 256

**3-3. Using the audio system**
Audio system type..... 257
Using the radio..... 260
Using the CD/DVD player ..... 269
Playing an audio CD ..... 272
Playing MP3 and WMA discs..... 276
Playing DVD video/audio (with DVD player) ..... 280
Playing a video CD (with DVD player) ..... 294
CD/DVD player and DVD video disc information ..... 297
Listening to Bluetooth® audio..... 308
Listening to a USB memory/ iPod® ..... 316
Optimal use of the audio/ video system ..... 326
Using the AUX port ..... 328
Using the steering switches..... 329

**3-4. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)**
Hands-free system (for cellular phone)..... 332
Using a Bluetooth® phone..... 338
Setting the hands-free system (for cellular phone)..... 353

**3-5. Using the interior lights**
Interior lights list ..... 382

**3-6. Using the storage features**
List of storage features..... 385

**3-7. Other interior features**
Sun visors ..... 393
Vanity mirrors ..... 394
Clock..... 395
Outside temperature display..... 396
Ashtrays..... 397
Cigarette lighter..... 398
Power outlet ..... 399
Seat heaters/ventilators..... 400
Armrest ..... 402
Rear sunshade ..... 403
Floor mats ..... 406
Trunk features..... 408
Garage door opener ..... 411
Compass ..... 417
Safety Connect ..... 421

# Touch screen

**By touching the screen with your finger, you can control the audio system and air conditioning system, and adjust the screen display etc.**

**Press SETUP or INFO PHONE to display the following screen.**

Owners of models equipped with a navigation system should refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

The illustrations below are for vehicles with navigation system.
The display and button positions will differ depending on the type of the system.

## Display

▶ "Setup" screen



▶ "Information" screen




## Reference

▶ Display buttons

| Button | Page |
|---|---|
| "CLIMATE" | P. 246 |
| "AUDIO" | P. 257 |
| "MAP VOICE"/"DEST" | Navigation System Owner's Manual |
| "INFO PHONE" (Displaying the "Information" screen) | P. 228 |
| "DISP" (Adjusting the display) | P. 232 |
| "SETUP" (Displaying the "Setup" screen) | P. 235 |

▶ "Setup" screen

| Switch | Page |
|---|---|
| "General" | P. 235 |
| "Clock" | P. 239/ Navigation System Owner's Manual |
| "Voice" | P. 240/ Navigation System Owner's Manual |
| "Navi." | Navigation System Owner's Manual |
| "Phone" | P. 332 |
| "Audio" | P. 257 |
| "Vehicle" | P. 245/ Navigation System Owner's Manual |
| "Other" | Navigation System Owner's Manual |

▶ "Information" screen

| Switch | Page |
|---|---|
| "Phone" | P. 332 |
| "Fuel Consumption" | P. 234 |
| "Map Data", "Calendar", "LEXUS Insider", "XM Sports", "XM Stocks", "XM NavWeather" | Navigation System Owner's Manual |

## Initial screen







If the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the initial screen will be displayed for a few seconds as the system starts up.

Subscribers will be shown the "LEXUS ENFORM" screen next.

## Adjusting the display

STEP 1 Press DISP.

STEP 2 Adjust the display as desired using "-" / "+" /"R" / "G".

If you do not touch the screen for 20 seconds, the system will return to the previous screen.




| | "R" | "G" |
|---|---|---|
| "Color"* | Red | Green |
| | "-" | "+" |
| "Tone"* | Lighter | Darker |
| "Contrast" | Lower | Higher |
| "Brightness" | Darker | Brighter |

*: Vehicles with DVD player only, displays during DVD video/audio or video CD playback

■ **To avoid damaging the touch screen**

- Touch the screen lightly with your finger. If there is no response, remove your finger from the screen and try again.
- Remove any dirt on the screen by wiping with a soft cloth. Do not use detergent.

■ **When using the touch screen**

- If the screen is cold, the display may be dark, or the system may seem to be operating slightly slower than normal.
- The screen may seem dark and hard to see when viewed through sunglasses. Change your angle of viewing, adjust the display on the "Display" screen or remove your sunglasses.

■ **Changing between day mode and night mode**




When the headlights are turned on, the screen dims.
However, the screen can be switched to day mode by touching "Day Mode".

The screen will stay in day mode when the headlights are turned on until "Day Mode" is touched again.
The switch will not be displayed if the instrument panel light control is set to the brightest level.

■ **To turn off the display**

If "Screen Off" is touched, the screen display is turned off, and guidance is by voice only.

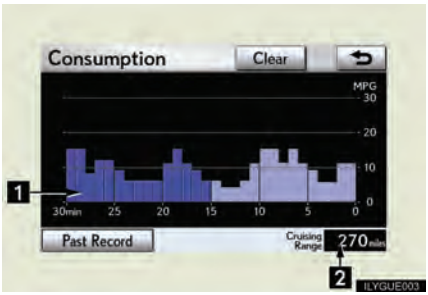
## Fuel consumption

### ■ Consumption

STEP 1 Press INFO PHONE.

STEP 2 Touch "Fuel Consumption" on the "Information" screen.

If the "Consumption" screen does not appear, touch "Consumption".




1 Fuel consumption in the past 30 minutes

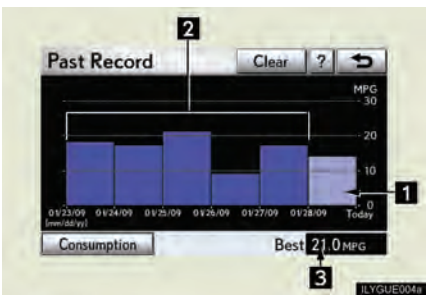
2 Cruising range

### ■ Past record (with navigation system)

STEP 1 Press INFO PHONE.

STEP 2 Touch "Fuel Consumption" on the "Information" screen.

If the "Past Record" screen does not appear, touch "Past Record".




1 Average fuel consumption (today)

2 Average fuel consumption (past 5 days)

3 Best past fuel consumption

### ■ Resetting the data

Selecting "Clear" on the "Consumption" screen will reset the consumption data.
Selecting "Clear" on the "Past Record" screen will reset the past record data.

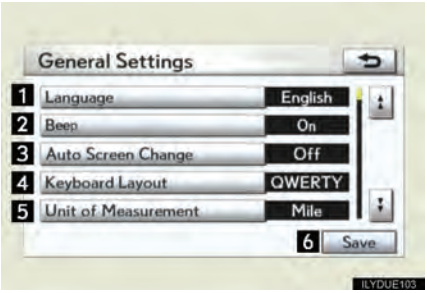
You can change the touch screen to your desired settings.

## General settings

This screen is used for language selection, and for setting operation sounds, automatic screen change to on or off, etc.

Touch "General" on the "Setup" screen.

▶ Page 1

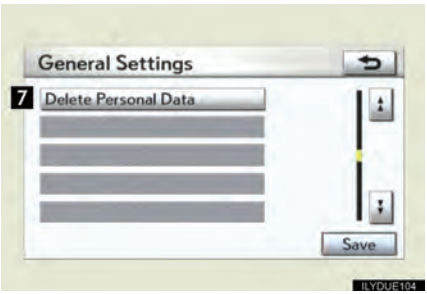



1 Select language
2 Beep on/off
3 Automatic transition on/off (with navigation system)
4 Select keyboard layout
5 Select the unit
6 Save settings

Make sure to save after changing settings.

7 Delete personal data

▶ Page 2



## Select language




Select the desired language.

## Change voice recognition language

The desired voice recognition language can be selected from the list.

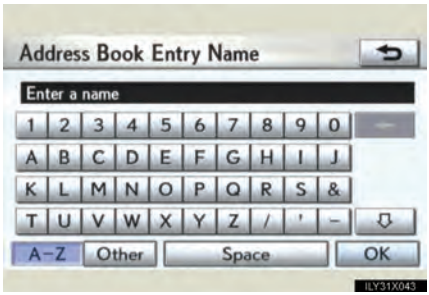
## Automatic transition on/off

After 20 seconds of air conditioning or audio system use, the system will return the display to the previous screen.

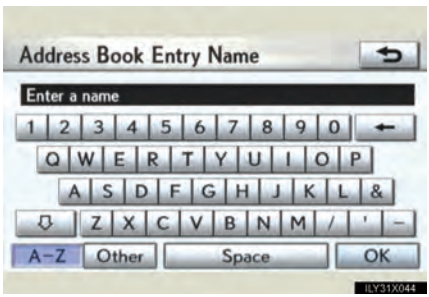
### Select keyboard layout

The keyboard layout can be changed.

▶ "ABC" type




▶ "QWERTY" type



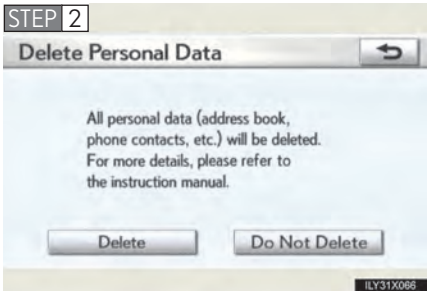

### Select the unit

The measurement unit shown on the display can be changed.

## ■ Delete personal data

STEP 1 Touch “Delete Personal Data” on the “General Settings” screen.

STEP 2




Touch “Delete”.

Check carefully beforehand, as data cannot be retrieved once deleted.

STEP 3 A confirmation screen will be displayed. Touch “Yes”.

The following personal data can be deleted or turned to their default settings:

- Radio preset stations
- Phonebook data
- Call history data
- Speed dial data
- Voice tag data
- Bluetooth® phone data
- Volume setting
- Details setting
- Maintenance conditions*
- Maintenance information “off” setting*
- Address book*
- Areas to avoid*
- Previous points*
- Route guidance*
- Route trace*

*: If the navigation system is equipped

## Clock settings

Touch “Clock” on the “Setup” screen.




1 Select time zone (with navigation system)
2 Daylight saving time on/off
3 Auto adjust clock on/off (with navigation system)
4 Manual clock setting

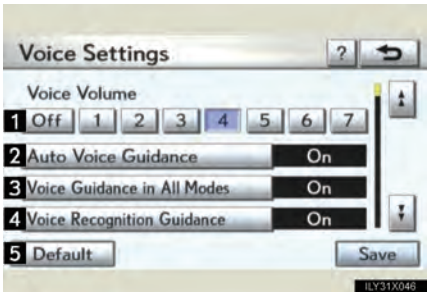
### Manual adjustment

The minutes and hours can be adjusted manually when auto adjust clock is set to off.

## Voice settings

Touch “Voice” on the “Setup” screen.

▶ Page 1



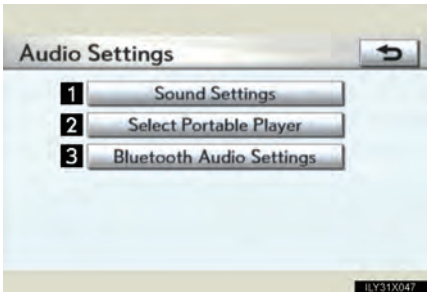

▶ Page 2




1. Select voice guidance volume
2. Voice guidance on/off during route guidance (with navigation system)
3. Voice guidance on/off during audio system etc. is in use (with navigation system)
4. Voice recognition talkback on/off
5. Restore default settings
6. Automatic recognition on/off without pressing the talk switch more than once
7. Voice guidance on/off when using the traffic information (with navigation system)
8. Voice guidance on/off when using the XM® NavWeather (with navigation system)
9. Select voice guidance projection

## Audio settings

Touch "Audio" on the "Setup" screen.




1 Sound settings
2 Select portable player
3 Setting up Bluetooth® audio

### Sound settings

Touch "Sound Settings".

Sound/DSP settings can be changed. (→P. 326)

### Select portable player

STEP 1 Touch "Select Portable Player".

STEP 2




A portable player can be selected for connection.

Where no player is registered, "Empty" is displayed.

When "Portable Player Info" is touched, the following screen is displayed:




"Device Name" and "Connection Method" can be changed.

● Changing the device name

STEP 1 Touch "Edit".

STEP 2 Enter the desired name.

● Changing the connection method



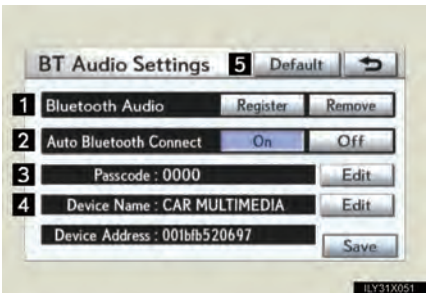

Touch "From Vehicle" or "From Portable Player".

"From Vehicle": Connect the audio system to the audio player.

"From Portable Player": Connect the audio player to the audio system.

## Setting up Bluetooth® audio

Touch "Bluetooth* Audio Settings".




1 Register/remove Bluetooth® audio
2 Automatic connection on/off
3 Display passcode
4 Display device name
5 Restore default settings

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

● Registering Bluetooth® audio

STEP 1 Touch "Register".

STEP 2




Enter the passcode into the portable player.

A message is shown if connection has been successful.

If connection fails, a message will be displayed and connection will be re-attempted.

● Removing Bluetooth® audio

STEP 1 Touch "Remove".

STEP 2




Touch the player to remove.

A confirmation screen will be displayed, touch "Yes" to remove the player.

● Changing the passcode

STEP 1 Touch “Edit”.

STEP 2 Enter the desired passcode.

The passcode can be between 4 and 8 characters in length, and is set to “0000” by default.

● Changing the device name

STEP 1 Touch “Edit”.

STEP 2 Enter the desired name.

● Restoring the default settings

STEP 1 Touch “Default”.

STEP 2 A confirmation screen will be displayed, touch “Yes” to restore the default settings.

---

■ **When setting the connection method to “From Portable Player”**

- Connection methods differ depending on the audio player. Consult your audio player’s manual.
- Automatic connection cannot be set to “On”.

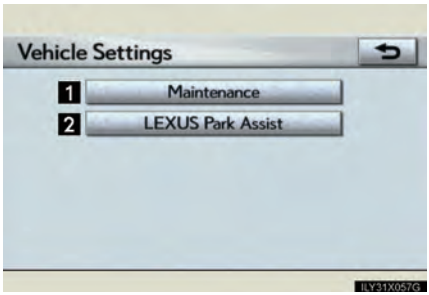
■ **When using Bluetooth® audio**

A confirmation screen will be displayed if an attempt is made to remove a portable player.

Touch “Yes” to disconnect and remove the player.

## Vehicle settings

Touch "Vehicle" on the "Setup" screen.




1 Refer to "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

2 Setting up intuitive parking assist

● Setting up intuitive parking assist




1 Alert volume setting

2 Display setting

"Static": Displays when the sensors detect an obstacle.

"Dynamic": Displays if maneuvers are required to avoid an obstacle.

"Off": Does not display the intuitive parking assist display.

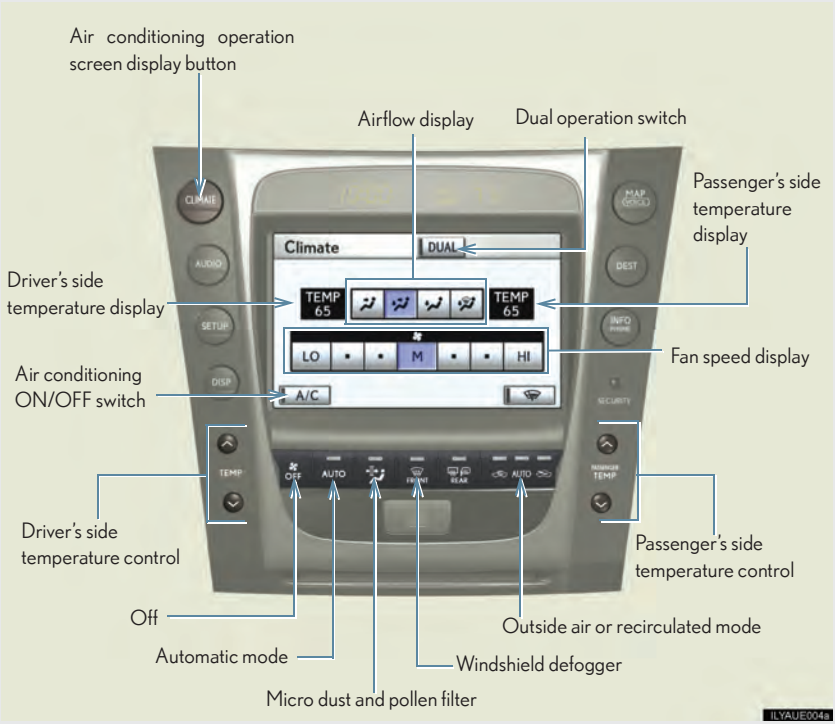
### Intuitive parking assist display

When an obstacle is detected while the rear view monitor system is in use, the warning indicator will appear in the top right of the screen even if the display setting has been set to "Off".

**Airflow and outlets are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.**

Press CLIMATE to display the air conditioning operation screen.

The illustrations below are for vehicles with navigation system.
The display and button positions will differ depending on the type of the system.



## Using the voice command system (with navigation system)




Press the talk switch to operate the voice command system.
(→"Navigation System Owner's Manual")

## Using the automatic mode

STEP 1 Press AUTO.

➡ The air conditioning system will begin to operate. Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

STEP 2 Press AUTO to switch to automatic mode.

➡ Automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

STEP 3 Press ∧ to increase the temperature and ∨ to decrease the temperature on TEMP.

The temperature for the driver and passenger seats can be set separately.

## Adjusting the settings

### Adjusting the temperature setting

Press ∧ to increase the temperature and ∨ to decrease the temperature on 

.

Press ∧ (increase) or ∨ (decrease) on 

to separately adjust the temperature for the passenger and driver sides (dual mode). Touch "DUAL" to return the driver and passenger side temperatures to the same setting (simultaneous mode).

The air conditioning system switches between dual and simultaneous modes each time "DUAL" is touched.

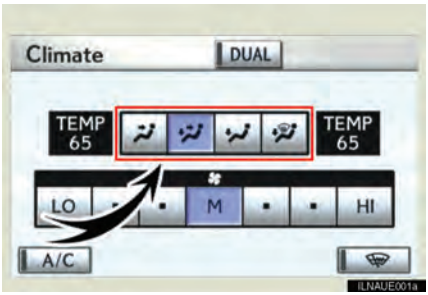
### Adjusting the fan speed

Touch any switch of "LO" to "HI" (decrease ↔ increase) on the operating screen.

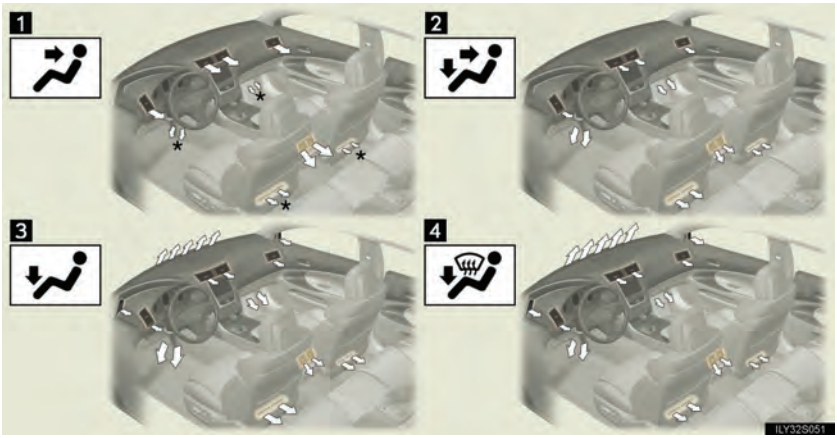
Press 

to turn the fan off.

## Changing the air outlets




Touch any mode on the operating screen.




1 Upper body
*: Only in the automatic mode

2 Upper body and feet

3 Feet

4 Feet and the windshield defogger operates

### Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes

Press 

.

The mode switches between  (recycles air inside the vehicle), "AUTO" and  (introduces air from outside the vehicle) modes each time the button is pressed.

When the system is switched to automatic mode, the air conditioning system operates automatically.

## Defogging the windshield




Press 

.

The air conditioning system control operates automatically.

## Micro dust and pollen filter




Press .

Outside air mode switches to (recirculated air) mode. Pollen is removed from the air and the air flows to the upper part of the body.

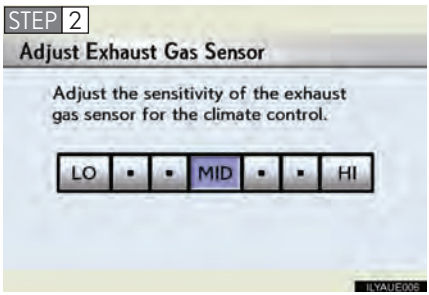
Usually the system will turn off automatically approximately 3 minutes later.

To stop the operation, press again.

## Adjusting the sensitivity of the air intake control in automatic mode

STEP 1 Press AUTO until the smog sensor screen appears while the vehicle is stopped.

STEP 2

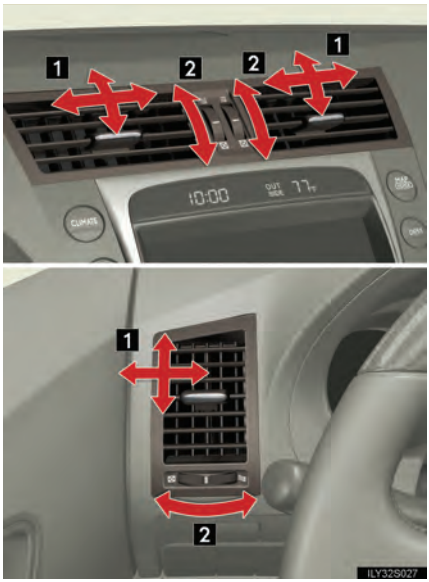



Touch any switch of "LO" to "HI" (lower sensitivity ↔ higher sensitivity) on the operating screen.

3 Interior features

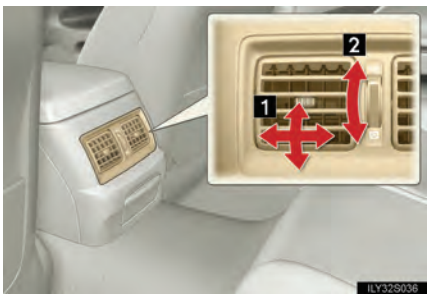
## Adjusting the position of and opening and closing the air outlets

▶ Front outlets




1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down
2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent

▶ Rear seat outlets




1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down
2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent

■ **Using the automatic mode**

Fan speed is adjusted automatically in accordance with the temperature setting and ambient conditions. As a result, the following may occur.

- Immediately after the switch is pressed, the fan may stop for a while until warm or cool air is ready to flow.
- Cool air may flow to the area around the upper body when the heater is on.

■ **Using the system in recirculated air mode**

The windows will fog up more easily if the recirculated air mode is used for an extended period.

■ **Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes**

Recirculated air mode or outside air mode may be automatically switched to in accordance with the temperature setting and the inside temperature.

■ **Window defogger feature**

Recirculated air mode may automatically switch to  (outside air) mode in situations where the windows need to be defogged.

■ **Outside temperature approaches 32°F (0°C)**

The air conditioning system may not operate even when "A/C" is touched.

■ **Automatic mode for air intake control**

In automatic mode, the system detects exhaust gas and other pollutants and automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

When the air conditioning is off, and the fan is operating, turning the auto mode on will activate the air conditioning system.

■ **Micro dust and pollen filter**

- In order to prevent the windows from fogging up when the outside air is cold, the following may occur.
  - Outside air mode does not switch to .
  - The air conditioning system operates automatically.
  - The operation cancels after 1 minute.
- In rainy weather, the windows may fog up. Press .

■ **When the indicator light on "A/C" flashes**

Touch "A/C" and turn off the air conditioning system before turning it on once more. There may be a problem in the air conditioning system if the indicator light continues to flash. Turn the air conditioning system off and have it inspected by your Lexus dealer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

■ **To prevent the windshield from fogging up**

Do not use  during cool air operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield can cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, blocking your vision.

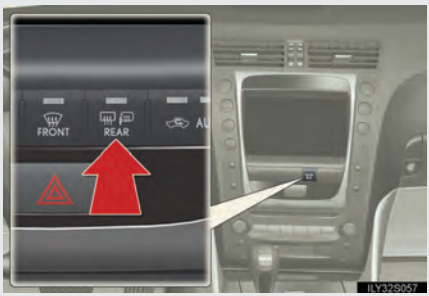
**⚠ NOTICE**

■ **To prevent 12 volt battery discharge**

Do not leave the automatic air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

# Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers

**These features are used to defog the rear window, and to remove raindrops, dew and frost from the outside rear view mirrors.**




## On/off

The defoggers will automatically turn off after 15 to 60 minutes. The operation time changes according to the ambient temperature and vehicle speed.

### Operating conditions

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch must be in the IGNITION ON mode.

### CAUTION

**When the outside rear view mirror defoggers are on**

Do not touch the rear view mirror surfaces, as they can become very hot and burn you.

### NOTICE

**To prevent 12 volt battery discharge**

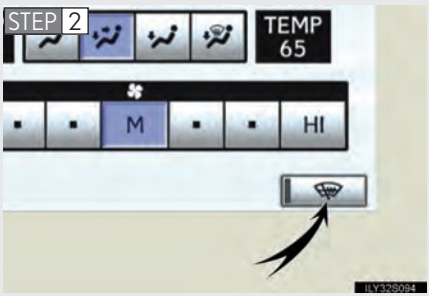
Turn the defoggers off when the engine is off.

# Windshield wiper de-icer*

**This feature is used to prevent ice from building up on the windshield and wiper blades.**




Press CLIMATE.




ON/OFF

Touch the switch to turn on the windshield wiper de-icer. The windshield wiper de-icer will automatically turn off after approximately 15 minutes. Touching the switch again also turns the de-icer off.

---

■ **Operating conditions**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch must be in the IGNITION ON mode.

**⚠ CAUTION**

■ **When the windshield wiper de-icer is on**

Do not touch the glass at the lower part of the windshield or to the side of the front pillars as the surfaces can become very hot and burn you.

*: If equipped

# Audio system type

**CD and (optional) DVD player with changer and AM/FM radio.**
**Press AUDIO and touch each tabs to display the audio operation screen.**

The illustrations below are for vehicles with navigation system.
The display and button positions will differ depending on the type of the system.



| Title | Page |
|---|---|
| Using the radio | P. 260 |
| Using the CD/DVD player | P. 269 |
| Playing an audio CD | P. 272 |
| Playing MP3 and WMA discs | P. 276 |
| Playing DVD video/audio | P. 280 |
| Playing video CD | P. 294 |
| CD/DVD player and DVD video disc information | P. 297 |
| Listening to Bluetooth® audio | P. 308 |
| Listening to a USB memory/iPod® | P. 316 |
| Optimal use of the audio/video system | P. 326 |
| Using the AUX port | P. 328 |
| Using the steering switches | P. 329 |


## Using the voice command system (with navigation system)




Press the talk switch to operate the voice command system.
(→"Navigation System Owner's Manual")

### Using cellular phones

Interference may be heard through the audio system's speakers if a cellular phone is being used inside or close to the vehicle while the audio system is operating.

**CAUTION**

**For vehicles sold in the U.S.A. and Canada**

- Part 15 of the FCC Rules

  FCC Warning:
  Any unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment will void the user's authority to operate this device.

- Laser products

  - Do not take this unit apart or attempt to make any changes yourself.
    This is an intricate unit that uses a laser pickup to retrieve information from the surface of compact discs. The laser is carefully shielded so that its rays remain inside the cabinet. Therefore, never try to disassemble the player or alter any of its parts since you may be exposed to laser rays and dangerous voltages.
  - This product utilizes a laser.
    Use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

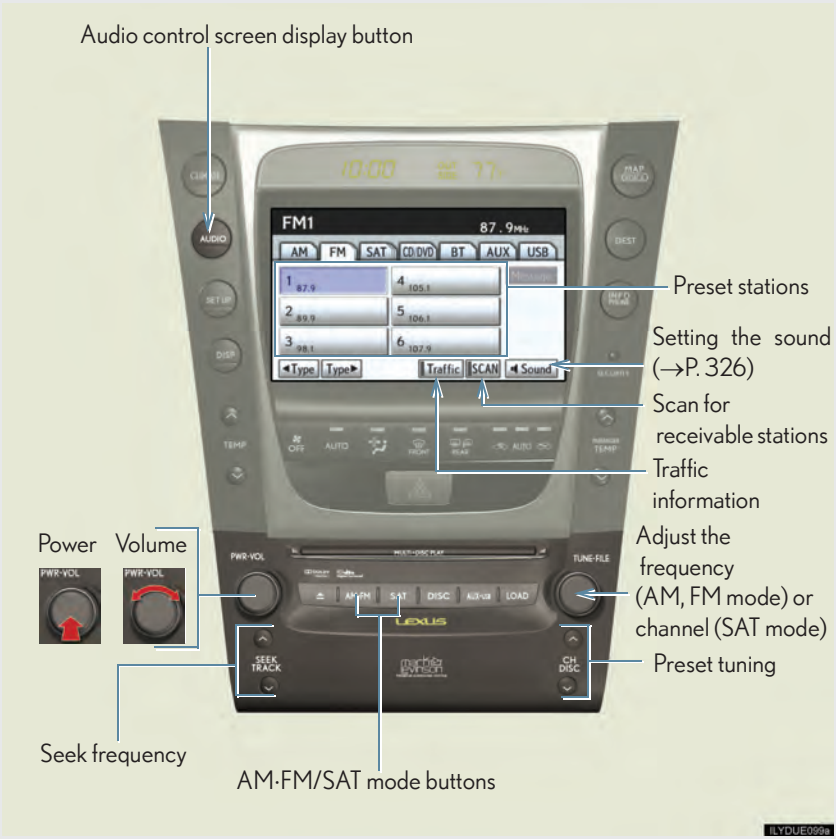
**NOTICE**

**To prevent 12 volt battery discharge**

Do not leave the audio system on longer than necessary with the engine off.

**To avoid damaging the audio/video system**

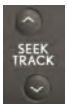
Take care not to spill drinks or other fluids over the audio system.


Audio control screen display button
FM1
87.9
AM
FM
SAT
CD/DVD
BT
AUX
USB
Preset stations
Setting the sound (→P. 326)
Scan for receivable stations
Traffic information
Power
Volume
Adjust the frequency (AM, FM mode) or channel (SAT mode)
Preset tuning
Seek frequency
AM·FM/SAT mode buttons
Type
Traffic
SCAN
Sound
PWR-VOL
TUNE-FILE
SEEK TRACK
CH DISC
LOAD
DISC
LEXUS
ILYDUE099a

## Setting station presets (excluding XM® Satellite Radio)

STEP 1 Search for desired stations by turning 

or pressing

∧ or ∨ on 

.

STEP 2 Touch and hold one of the preset stations (1 - 6) until you hear a beep.

## Scanning radio stations (excluding XM® Satellite Radio)

### ■ Scanning the preset radio stations

STEP 1 Touch "SCAN" on the screen until "P·SCAN" appears.

Preset stations will be played for a few seconds each.

STEP 2 When the desired station is reached, touch "SCAN" once again.

### ■ Scanning all radio stations within range

STEP 1 Touch "SCAN" on the screen.

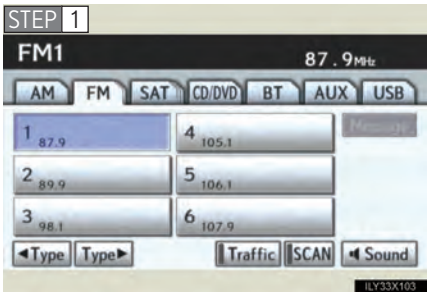
"SCAN" appears on the screen and all stations with reception will be played for a few seconds each.

STEP 2 When the desired station is reached, touch "SCAN" once again.

## RDS (Radio Data System)

This feature allows your radio to receive station identification information and program information (classical, jazz, etc.) from radio stations which broadcast this information.

### Receiving RDS broadcasts




Touch "◄ Type" or "Type ►" on the screen.

The program type changes as follows each time the switch is touched.

- "ROCK"
- "MISC" (Miscellaneous)
- "INFORM" (Information)
- "EASYLIS" (Easy listening)
- "CLS/JAZZ" (Classical music and Jazz)
- "R & B" (Rhythm and Blues)
- "RELIGION"
- "ALART" (Emergency messages)

When a program is set, "Type Seek" appears.

STEP 2 Touch “Type Seek” on the screen.

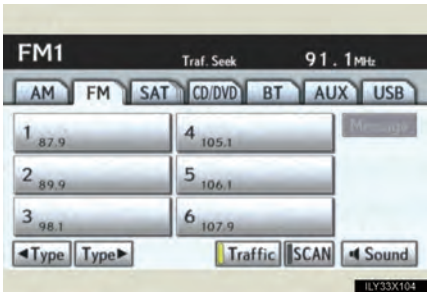
The radio seeks or scans for stations by the relevant program type.

If no radio station of that type is found, “Nothing” appears on the screen.

## ■ Displaying radio text messages

If “Message” appears on the screen, a text message may be displayed.

## ■ Traffic announcement



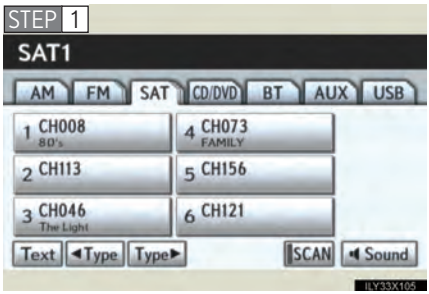

Touch “Traffic” on the screen.

“Traf. Seek” appears on the display, and the radio will start seeking any station broadcasting traffic program information.

If no traffic program station is found, “Nothing” appears on the display.

## XM® Satellite Radio (if equipped)

### Receiving XM® Satellite Radio




Press SAT or touch "SAT" tab on the screen.

The display changes as follows each time the switch is pressed.

SAT1 → SAT2 → SAT3

STEP 2 Turn TUNE·FILE to select a desired channel from all the categories or press ∧ or ∨ on SEEK TRACK to select a desired channel in the current category.

### Presetting XM® Satellite Radio channels

Select the desired channel. Touch one of the preset stations (1 - 6) and hold it until you hear a beep.

### Changing the channel category

Touch "◄ Type" or "Type ►" on the screen.

## Scanning XM® Satellite Radio channels

● Scanning channels in the current category

STEP 1 Touch "SCAN" on the screen.
"SCAN" appears on the screen.

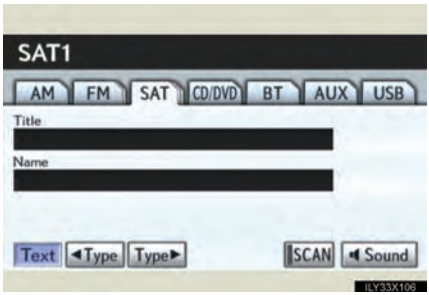
STEP 2 When the desired channel is reached, touch "SCAN" once again.

● Scanning preset channels

STEP 1 Touch "SCAN" on the screen and hold it until you hear a beep.
"P·SCAN" appears on the screen.

STEP 2 When the desired channel is reached, touch "SCAN" once again.

## Displaying the title and artist name




Touch "Text" on the screen.

The screen will display up to 16 characters.

Touch the switch once again to return to the previous screen.

■ **When the 12 volt battery is disconnected**

All preset stations are erased.

■ **Reception sensitivity**

- Maintaining perfect radio reception at all times is difficult due to the continually changing position of the antenna, differences in signal strength and surrounding objects, such as trains, transmitters, etc.
- The radio antenna is mounted inside the rear window. To maintain clear radio reception, do not attach metallic window tinting or other metallic objects to the antenna wire mounted inside the rear window.

■ **Receiving XM® Satellite Radio**

An XM® Satellite Radio is a tuner designed exclusively to receive broadcasts provide under a separate subscription. Availability is limited to the 48 contiguous states and 10 Canadian provinces.

- XM® subscriptions
  For detailed information about XM® Satellite Radio or to subscribe:
  U.S.A.-
  Visit on the web at www.xmradio.com or call 1-877-515-3987.
  Canada-
  Visit on the web at www.xmradio.ca or call 1-877-515-3987.
- Radio ID
  You will need the radio ID when activating XM® service or reporting a problem. Select "CH000" using the 

dial, and the receiver's 8-character ID number will appear.
- Satellite tuner
  The tuner supports only Audio Services (Music and Talk) and the accompanying Text Information of XM® Satellite Radio.

*: Terms and services provided by XM® Satellite Radio are subject to change without notice.

■ **If the satellite radio does not operate normally**

If a problem occurs with the XM® tuner, a message will appear on the screen. Refer to the table below to identify the problem, and take the suggested corrective action.

| | |
|---|---|
| ANTENNA | The XM® antenna is not connected. Check whether the XM® antenna cable is attached securely. |
| | There is a short-circuit in the antenna or the surrounding antenna cable. See a Lexus certified dealer. |
| UNAUTH | You have not subscribed to XM® Satellite Radio. The radio is being updated with the latest encryption code. Contact XM® Satellite Radio for subscription information. When a contract is canceled, you can choose "CH000" and all free-to-air channels. |
| | The premium channel you selected is not authorized. Wait for about 2 seconds until the radio returns to the previous channel or "CH001". If it does not change automatically, select another channel. If you want to listen to the premium channel, contact XM® Satellite Radio. |
| NO SIGNAL | The XM® signal is too weak at the current location. Wait until your vehicle reaches a location with a stronger signal. |
| LOADING | The unit is acquiring audio or program information. Wait until the unit has received the information. |
| OFF AIR | The channel you selected is not broadcasting any programming. Select another channel. |

| | |
|---|---|
| ----- | There is no song/program title or artist name/feature associated with the channel at that time. No action needed. |
| CH UNAVL | The channel you selected is no longer available. Wait for about 2 seconds until the radio returns to the previous channel or "CH001". If it does not change automatically, select another channel. |

Contact the XM® Listener Care Center at 1-877-515-3987.

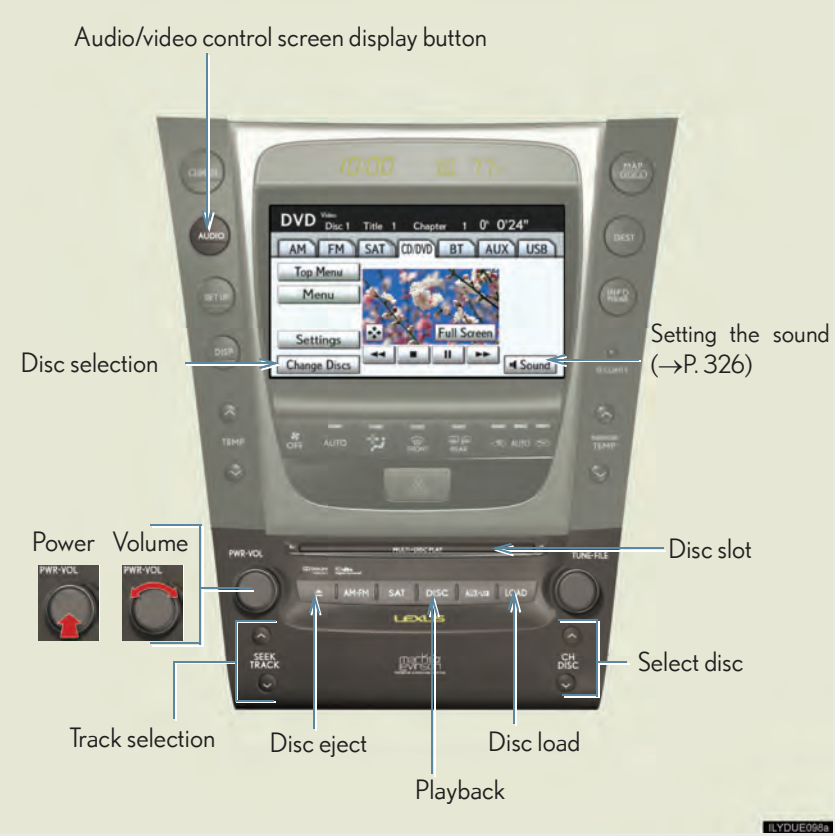
■ **Certifications for the radio tuner**

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by trying one or more of the following:

- Reorienting or relocating the receiving antenna.
- Increasing the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connecting the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consulting the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

# Using the CD/DVD player



## Loading a disc

### Loading a single disc

STEP 1 Press LOAD.

STEP 2 When the indicator changes from flashing amber to green, insert a disc after the CD/DVD player door opens.

### Loading multiple discs

STEP 1 Press and hold LOAD until you hear a beep.

STEP 2 When the indicator changes from flashing amber to green, insert a disc after the CD/DVD player door opens.

STEP 3 After inserting a disc, wait until the indicator changes from flashing amber to green, then insert the next disc after the CD/DVD player door has opened.

Repeat steps 2 and 3 until you have inserted all discs.

To cancel the operation, press the LOAD or DISC / CD button.

## Ejecting a disc

### Ejecting a disc

STEP 1 To select the disc to be ejected, touch the desired disc on the screen or press ∧ or ∨ on 

.

STEP 2 Press ⏏ and remove the disc.

### Ejecting all discs

Press and hold ⏏ until you hear a beep, then remove the discs.

## Selecting a disc

### To select a disc to play

STEP 1 Touch "Change Discs" on the screen.




Touch the desired disc on the screen or press ∧ or ∨ on 

.

### When loading a disc

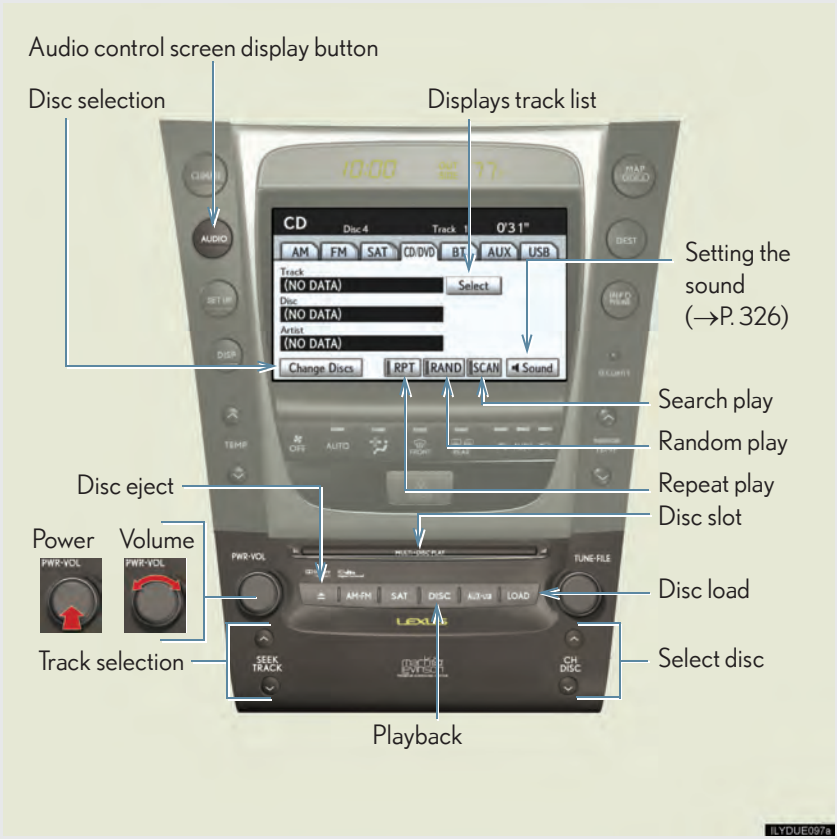
If you do not insert a disc within 15 seconds, loading will be canceled automatically.

### Vehicles with DVD player




This screen appears when the video screen is first displayed after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

# Playing an audio CD

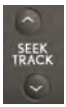


## Loading and ejecting discs

→P. 270

## Selecting, fast forwarding and scanning tracks

### ■ Selecting a track

Press ∧ to move up and ∨ to move down using 

until the desired track number appears on the screen.

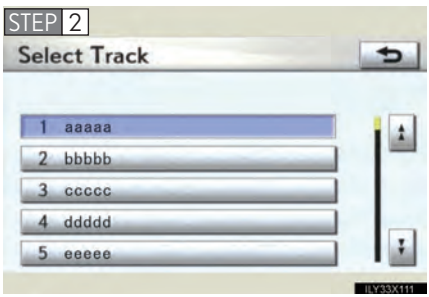
To fast forward or rewind, press and hold ∧ or ∨ on 

.

### ■ Selecting a track from the track list

STEP 1 Touch "Select" on the screen.

STEP 2




Touch the desired track number.

▲▲ or ▼▼: Moves the list in steps of 5

This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

### ■ Scanning a disc

STEP 1 Touch "SCAN" on the screen.

"SCAN" appears on the screen.

The first 10 seconds of each track will be played.

STEP 2 Touch "SCAN" once again when the desired track is reached.

## Searching a disc

### ■ Selecting a disc to play

→P. 271

### ■ Scanning loaded discs

STEP 1 Touch and hold "SCAN" on the screen until "D.SCAN" appears.

The first 10 seconds of the first track on each disc will be played.

STEP 2 Touch "SCAN" once again when the desired disc is reached.

## Random playback

### ■ Current disc

Touch "RAND" on the screen.

Songs are played in random order.

### ■ All discs

Touch and hold "RAND" on the screen until "D.RAND" appears.

Tracks on all loaded discs are played in random order.

## Repeating a track or a disc

### ■ Repeating a track

Touch "RPT" on the screen.

### ■ Repeating a disc

Touch "RPT" on the screen and hold until "D.RPT" appears.

■ **Canceling random, repeat and scan playback**

Touch “RAND”, “RPT” or “SCAN” on the screen once again.

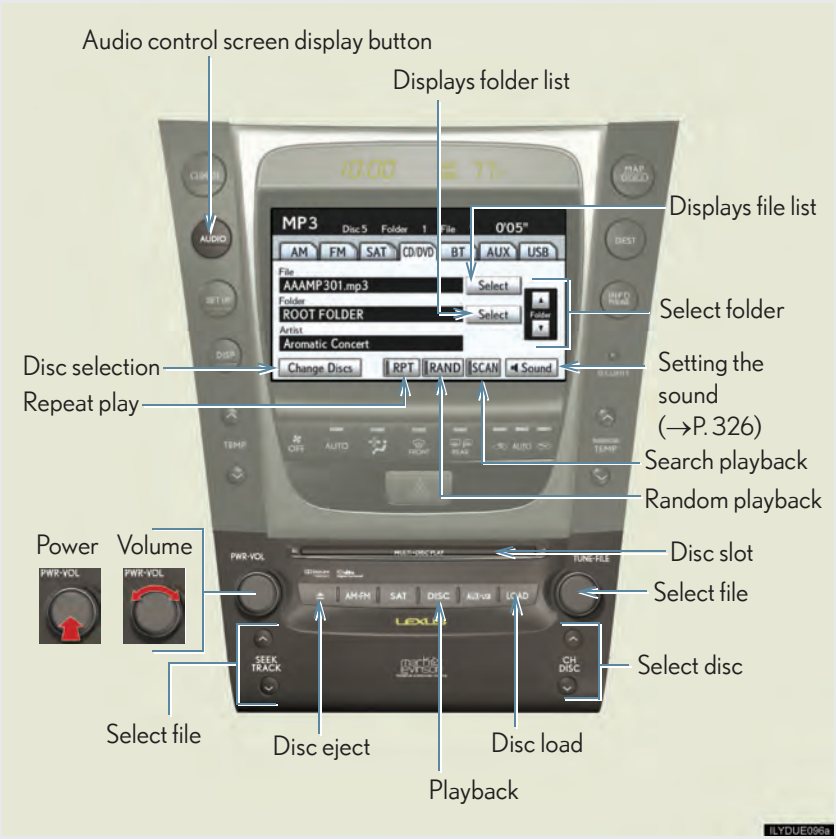
■ **Displaying the title and artist name**

If a CD-TEXT disc is inserted, the titles of the disc and track will be displayed. Up to 32 letters can be displayed.

■ **Error messages**

→P. 297

# Playing MP3 and WMA discs



## Loading and ejecting MP3 and WMA discs

→P. 270

## Selecting MP3 and WMA discs

→P. 271

## Selecting a folder

### ■ Selecting a folder

Touch "Folder ▲" or "▼" on the screen to select the next/previous folder.

### ■ Selecting a folder from the folder list

STEP 1 Touch "Select" for Folder on the screen.

STEP 2




Touch the desired folder number.

▲▲ or ▼▼: Moves the list in steps of 5

This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

### ■ Selecting the desired folder by cueing the first file of each folder

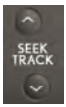
Touch and hold "SCAN" on the screen until "FLD.SCAN" appears.

Touch "SCAN" once again when the desired folder is reached.

## Selecting and scanning files

### Selecting one file at a time

Turn 

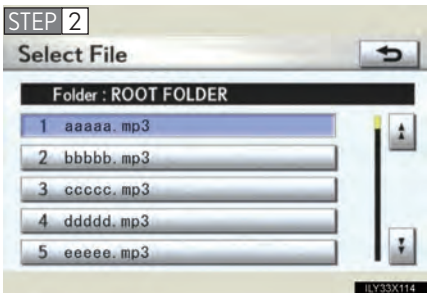
or press ∧ or ∨ on 

to select the desired file.

### Selecting a file from the file list

STEP 1 Touch "Select" for File on the screen.

STEP 2




Touch the desired file number.

▲▲ or ▼▼: Moves the list in steps of 5

This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

### Selecting a desired file by cueing the files in the folder

Touch "SCAN" on the screen.

Touch "SCAN" once again when the desired file is reached.

## Random playback

■ **Playing files from a particular folder in random order**
Touch "RAND" on the screen.

■ **Playing all the files on a disc in random order**
Touch and hold "RAND" on the screen until "FLD.RAND" appears.

## Repeat play

■ **Repeating a file**
Touch "RPT" on the screen.

■ **Repeating all of the files in a folder**
Touch and hold "RPT" on the screen until "FLD.RPT" appears.

---

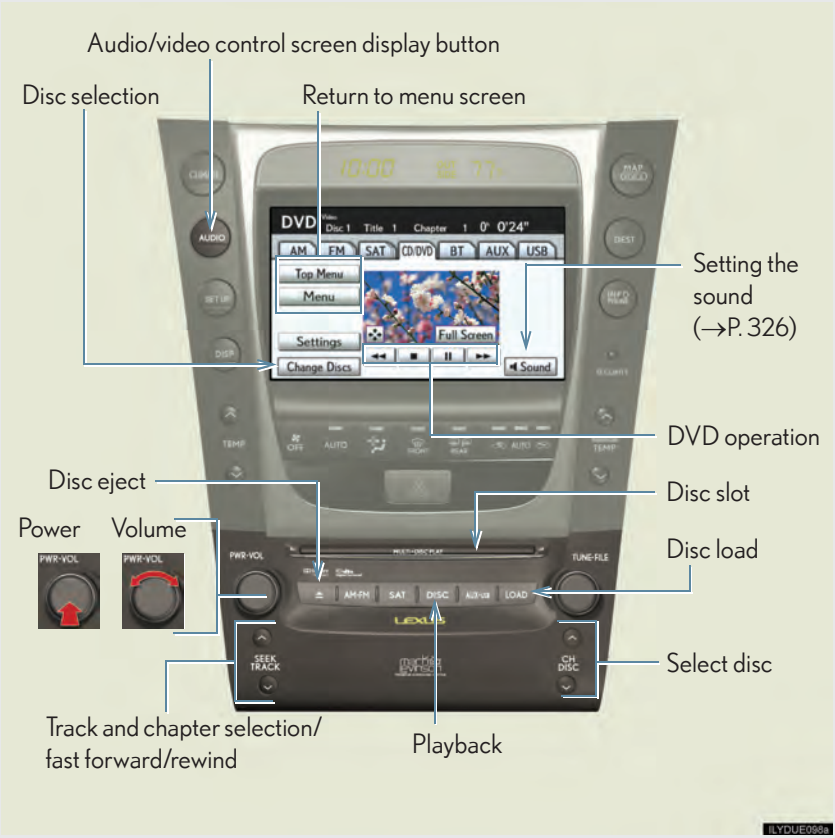
■ **Canceling random, repeat and scan playback**
Touch "RAND", "RPT" or "SCAN" on the screen once again.

■ **Error messages**
→P. 297

# Playing DVD video/audio (with DVD player)

For safety reasons, you can enjoy the visual contents of discs only when the vehicle is completely stopped with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode and the parking brake applied. While you are driving, only audio contents may be played.

When a DVD video disc or DVD audio disc is inserted while driving, the audio contents of the main feature will automatically be played. However, some discs may not be played from the main story.




If ⃠ appears on the screen when you touch an icon, the operation relevant to that control is not permitted.

## Control icon screen

▶ DVD video mode




▶ DVD audio mode




1 2 Menu screen appears

3 Setting screen appears (→P. 282)

4 Selecting a disc (→P. 271)

5 Display menu control key (→P. 283)

6 Vehicle is completely stopped and the parking brake is applied, the video screen returns

7 Rewind

8 Stop

9 Pause
Touch ▶ to play.

10 Fast forward

11 Setting the sound (→P. 326)

## DVD settings

Touch “Settings” on “DVD” screen, the following screen appears.

▶ DVD video mode




▶ DVD audio mode

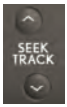



1 Search by title/group number
2 Change audio language/ audio format
3 Change angle
4 Change initial setting
5 Display the predetermined scene and start playing from there
6 Change subtitle language
7 Change screen size
8 Video screen returns
9 Return to previous page
10 Select menu number
11 Go to next page

## Loading, ejecting and selecting discs

→P. 270

## Fast forwarding/rewinding a disc

Touch and hold ▶▶ or ◀◀ on the control icon screen or press and hold ∧ or ∨ on 

until a beep is heard.

## Slow playback

Touch ❚❚ and then touch ▶▶ on the control icon screen. Video is played slowly while you are touching ▶▶.

## Using the DVD menu

STEP 1 Touch "Menu" or "Top Menu" on the control icon screen.

Touch ✥ if the menu control key does not appear on the menu screen.

STEP 2




Enter the menu item using 1 to 4, and touch "Enter".

When you touch the any point on the screen, the controls will disappear.

To display them again, touch the any point on the screen.

↩: Returns to the previous screen

Note that specific items or the operating method differs from one DVD to another. Refer to the manual that comes with the DVD disc. (The above image is an example.)

## Searching for a desired screen

### ■ Searching by title (DVD video mode only)

STEP 1 Touch "Search" on the "Settings" screen.

STEP 2 Input the desired title number and then touch "OK".

: Deletes the last input number

: Returns to the previous screen

### ■ Searching by group (DVD audio mode)

STEP 1 Touch "Search" on the "Settings" screen.

STEP 2 Input the group number and then touch "OK".

: Deletes the last input number

: Returns to the previous screen

### ■ Playing a bonus group (DVD audio mode only, if the DVD has bonus options)

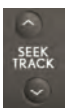
STEP 1 Touch "Search" on the "Settings" screen.

STEP 2 Input the desired bonus group number and touch "OK".

: Deletes the number

: Returns to the previous screen

### ■ Searching by chapter/track

Press ∧ or ∨ on 

to select a chapter/track.

### ■ Selecting a menu number (DVD audio mode only)

STEP 1 Touch "Select Number" on the "Settings" screen.

STEP 2 Input the desired track number and touch "OK".

: Deletes the number

: Returns to the previous screen

## Changing the subtitle language

STEP 1 Touch "Subtitle" on the "Settings" screen.

STEP 2




Each time you touch the "Change", the next available language is selected.

"Hide": Hides the subtitles

: Returns to the previous screen

## Changing the audio language (DVD video only)

STEP 1 Touch "Audio" on the "Settings" screen.

STEP 2



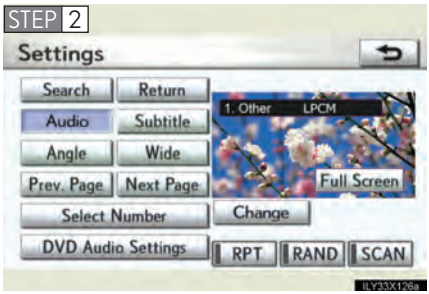

Each time you touch the "Change", the next available language is selected.

: Returns to the previous screen

## Changing the audio format (DVD audio only)

STEP 1 Touch "Audio" on the "Settings" screen.

STEP 2



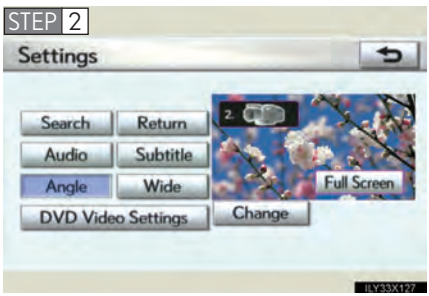

Each time you touch the "Change", the next available audio format is selected.

: Returns to the previous screen

## Changing the angle (if the angle option is available)

STEP 1 Touch "Angle" on the "Settings" screen.

STEP 2



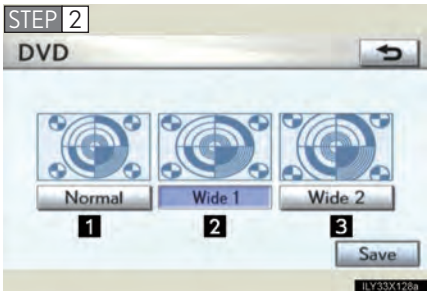

Each time you touch the "Change", the next available angle is selected.

: Returns to the previous screen

## Changing screen size

STEP 1 Touch “Wide” on the “Settings” screen.

STEP 2




Touch the desired display. After setting, touch “Save”.

1 Displays a 3 : 4 screen, with either side in black

2 Widens the 3 : 4 screen horizontally to fill the screen

3 Widens the 3 : 4 screen vertically and horizontally, in the same ratio, to fill the screen

: Returns to the previous screen

## Changing the page (DVD audio only)

Touch “Prev. Page” or “Next Page” on the “Settings” screen to change the page.

## Initial DVD setup

The initial settings can be changed.

### ■ Displaying "Setup Menu" screen

STEP 1 Touch "DVD Video Settings" or "DVD Audio Settings" on the "Settings" screen.

STEP 2 Touch the setting to be changed.

▶ Page 1

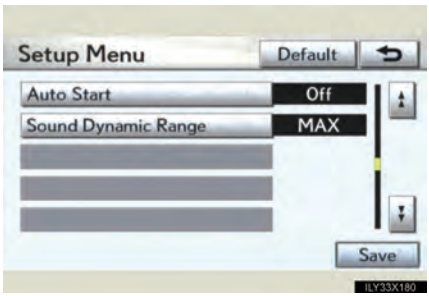



After you change the settings, touch "Save".

"Default": Restores default settings

: Returns to the previous screen

▶ Page 2



■ **Setting audio language (DVD video only)**

STEP 1 Touch "Audio Language".

STEP 2 Select the desired language.

If you cannot find the desired language, touch "Other" and input the desired language code. (→P. 291)

■ **Setting subtitle language**

STEP 1 Touch "Subtitle Language".

STEP 2 Select the desired language.

If you cannot find the desired language, touch "Other" and input the desired language code. (→P. 291)

■ **Setting menu language**

STEP 1 Touch "DVD Language".

STEP 2 Select the desired language.

If you cannot find the desired language, touch "Other" and input the desired language code. (→P. 291)

■ **Setting angle mark**

If the DVD has angle options, you can turn the angle mark on or off.

STEP 1 Touch "Angle Mark".

STEP 2 Select "On" or "Off".

■ **Parental lock (DVD video only)**

STEP 1 Touch "Parental Lock".

STEP 2 Input the 4-digit personal code and then touch "OK".

If you enter wrong numbers, touch ← to delete the numbers.

STEP 3 Select a parental level (1 - 8). (→P. 300)

■ **Setting the auto start**

Discs that are inserted while the vehicle is in motion will automatically start playing.

STEP 1 Touch "Auto Start".

STEP 2 Select "On" or "Off".

Certain discs may not play if you set to "On".

■ **Setting sound dynamic range (DVD video only)**

The difference between the lowest volume and the highest volume can be adjusted.

STEP 1 Touch "Sound Dynamic Range".

STEP 2 Select the desired level.

■ **Entering a language code**

If you touch "Other" on the "Select Audio Language" screen, "Select Subtitle Language" screen or "Select DVD Language" screen, you can select a language by entering the 4-digit language code if that language is available.

Input the 4-digit language code and then touch "OK".

←: Deletes the last input digit

↩: Returns to the previous screen

● Language codes

| Code | Language | Code | Language | Code | Language |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0514 | English | 0207 | Bulgarian | 0712 | Galician |
| 0618 | French | 0208 | Bihari | 0714 | Guarani |
| 0405 | German | 0209 | Bislama | 0721 | Gujarati |
| 0920 | Italian | 0214 | Bengali | 0801 | Hausa |
| 0519 | Spanish | 0215 | Tibetan | 0809 | Hindi |
| 2608 | Chinese | 0218 | Breton | 0818 | Croatian |
| 1412 | Dutch | 0301 | Catalan | 0821 | Hungarian |
| 1620 | Portuguese | 0315 | Corsican | 0825 | Armenian |
| 1922 | Swedish | 0319 | Czech | 0901 | Interlingua |
| 1821 | Russian | 0325 | Welsh | 0905 | Interlingue |
| 1115 | Korean | 0401 | Danish | 0911 | Inupiak |
| 0512 | Greek | 0426 | Bhutani | 0914 | Indonesian |
| 0101 | Afar | 0515 | Esperanto | 0919 | Icelandic |
| 0102 | Abkhazian | 0520 | Estonian | 0923 | Hebrew |
| 0106 | Afrikaans | 0521 | Basque | 1001 | Japanese |
| 0113 | Amharic | 0601 | Persian | 1009 | Yiddish |
| 0118 | Arabic | 0609 | Finnish | 1023 | Javanese |
| 0119 | Assamese | 0610 | Fiji | 1101 | Georgian |
| 0125 | Aymara | 0615 | Faroese | 1111 | Kazakh |
| 0126 | Azerbaijani | 0625 | Frisian | 1112 | Greenlandic |
| 0201 | Bashkir | 0701 | Irish | 1113 | Cambodian |
| 0205 | Byelorussian | 0704 | Scots-Gaelic | 1114 | Kannada |

| Code | Language | Code | Language | Code | Language |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1119 | Kashmiri | 1415 | Norwegian | 1914 | Shona |
| 1121 | Kurdish | 1503 | Occitan | 1915 | Somali |
| 1125 | Kirghiz | 1513 | (Afan) Oromo | 1917 | Albanian |
| 1201 | Latin | 1518 | Oriya | 1918 | Serbian |
| 1214 | Lingala | 1601 | Panjabi | 1919 | Siswati |
| 1215 | Laothian | 1612 | Polish | 1920 | Sesotho |
| 1220 | Lithuanian | 1619 | Pashto, Pushto | 1921 | Sundanese |
| 1222 | Latvian | 1721 | Quechua | 1923 | Swahili |
| 1307 | Malagasy | 1813 | Rhaeto-Romance | 2001 | Tamil |
| 1309 | Maori | 1814 | Kirundi | 2005 | Telugu |
| 1311 | Macedonian | 1815 | Romanian | 2007 | Tajik |
| 1312 | Malayalam | 1823 | Kinyarwanda | 2008 | Thai |
| 1314 | Mongolian | 1901 | Sanskrit | 2009 | Tigrinya |
| 1315 | Moldavian | 1904 | Sindhi | 2011 | Turkmen |
| 1318 | Marathi | 1907 | Sangho | 2012 | Tagalog |
| 1319 | Malay | 1908 | Serbo-Croatian | 2014 | Setswana |
| 1320 | Maltese | 1909 | Sinhalese | 2015 | Tonga |
| 1325 | Burmese | 1911 | Slovak | 2018 | Turkish |
| 1401 | Nauru | 1912 | Slovenian | 2019 | Tsonga |
| 1405 | Nepali | 1913 | Samoan | 2020 | Tatar |

| Code | Language | Code | Language | Code | Language |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2023 | Twi | 2209 | Vietnamese | 2515 | Yoruba |
| 2111 | Ukrainian | 2215 | Volapük | 2621 | Zulu |
| 2118 | Urdu | 2315 | Wolof | | |
| 2126 | Uzbek | 2408 | Xhosa | | |

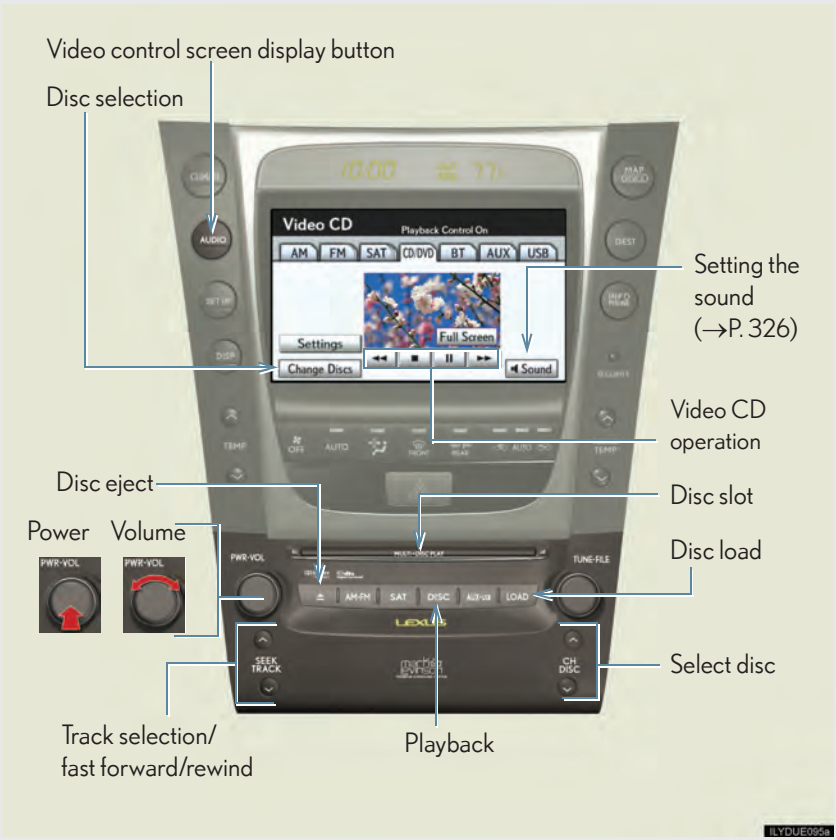
### Error messages

If "Region Code Error" is displayed, check that the region code printed on the DVD matches the player's region code.

If a different message is displayed: →P. 297

# Playing a video CD (with DVD player)

**For safety reasons, you can enjoy the visual contents of discs only when the vehicle is completely stopped with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode and the parking brake applied. While you are driving, only audio contents may be played.**



### Settings screen

Touch "Settings" on the "Video CD" screen, the following screen appears.




1 Change sound multiplex
2 Return to previous page
3 Search by track number (→P. 284)
4 Display the predetermined scene and start playing from there.
5 Change screen size
6 Go to next page

If ⃠ appears on the screen when you touch an icon, the operation relevant to that control is not permitted.

## Loading, ejecting and selecting discs

→P. 270

## Fast forwarding/rewinding a video CD

Touch and hold ▶▶ or ◀◀ on the control icon screen or press and hold ∧ or ∨ on SEEK TRACK until a beep is heard.

## Slow playback

Touch ❚❚ and then touch ▶▶ on the control icon screen. Video is played slowly while you are touching ▶▶.

## Using the video CD menu

Touch “Return” on the “Settings” screen.

Refer to the manual that comes with the video CD for specific menu items.

## Changing the sound-multiplex mode

Touch “Main/Sub” on the “Settings” screen. The mode cycles through each time the switch is touched.

“Main/Sub” → “Main” → “Sub”



## Changing the page

▶ Disc menu displaying
Touch “Prev. Page” or “Next Page” to change the previous/next page.

▶ While playing the video
Touch “Prev. Page” or “Next Page” to change the previous/next track.

## Selecting a desired screen

→P. 284

---

■ Error messages

→P. 297

## Error messages

Refer to the following table and take the appropriate measures. If the problem is not rectified, take the vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

| Message | Cause | Correction Procedures |
|---|---|---|
| No CD<br>or<br>No disc | There is no disc in the CD or DVD changer | Insert a disc |
| Check CD X<br>or<br>Check disc X | • The disc X is dirty or damaged<br>• The disc X is inserted upside down<br>• The disc X is not playable with the player | • Clean the disc<br>• Insert the disc correctly<br>• Confirm the disc is playable with the player |
| CD Error<br>or<br>DVD Error | • There is a malfunction within the system<br>• Operation is stopped due to a high temperature inside the player | • Eject the disc<br>• Eject the disc and allow the player to cool down |
| NO MUSIC FILE | This indicates that no playable data is included in the disc | Eject the disc |

## DVD video discs

- The DVD player conforms to NTSC color TV formats.
- Region code: Some DVD video discs have a region code indicating the region in which you can use the DVD video disc. If the DVD video disc is not labeled as "ALL" or "1", you cannot use it on this DVD player. If you attempt to play an inappropriate DVD video disc on this player, "Region Code Error" appears on the screen. Even if the DVD video disc does not have a region code, you may not be able to use it.
- The DVD player supports multi-channel sound output.

## Symbols shown on DVD video discs

| Mark | Meaning |
|---|---|
|  | Indicates NTSC format. |
|  | Indicates the number of audio tracks. |
|  | Indicates the number of language subtitles. |
|  | Indicates the number of angles. |
|  | Indicates the screen display ratios available.<br>Wide screen: 16:9<br>Standard: 4:3 |
|  | Indicates the disc's region code.<br>ALL: In all countries<br>Number: Region code |

### Discs that can be used

Discs with the marks shown below can be used.
Playback may not be possible depending on recording format or disc features, or due to scratches, dirt or deterioration.

▶ Without DVD player




▶ With DVD player




Discs with copy-protection features may not play correctly.

### CD/DVD player protection feature

To protect the internal components, playback is automatically stopped when a problem is detected.

### If discs are left inside the CD/DVD player or in the ejected position for extended periods

Discs may be damaged and may not play properly.

### Lens cleaners

Do not use lens cleaners. Doing so may damage the CD/DVD player.

## DVD video disc information

- DVD video discs
  Digital Versatile Disc that holds video. DVD video discs have adopted "MPEG2", one of the world standards of digital compression technologies. The picture data is compressed by 1/40 on average and stored. Variable rate encoding technology in which the volume of data assigned to the picture is changed depending on the picture format has also been adopted. Audio data is stored using PCM and Dolby digital, which enables higher quality of sound. Furthermore, multi-angle and multi-language features will also help you enjoy the more advanced technology of DVD video.
- Viewer restrictions
  This feature limits what can be viewed in conformity with the level of restrictions of the country. The level of restrictions varies depending on the DVD video disc. Some DVD video discs cannot be played at all, or violent scenes are skipped or replaced with other scenes.

  Level 1: DVD video discs for children can be played.

  Level 2-7: DVD video discs for children and G-rated movies can be played.

  Level 8: All types of DVD video discs can be played.
- Multi-angle option
  You can enjoy the same scene from different angles.
- Multi-language option
  You can select the subtitle and audio languages.
- Region codes
  The region codes are found on DVD players and DVD discs. If a DVD video disc does not have the same region code as the DVD player, you cannot play the disc on that DVD player. (→P. 298)

● Audio
This DVD player can play linear PCM, Dolby Digital and MPEG audio format DVD. Other decoded types cannot be played.

● Title and chapter
Video and audio programs stored in DVD video discs are divided into parts by title and chapter.

Title: The largest unit of the video and audio programs stored on DVD video discs. Usually, one movie, one album, or one audio program is assigned as a title.

Chapter: A title is comprised of one or more chapters.

■ **Sound**

● Dolby Digital
Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories.
"Dolby", "Pro Logic", and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories. Confidential unpublished works.
©1992-1997 Dolby Laboratories. All rights reserved.
This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by method claims of certain U. S. patents and other intellectual property rights owned by Macrovision Corporation and other rights owners. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision Corporation, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision Corporation.
Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

● DTS
"DTS" and "DTS Digital Surround" are registered trademarks of Digital Theater System, Inc.

■ **MP3 and WMA files**

MP3 (MPEG Audio LAYER 3) is a standard audio compression format.

Files can be compressed to approximately 1/10 of their original size by using MP3 compression.

WMA (Windows Media™ Audio) is a Microsoft audio compression format.

This format compresses audio data to a size smaller than that of the MP3 format.

There is a limit to the MP3 and WMA file standards and to the media/formats recorded by them that can be used.

● MP3 file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  MP3 (MPEG1 LAYER3, MPEG2 LSF LAYER3)
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  MPEG1 LAYER3: 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
  MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 16, 22.05, 24 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (compatible with VBR)
  MPEG1 LAYER3: 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 160, 192, 224, 256, 320 (kbps)
- MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 144, 160 (kbps)
- Compatible channel modes: stereo, joint stereo, dual channel and monaural

● WMA file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  WMA Ver. 7, 8, 9
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (only compatible with 2-channel playback)
  Ver. 7, 8: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192 (kbps)
  Ver. 9: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192, 256, 320 (kbps)

● Compatible media

Media that can be used for MP3 and WMA playback are CD-Rs and CD-RWs.

Playback in some instances may not be possible, depending on the status of the CD-R or CD-RW. Playback may not be possible or the audio may jump if the disc is scratched or marked with fingerprints.

● Compatible disc formats

The following disc formats can be used.

- Disc formats: CD-ROM Mode 1 and Mode 2
  CD-ROM XA Mode 2, Form 1 and Form 2
- File formats: ISO9660 level 1, level 2, (Romeo, Joliet)
  MP3 and WMA files written in any format other than those listed above may not play correctly, and their file names and folder names may not be displayed correctly.

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows:

- Maximum directory hierarchy: 8 levels
- Maximum length of folder names/file names: 32 characters
- Maximum number of folders: 192 (including the root)
- Maximum number of files per disc: 255

● File names

The only files that can be recognized as MP3/WMA and played are those with the extension .mp3 or .wma.

● Discs containing multi-session recordings

As the audio system is compatible with multi-sessions, it is possible to play discs that contain MP3 and WMA files. However, only the first session can be played.

● ID3 and WMA tags

ID3 tags can be added to MP3 files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name, etc.

The system is compatible with ID3 Ver. 1.0, 1.1, and Ver. 2.2, 2.3 ID3 tags. (The number of characters is based on ID3 Ver. 1.0 and 1.1.)

WMA tags can be added to WMA files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name in the same way as with ID3 tags.

● MP3 and WMA playback

When a disc containing MP3 or WMA files is inserted, all files on the disc are first checked. Once the file check is finished, the first MP3 or WMA file is played. To make the file check finish more quickly, we recommend you do not write in any files other than MP3 or WMA files or create any unnecessary folders.

Discs that contain a mixture of music data and MP3 or WMA format data cannot be played.

● Extensions

If the file extensions .mp3 and .wma are used for files other than MP3 and WMA files, they will be mistakenly recognized and played as MP3 and WMA files. This may result in large amounts of interference and damage to the speakers.

● Playback

- To play MP3 files with steady sound quality, we recommend a fixed bit rate of 128 kbps and a sampling frequency of 44.1 kHz.
- CD-R or CD-RW playback may not be possible in some instances, depending on the characteristics of the disc.
- There is a wide variety of freeware and other encoding software for MP3 and WMA files on the market, and depending on the status of the encoding and the file format, poor sound quality or noise at the start of playback may result. In some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- When files other than MP3 or WMA files are recorded on a disc, it may take more time to recognize the disc and in some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Media are the registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and other countries.

### CD-R and CD-RW discs

- CD-R/CD-RW discs that have not been subject to the "finalizing process" (a process that allows discs to be played on a conventional CD player) cannot be played.
- It may not be possible to play CD-R/CD-RW discs recorded on a music CD recorder or a personal computer because of disc characteristics, scratches or dirt on the disc, or dirt, condensation, etc. on the lens of the unit.
- It may not be possible to play discs recorded on a personal computer depending on the application settings and the environment. Record with the correct format. (For details, contact the appropriate application manufacturers of the applications.)
- CD-R/CD-RW discs may be damaged by direct exposure to sunlight, high temperatures or other storage conditions. The unit may be unable to play damaged discs.
- If you insert a CD-RW disc into the MP3/WMA player, playback will begin more slowly than with a conventional CD or CD-R disc.
- Recordings on CD-R/CD-RW cannot be played using the DDCD (Double Density CD) system.

### ⚠ CAUTION

**DVD video precaution**

Conversational speech on some DVDs is recorded at a low volume to emphasize the impact of sound effects. If you adjust the volume assuming that the conversations represent the maximum volume level that the DVD will play, you may be startled by louder sound effects or when you change to a different audio source.

Loud sounds may have a significant impact on the human body or pose a driving hazard. Keep this in mind when you adjust the volume.

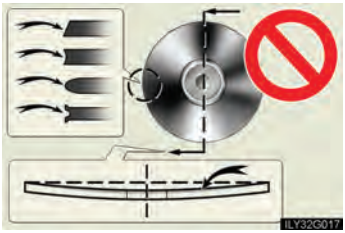
## ⚠ NOTICE

### Discs and adapters that cannot be used

Do not use the following types of discs, 3 in. (8 cm) disc adapters or Dual Disc. Doing so may damage the player and render the disc insert/eject function unusable.




- Discs that have a diameter that is not 4.7 in. (12 cm).




- Low-quality and deformed discs.




- Discs with a transparent or translucent recording area.




- Discs that have tape, stickers or CD-R labels attached to them, or that have the label peeled off.

## NOTICE

### Player precautions

Failure to follow the precautions below may result in damage to the discs or the player itself.

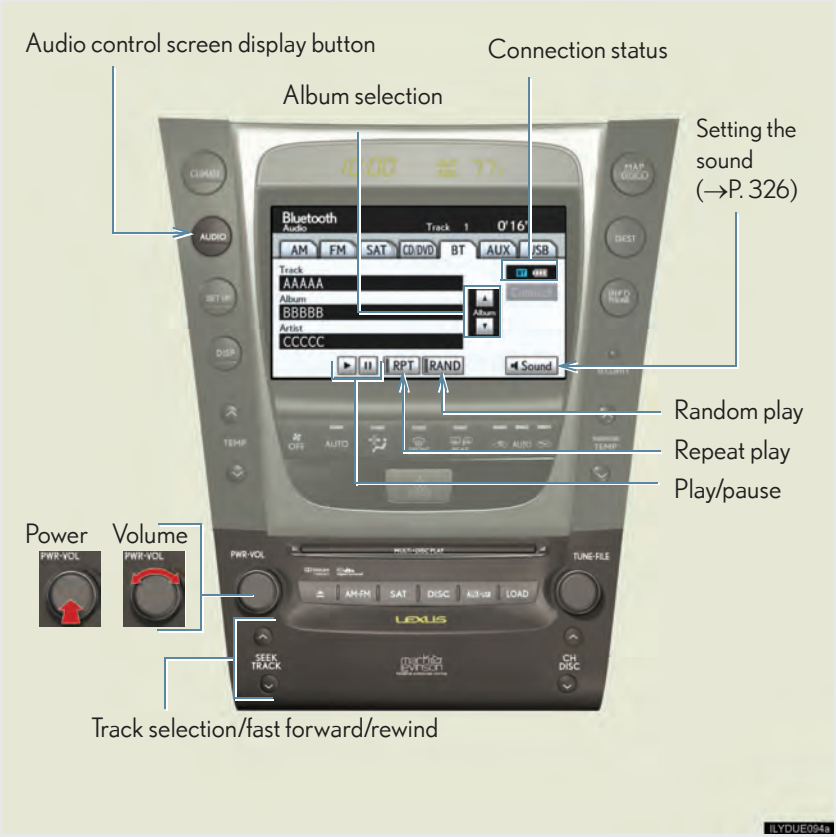
- Do not insert anything other than discs into the disc slot.
- Do not apply oil to the player.
- Store discs away from direct sunlight.
- Never try to disassemble any part of the player.



- Do not insert more than one disc at a time.

# Listening to Bluetooth® audio

The Bluetooth® audio system enables users to enjoy music played on a portable player from the vehicle speaker via wireless communication.
This audio system supports Bluetooth®, a wireless data system capable of playing portable audio music without cables. If your portable player does not support Bluetooth®, the Bluetooth® audio system will not function.



## Status display

You can check such indicators as signal strength and battery charge on the screen.




1 Connection status
2 Battery charge

| Indicators | Conditions |
|---|---|
| Connection status | Blue: Good<br>Yellow: Bad<br>: Not connected |
| Battery charge | Full ⟷ Empty |

## Connecting Bluetooth® audio player

To use the Bluetooth® audio system, you need to enter your portable player into the system. Once registered, you can enjoy your music on the vehicle's audio system. (→P. 243)

For the operation procedure for the portable player, consult your player's accompanying instruction manual.

### When the connection method is set to "From Vehicle"

▶ When auto connection is on

When the portable player is on standby for the connection, it will be automatically connected whenever the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in either ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

▶ When auto connection is off

Manually connect the portable player in accordance with the following procedure.




Touch "Connect".

A message is shown if connection has been successful.

If connection fails, a message will be displayed and connection will be re-attempted.

### When the connection method is set to "From Portable Player"

Operate the portable player and connect it to the Bluetooth® audio system.




Touch "Connect".

A message is shown if connection has been successful.

If connection fails, a message will be displayed and connection will be re-attempted.

## Playing Bluetooth® audio

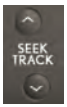



Touch ▶ or ❚❚ to play/pause.

Some titles may not be displayed depending on the type of portable player.

## Selecting a track/album

### Selecting a track

Press ∧ to move up and ∨ to move down using 

until the desired track number appears on the screen.

To fast forward or rewind, press and hold ∧ or ∨ on 

.

### Selecting an album




Touch "Album ▲" or "▼" to select the desired album.

## Random playback

Touch "RAND" to play the tracks on the album in random order.

To cancel the random playback, touch again.

## Repeating a track

Touch "RPT" to repeat a track.

To cancel the repeat playback, touch again.

■ **When using the Bluetooth® audio system**

- In the following conditions, the system may not function.
  - The portable player is turned off
  - The portable player is not connected
  - The portable player battery is low
- There may be a delay if phone connection is carried out during Bluetooth® audio play.
- Depending on the type of portable player that is connected to the system, operation may differ slightly and certain functions may not be available.

■ **Bluetooth® antenna**

The antenna is built into the instrument panel. If the portable player is behind the seat or in the glove box or console box, or is touching or covered by metal objects, connection status may deteriorate.

■ **Battery charge/signal status**

This display may not correspond exactly with the portable player, and this system does not have a charging function.

■ **About Bluetooth®**




Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

■ **Compatible models**

Portable players must correspond to the following specifications:

- Bluetooth® specification
  Ver. 1.1 or higher
  (Recommended: Ver. 2.0+EDR or higher)
- Profile
  - A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile) Ver. 1.0 or higher
  - AVRCP (Audio/Video Remote Control Profile) Ver. 1.0 or higher
    (Recommended: Ver. 1.3 or higher)

However, please note that some functions may be limited depending on the type of portable player.

Please go to the website at http://www.lexus.com/ to find approved portable players for this system.

■ **Certification**

→P. 336

■ **Reconnecting the portable player**

If the portable player is disconnected with a poor reception when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the system automatically reconnects the portable player.

If you have switched off the portable player yourself, follow the instructions below to reconnect:

- Select the portable player again
- Enter the portable player

■ **When transferring ownership of your vehicle**

Be sure to remove the registered portable player from the system.

**CAUTION**

**While driving**

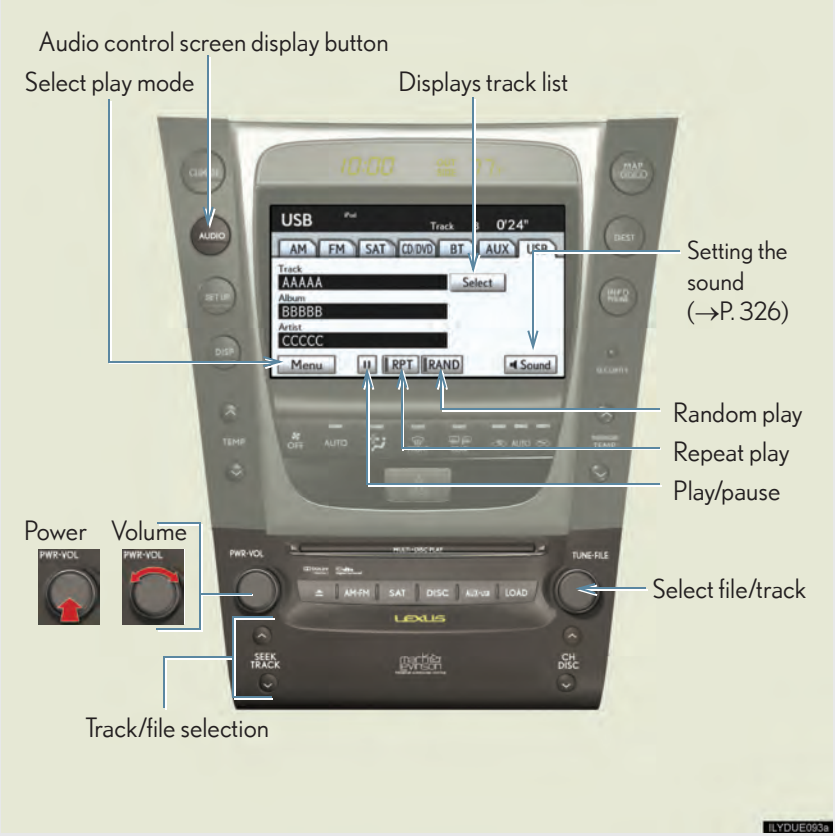
Do not use the portable player or connect the Bluetooth® system.

**NOTICE**

**When leaving the vehicle**

Do not leave your portable player in the vehicle. The inside of the vehicle may become hot, causing damage to the portable player.

**Connecting a USB memory or iPod® enables you to enjoy music from the vehicle speakers.**




The above illustration shows an iPod® screen.

## Connecting the USB memory/iPod®




Open the cover and connect the player.

## Playing an iPod®

### ■ Play/pause

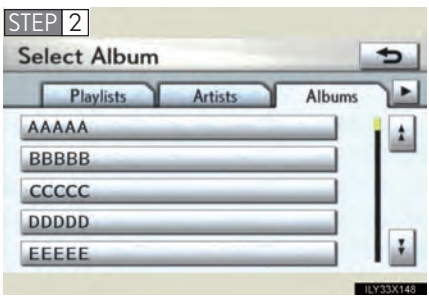



Touch ▶ or ❚❚ to play/pause.

### ■ Selecting a play mode

STEP 1 Touch "Menu" on the "USB" screen.

STEP 2




Select the desired play mode.

## Selecting a folder (USB memory only)

### ■ Selecting a folder

Touch "Folder▲" or "▼" on the screen to select the next/previous folder.

### ■ Selecting a folder from the list

STEP 1 Touch "Select" for Folder on the screen.

STEP 2




Touch the desired folder number.

▲▲ or ▼▼: Moves the list in steps of 5

This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

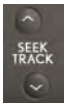
### ■ Selecting the desired folder by cueing the first file of each folder (USB memory only)

Touch and hold "SCAN" on the screen until "FLD.SCAN" appears. Touch "SCAN" once again when the desired folder is reached.

## Selecting a file/track

### Selecting one file/track at a time

Turn 

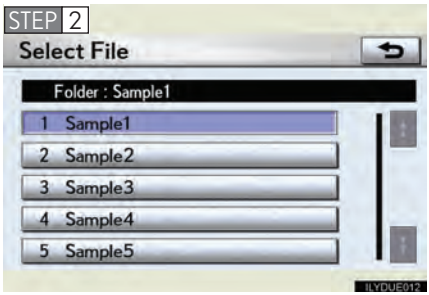
or press ∧ or ∨ on 

to select the desired file/track.

### Selecting a file/track from the list

STEP 1 Touch "Select" for File/Track.

STEP 2




Touch the desired file/track number.

▲▲ or ▼▼: Moves the list in steps of 5

This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

### Selecting the desired file by cueing the files in the folder (USB memory only)

Touch "SCAN" on the screen.
Touch "SCAN" once again when the desired file is reached.

## Random playback

### Playing files/tracks from a particular folder in random order

Touch "RAND" on the screen.

### Playing the all files/tracks in random order

Touch and hold "RAND" on the screen until "FLD.RAND" appears.

## Repeat play

### ■ Repeating a file/track

Touch “RPT” on the screen.

### ■ Repeating a all of the files in a folder (USB memory only)

Touch and hold “RPT” on the screen until “FLD.RPT” appears.

---

**■ Canceling random and repeat playback**

Touch “RAND” or “RPT” on the screen once again.

**■ About iPod®**

- “Made for iPod” means that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards.
- Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

**■ iPod® functions**

- When an iPod® is connected and the audio source is changed to iPod® mode, the iPod® will resume play from the same point in which it was last used.
- Depending on the iPod® that is connected to the system, certain functions may not be available. Disconnecting the device and reconnecting it once again may resolve some malfunctions.

**■ USB memory functions**

Depending on the USB memory that is connected to the system, certain functions may not be available. Disconnecting the device and reconnecting it once again may resolve some malfunctions.

### iPod® problems

To resolve most problems encountered when using your iPod®, disconnect your iPod® from the vehicle iPod® connection and reset it. For instructions on how to reset your iPod®, refer to your iPod® Owner's Manual.

### Error messages for iPod®

"ERROR": This indicates a problem in the iPod® or its connection.

"NO MUSIC": This indicates that there is no music data in the iPod®.

"EMPTY": This indicates that an empty playlist is selected.

"UPDATE": This indicates that the version of the iPod® is not compatible. Upgrade your iPod® software to the latest version.

### Error messages for USB memory

"ERROR": This indicates a problem in the USB memory or its connection.

"NO MUSIC": This indicates that no MP3/WMA files are included in the USB memory.

### Compatible models for iPod®

- iPod® 5th generation Ver. 1.2 or later
- iPod nano® 3rd generation Ver. 1.0 or later
- iPod nano® 2nd generation Ver. 1.1.2 or later
- iPod nano® Ver. 1.3 or later
- iPod touch® Ver. 1.1 or later
- iPod classic® Ver. 1.0 or later

iPhone™, iPod® mini, iPod shuffle®, iPod® photo and 4th generation and earlier models of iPod® are not compatible with this system.

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows:

- Maximum number of lists in device: 9999
- Maximum number of songs in device: 65535
- Maximum number of songs per list: 65535

■ USB memory

● Compatible devices
USB memory that can be used for MP3 and WMA playback.

● Compatible device formats
The following device formats can be used:

- USB communication formats: USB2.0 FS (12 mbps)
- File formats: FAT16/32 (Windows)
- Correspondence class: Mass storage class

MP3 and WMA files written in any format other than those listed above may not play correctly, and their file names and folder names may not be displayed correctly.

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows:

- Maximum directory hierarchy: 8 levels
- Maximum number of folders in a device: 999 (including the root)
- Maximum number of files in a device: 65025
- Maximum number of files per folder: 255

● MP3 and WMA files
MP3 (MPEG Audio LAYER 3) is a standard audio compression format.
Files can be compressed to approximately 1/10 of their original size using MP3 compression.
WMA (Windows Media® Audio) is a Microsoft audio compression format.
This format compresses audio data to a size smaller than that of the MP3 format.
There is a limit to the MP3 and WMA file standards that can be used and to the media/formats on which the files are recorded.

● MP3 file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  MP3 (MPEG1 AUDIO LAYERII, III, MPEG2 AUDIO LAYERII, III, MPEG2.5)
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  MPEG1 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
  MPEG2 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 16, 22.05, 24 (kHz)
  MPEG2.5: 8, 11.025, 12 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (compatible with VBR)
  MPEG1 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 32-320 (kbps)
  MPEG2 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 32-160 (kbps)
  MPEG2.5: 32-160 (kbps)
- Compatible channel modes: stereo, joint stereo, dual channel and monaural

● WMA file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  WMA Ver. 9
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  HIGH PROFILE 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates
  HIGH PROFILE 32-320 (kbps, VBR)

● File names
The only files that can be recognized as MP3/WMA and played are those with the extension .mp3 or .wma.

● ID3 and WMA tags
ID3 tags can be added to MP3 files, making it possible to record the track title, artist name, etc.
The system is compatible with ID3 Ver. 1.0, 1.1, and Ver. 2.2, 2.3, 2.4 ID3 tags. (The number of characters is based on ID3 Ver. 1.0 and 1.1.)
WMA tags can be added to WMA files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name in the same way as with ID3 tags.

● MP3 and WMA playback

- When a device containing MP3 or WMA files is connected, all files in the USB memory device are checked. Once the file check is finished, the first MP3 or WMA file is played. To make the file check finish more quickly, we recommend that you do not include any files other than MP3 or WMA files or create any unnecessary folders.
- When the USB device is connected and the audio source is changed to USB memory mode, the USB device will start playing the first file in the first folder. If the same device is removed and reinserted (and the contents have not been changed), the USB device will resume play from the same point in which it was last used.

● Extensions

If the file extensions .mp3 and .wma are used for files other than MP3 and WMA files, they will be mistakenly recognized and played as MP3 and WMA files. This may result in large amounts of interference and damage to the speakers.

● Playback

- To play MP3 files with steady sound quality, we recommend a fixed bit rate of at least 128 kbps and a sampling frequency of 44.1 kHz.
- There is a wide variety of freeware and other encoding software for MP3 and WMA files on the market, and depending on the status of the encoding and the file format, poor sound quality or noise at the start of playback may result. In some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Media are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and other countries.

**CAUTION**

**While driving**

Do not connect an iPod® or USB memory or operate the controls.

**NOTICE**

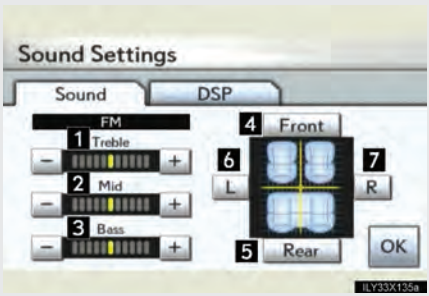
**To prevent damage to the player or its terminal**

- Do not leave your portable player in the vehicle. The temperature inside of the vehicle may become high, resulting in damage to the player.
- Do not push down on or apply unnecessary pressure to the player while it is connected.
- Do not insert foreign objects into the port.




Touch "Sound" to adjust the sound settings.

▶ "Sound" tab

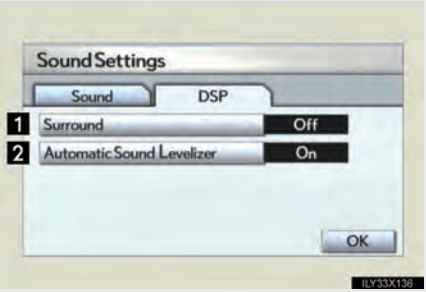



1 2 3 Touch "-" or "+" to adjust the treble, mid or bass to a level between -5 to 5.

4 5 Touch "Front" or "Rear" to adjust the front/rear audio balance to a level between F7 and R7.

6 7 Touch "L" or "R" to adjust the left/right audio balance to a level between L7 and R7.

▶ "DSP" tab




1 Surround on/off

2 Automatic Sound Levelizer (ASL) on/off

■ **The sound quality level is adjusted individually**

The treble, mid and bass levels can be adjusted for the each audio mode separately.

■ **About Automatic Sound Levelizer (ASL)**

ASL automatically adjusts the volume and tone quality according to the vehicle speed, wind noise or other noise.

# Using the AUX port

**This port can be used to connect a portable audio device and listen to it using the vehicle's speakers.**




Connect the portable audio device.

STEP 2 Press AUX·USB or touch "AUX" tab on the screen.

---

■ **Operating portable audio devices connected to the audio system**

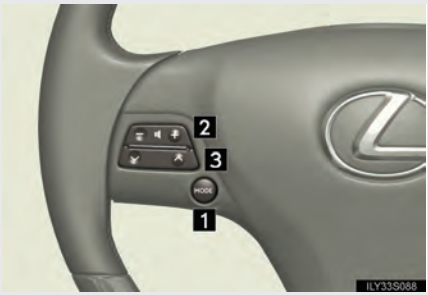
The volume can be adjusted using the vehicle's audio controls. All other adjustments must be made on the portable audio device itself.

■ **When using a portable audio device connected to the power outlet**

Noise may occur during playback. Use the power source of the portable audio device.

# Using the steering switches

**Some audio features can be controlled using the steering switches.**




1 Power on, select audio source

2 Volume

3 Radio mode: Selects a radio station

CD mode: Selects a track, file (MP3 and WMA) and disc

DVD mode*: Selects a track, chapter and disc

Bluetooth® audio mode: Selects a track and album

iPod® mode: Selects a song

USB memory mode: Selects a file and folder

*: DVD player only

## Turning on the power

Press  when the audio system is off.

The audio system can be turned off by holding the switch down for 1 second or more.

## Changing the audio source

Press  when the audio system is on. The audio source changes as follows each time the switch is pressed. If a mode cannot be used, it will be skipped.

FM (1, 2) → SAT (1, 2, 3) → CD/DVD player → Bluetooth® audio → AUX → iPod®/USB memory → AM

## Adjusting the volume

Press "+" on  to increase the volume and "-" to decrease the volume.

Hold down the switch to continue increasing or decreasing the volume.

## Selecting a radio station

STEP 1 Press  to select the radio mode.

STEP 2 Press ∧ or ∨ on  to select a radio station.

To seek stations, press and hold the switch until you hear a beep.

## Selecting a track/file or chapter

STEP 1 Press  to select CD/DVD, Bluetooth® audio, iPod® or USB memory mode.

STEP 2 Press ∧ or ∨ on  to select the desired track/file or chapter.

## Selecting a disc in the CD or DVD player

STEP 1 Press MODE to select the CD or DVD mode.
STEP 2 Press and hold ∧ or ∨ on  until you hear a beep.

## Selecting an album

STEP 1 Press MODE to select Bluetooth® audio mode.
STEP 2 Press and hold ∧ or ∨ on  until you hear a beep.

## Selecting a folder

STEP 1 Press MODE to select CD (only when MP3/WMA disc is in use) or USB memory mode.
STEP 2 Press and hold ∧ or ∨ on  until you hear a beep.

■ **Canceling automatic seek station**

Push the same switch.

### ⚠ CAUTION

■ **To reduce the risk of an accident**

Exercise care when operating the audio switches on the steering wheel.

# Hands-free system (for cellular phone)

**The hands-free system is a function that allows you to use your mobile phone without touching it.**

**This system supports Bluetooth® mobile phones. Bluetooth® is a wireless data system that allows a mobile phone to wirelessly connect to the hands-free system and outgoing/incoming calls.**

The display will differ depending on the type of the system.

## Telephone switch




1 Sending/Receiving/ "Phone" screen display

2 End call

## Microphone




The person you are speaking to can be heard from the driver's side speaker.

To use the hands-free system, you must register your Bluetooth® phone in the system. (→P. 339)

## Status display

You can check indicators such as signal strength and battery charge on the “Phone” screen.




1 Connection status
2 Battery charge
3 Call area
4 Signal strength

| Indicators | Conditions |
|---|---|
| Connection status | Blue: Good<br>Yellow: Bad<br>: Not connected |
| Battery charge | Full ⟷ Empty |
| Call area | “Rm”: Roaming area<br>“Hm”: Home area |
| Signal strength | Excellent ⟷ Too bad |

■ **When using the hands-free system**

- The audio system and voice guidance are muted when making a call.
- If both parties speak at the same time, it may be difficult to hear.
- If the incoming call volume is overly loud, an echo may be heard.
- Try to face toward the microphone as much as possible when speaking.
- In the following circumstances, it may be difficult to hear the other party:
  - When driving on unpaved roads
  - When driving at high speeds
  - If a window is open
  - If the air conditioning is blowing directly on the microphone
  - If the air conditioning is set to high
  - There is an effect from the network of the cellular phone

■ **Conditions under which the system will not operate**

- If using a mobile phone that does not support Bluetooth®
- If the mobile phone is switched off
- If you are outside service range
- If the mobile phone is not connected
- If the mobile phone's battery is low

■ **Bluetooth® antenna**

The antenna is built into the display. If the mobile phone is behind the seat or in the console box, or touching or covered by metal objects, connection status may deteriorate.

■ **Battery charge/Signal status**

This display may not correspond exactly with the mobile phone itself.

■ **When using Bluetooth® audio and hands-free system at the same time**

The following problems may occur.

- The Bluetooth® connection may be cut.
- Noise may be heard on the Bluetooth® audio playback.

■ **About the phonebook in this system**

The following data is stored for every registered phone. When another phone is connecting, you cannot read the registered data.

- Phonebook data
- Voice tag
- All of call history
- Speed dial

When you delete the phone, the above-mentioned data is also deleted.

■ **When you release your car**

Be sure to initialize your data. (→P. 238)

■ **About Bluetooth®**




Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

■ **Compatible models**

This system supports the following service.

- Bluetooth® Specification Ver. 1.1 or higher (Recommended: Ver. 2.0+EDR or higher)
- Profiles
  - HFP (Hands Free Profile) Ver. 1.0 or higher (Recommended: Ver. 1.5 or higher)
  - OPP (Object Push Profile) Ver. 1.1
  - PBAP (Phone Book Access Profile) Ver. 1.0

If your cellular phone does not support HFP, you cannot enter the Bluetooth® phone, and take OPP or PBAP service individually.

Please go to "http://www.lexus.com/" to find approved Bluetooth® phones for this system.

■ **Certification for the hands-free system**

FCC ID: AJDK021

IC: 775E-K021

MADE IN JAPAN

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and RSS-Gen of IC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

## CAUTION

### FCC WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Radio Frequency Exposure. This equipment complies with FCC/IC radiation exposure limits set forth for uncontrolled equipment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines in Supplement C to OET65 and RSS-102 of the IC radio frequency (RF) Exposure rules. This equipment has very low levels of RF energy that it deemed to comply without maximum permissive exposure evaluation (MPE). But it is desirable that it should be installed and operated with at least 7.9 in. (20 cm) and more between the radiator and person's body (excluding extremities: hands, wrists, feet and ankles).

This transmitter must not be co-located or operated in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

### Caution while driving

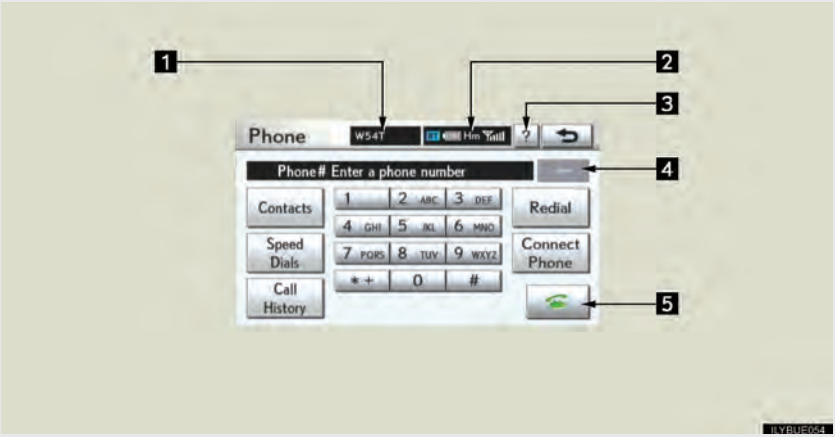
Do not use the mobile phone or connect the Bluetooth® system.

## NOTICE

### When leaving the vehicle

Do not leave your mobile phone in the vehicle. The inside of the vehicle may become hot, causing damage to the phone.

# Using a Bluetooth® phone




1 Device name
2 Bluetooth® connection status
3 Help icon
4 Character deletion
5 Make a call

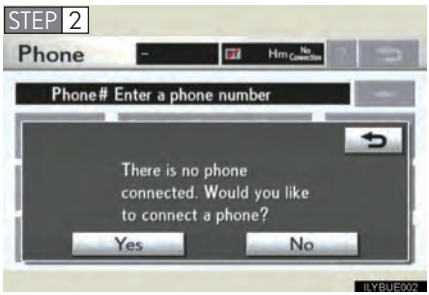
To display the screen shown above, press INFO PHONE, and touch "Phone" on the "Information" screen.

## Registering a Bluetooth® phone

You can register up to 4 phones in the system.

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 338)

STEP 2




Touch "Yes".

STEP 3




Input the passcode displayed on the screen into your phone.

For the operation of the phone, see the manual that comes with your cellular phone.

If you want to cancel it, select "Cancel".

If a completion message is displayed, registration is complete.

If an error message is displayed, follow the guidance on the screen to try again.

## Bluetooth® phone connection

There are two connection methods available — automatic and manual.

▶ Automatic




When you register your phone, auto connection will be activated. Always set it to this mode and leave the Bluetooth® phone on the place where connection can be established.

When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the system will search for a nearby cellular phone you have registered. Next, the system automatically connects with the most recent of the phones connected to in the past. Then, the connection result is displayed.

▶ Manual

When the auto connection has failed or "Handsfree Power" is turned off, you must connect Bluetooth® manually.

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 338)

STEP 2




Touch "Connect Phone".

STEP 3




Touch "Handsfree Power", or touch the phone to connect.

STEP 4




The "Connect Bluetooth*" screen is displayed.

If a completion message is displayed, connection is complete.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

■ **Reconnecting to the Bluetooth® phone**

If the system cannot connect due to poor signal strength with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the system will automatically attempt to reconnect.
If the phone is turned off, the system will not attempt to reconnect. In this case, it must be connected manually, or the phone must be re-selected or re-entered.

■ **Connecting the phone while Bluetooth® audio is playing**

- Bluetooth® audio will stop temporarily.
- It may take time to connect.

■ **Help icon**

When "?" is displayed on the screen, an explanation of the function can be displayed.

To display the explanation of the function, touch "?" and choose the desired function.

## Making a call

Once the Bluetooth® phone is registered, you can make a call using the following procedure:

### ■ Dialing

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 338)

STEP 2




Input the phone number.

To delete the inputted phone number, touch ←.

To dial the last inputted phone number, touch "Redial".

STEP 3 Touch or press on the steering wheel.

## ■ Dialing from the phonebook

▶ With navigation system

You can dial a number from the phonebook data imported from your mobile phone. The system has one phonebook for each telephone. Up to 1000 entries may be stored in each phonebook. (→P. 360)

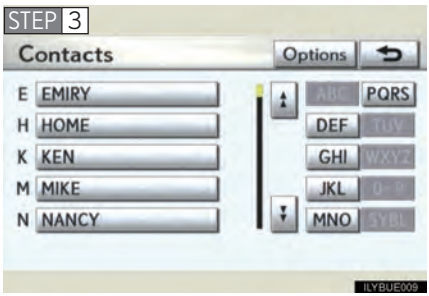
▶ Without navigation system

You can dial a number from the phonebook data imported from your mobile phone. The system has one phonebook for each telephone. Up to 1000 entries may be stored in total for the phonebooks. (→P. 360)

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 338)

STEP 2 Touch "Contacts" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3

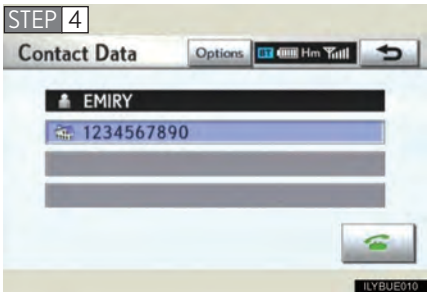



Choose the desired data to call from the list.

If the phonebook is empty, a message will be displayed.

If you want to transfer new contacts from a cellular phone, touch "Yes".

STEP 4




Choose the number and then touch or press on the steering wheel.

## ■ Calling using speed dial

You can make a call using numbers registered from the phonebook. (→P. 360)

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 338)

STEP 2 Touch "Speed Dials" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3




Select the desired tab and choose the desired number to make a call.

## Dialing from history

You can call using the call history which has the 4 functions below.

"All": all the numbers below which were memorized

"Missed": calls which you missed

"Incoming": calls which you received

"Outgoing": numbers which you called

You can call using the 5 most recently called numbers shown by "All" while driving.

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 338)

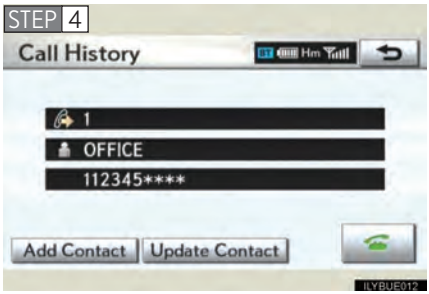
STEP 2 Touch "Call History" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3




Select the desired tab and choose the desired data from the list.

STEP 4




Touch or press on the steering wheel.

## Calling using voice recognition

Using voice recognition, you can call by name, call by number, and select a phone.



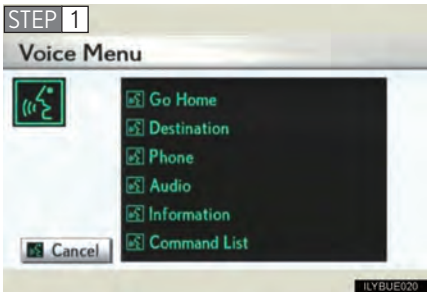

Talk switch

The “Calling by Name” operating procedure is explained here. Other operating procedures are also similar.

● Calling by name

You can call by giving a voice tag registered in the phonebook. (→P. 374)

When you select “English” in “Language”, you can call by giving a name registered in the phonebook.




Press the talk switch.

If you want to check the entire command list, say “Command list” to display the “Command List” screen.

STEP 2 Following the system guidance, wait for the beep and then say “Phone”.

STEP 3 Following the system guidance, wait for the beep and then say “Dial by Name”.

STEP 4 Following the system guidance, wait for the beep and then say the desired name.

STEP 5 Following the system guidance, wait for the beep and then say the type of number such as “Mobile” or “Home”.

STEP 6 Following the system guidance, wait for the beep and then say “Dial”. (You can also call by pushing on the steering wheel or selecting “Dial”.)

■ **Calling using POI (With navigation system)**

You can make a call using a Point Of Interest.

■ **Call history list**

- If you make a call to or receive a call from a number registered in the phone book, the name is displayed in the call history.
- If you make multiple calls to the same number, only the last call made is displayed in the call history.
- Calls where the number is unavailable, such as public telephones, are not stored in the call history.

■ **When driving**

The functions "Dialing", "Dialing from the phonebook", and "Dialing from history" (except for call using the 5 most recently called numbers shown by "All" tab) are unavailable.

■ **International calls**

You may not be able to make international calls, depending on the mobile phone in use.

■ **Calling by using the call history**

STEP 1 Push on the steering wheel to display the "Phone" screen.

STEP 2 Push on the steering wheel to display the "Call History" screen.

STEP 3 Push on the steering wheel to select the most recent number in the history.

STEP 4 Select or push on the steering wheel.

■ **To cancel voice recognition**

- Press and hold the talk switch.
- Press on the steering wheel.
- Touch "Cancel". (excluding command verification)
- Say "Cancel".

■ **When using voice recognition**

Use correct commands and speak clearly, otherwise the system may not correctly recognize the command. Wind or other noises may also cause the system not to recognize the desired command.

## Receiving a call

When a call is received, the following screen is displayed together with a sound.




Touch or press on the steering wheel.

### To refuse a call

Touch or press on the steering wheel.

### To adjust the incoming call volume

Touch "-" or "+". You can also adjust the volume using the steering switches.

---

### International calls

Received international calls may not be displayed correctly depending on the mobile phone in use.

## Speaking on the phone

The following screen is displayed when speaking on the phone.




### To adjust the incoming call volume

Touch "-" or "+". You can also adjust the volume using the steering switches.

### To prevent the other party from hearing your voice
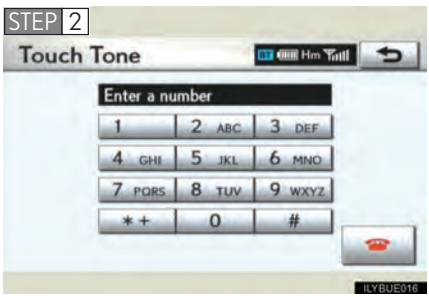
Touch "Mute".

### Inputting tones

When using phone services such as an answering service or a bank, you can store phone numbers and code numbers in the phonebook.

STEP 1 Touch "0-9".

STEP 2




Input the number.

If repeated tone symbols* are stored in the phonebook, "Send" and "Exit" are displayed on the right side of the screen.

*: Repeated tone symbols are symbols or numbers displayed as p or w, that come after the phone number.
(e.g. 056133w0123p#1✻)

STEP 3 Confirm the number displayed on the screen, and touch "Send".

If you touch "Exit", this function will end.

■ **To transfer a call**

Touch "Call Transfer".

■ **To hang up**

Touch or press on the steering wheel.

■ **Interrupt call**

When the call is interrupted by the third party while talking, the incoming call message will be displayed.

- To talk with the other party: Touch or press on the steering wheel.
- To refuse the call: Touch or press on the steering wheel.

Everytime you touch or press on the steering wheel after a call is interrupted, you will be switched to the other party.

If your cellular phone is not accepted in HFP Ver. 1.5, this function cannot be used.

---

■ **Transferring calls**

- It is not possible to transfer from hands-free to a mobile phone while driving.
- If you transfer from a mobile phone to hands-free, the hands-free screen will be displayed, and you can operate the system using the screen.
- Transfer method and operation may vary according to the mobile phone used.
- For operation of the mobile phone in use, see the phone's manual.

■ **While driving**

Key input is unavailable.

■ **Voice recognition during a call**

"Mute" and "Send Tones" can be operated by voice recognition. (→P. 347)

■ **Interrupt call operation**

Interrupt call operation may differ from depending on your phone company and the cellular phone.

# Setting the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

You can set the hands-free system to your desired settings.




1 Setting the volume
2 Managing the phone
3 Phonebook settings
4 Bluetooth® settings
5 Detailed settings

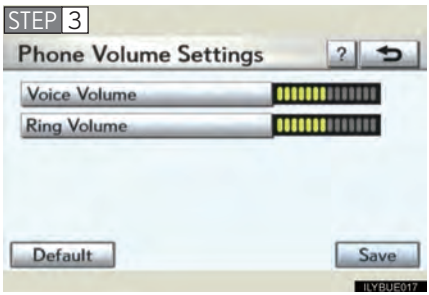
To display the screen shown above, press SETUP, and touch "Phone" on the "Setup" screen.

## Setting the volume

STEP 1 Display the “Phone Settings” screen. (→P. 353)

STEP 2 Touch “Volume” on the “Phone Settings” screen.

STEP 3

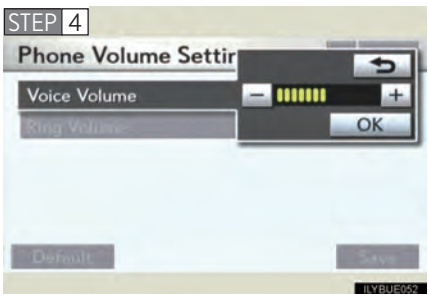



Choose the volume setting switch.

“Voice Volume”: changes the speaker volume

“Ring Volume”: changes the ring volume

STEP 4




Touch “-” or “+” to lower or raise the volume, and then “OK”.

STEP 5 When you complete all settings, touch “Save”.

### ■ Adaptive volume control

When traveling at 50 mph (80 km/h) or more, the system automatically raises the volume one level.
If the vehicle speed drops to 43 mph (70 km/h), the volume will return to its original level.

### ■ To return to the default volume settings

Touch “Default”, and then “Yes”.

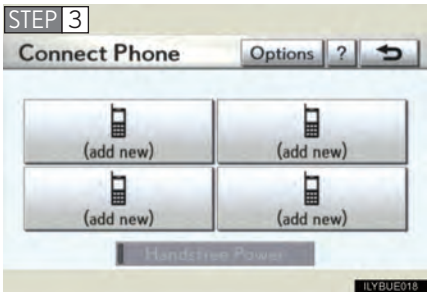
## Managing the phone

### ■ Registering a Bluetooth® phone

STEP 1 Display the "Phone Settings" screen. (→P. 353)

STEP 2 Touch "Manage Phone" on the "Phone Settings" screen.

STEP 3




Touch "(add new)" to register your cellular phone to the system.

STEP 4




Input the passcode displayed on the screen into your phone.

For the operation of the phone, see the manual that comes with your cellular phone.

If you want to cancel it, select "Cancel".

If a completion message is displayed, registration is complete.

If an error message is displayed, follow the guidance on the screen to try again.

### Selecting a Bluetooth® phone

If multiple Bluetooth® phones are registered, follow the procedure below to select the Bluetooth® phone to be used. You may only use one phone at a time.

STEP 1 Display the "Phone Settings" screen. (→P. 353)

STEP 2 Touch "Manage Phone" on the "Phone Settings" screen.

STEP 3




Select the phone to be use.

The Bluetooth® mark is displayed when you connect the phone.

If a completion message is displayed, connection is complete.

### Editing a Bluetooth®phone

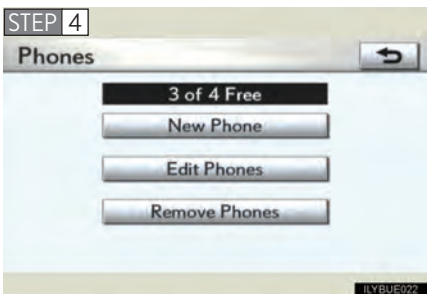
You can see the information of the Bluetooth® phone on the system or edit.

STEP 1 Display the "Phone Settings" screen. (→P. 353)

STEP 2 Touch "Manage Phone" on the "Phone Settings" screen.

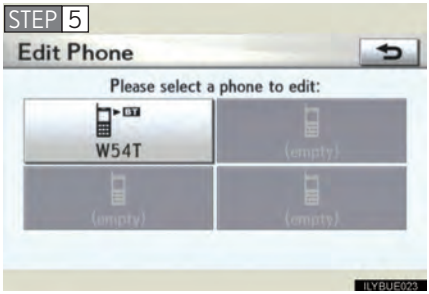
STEP 3 Touch "Options" on the "Connect Phone" screen.

STEP 4




Touch "Edit Phones".

STEP 5




Select a phone to edit.

STEP 6




Touch “Edit”.

STEP 7




Input the device name, and touch “OK”.

STEP 8 Confirm the device name, and touch “OK”.

### Removing a Bluetooth® phone

STEP 1 Display the "Phone Settings" screen. (→P. 353)

STEP 2 Touch "Manage Phone" on the "Phone Settings" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "Options" on the "Connect Phone" screen.

STEP 4 Touch "Remove Phones" on the "Phones" screen.

STEP 5




Select the desired phone. If you want to remove all phones, touch "Select All".

STEP 6 Touch "Delete". A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch "Yes".

---

### Registering a Bluetooth® phone in a different way

STEP 1 Display the "Phone Settings" screen. (→P. 353)

STEP 2 Touch "Manage Phone" on the "Phone Settings" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "Options" on the "Connect Phone" screen.

STEP 4 Touch "New Phone" on the "Phones" screen.

STEP 5 Touch "(empty)" on the "Phone Position" screen.

STEP 6 Follow the steps for "Registering a Bluetooth® phone" from "STEP4". (→P. 355)

■ **When another Bluetooth® device is connected while registering or selecting a phone**

When another Bluetooth® device is connected, a confirmation message will be displayed. If you want to disconnect it, touch "Yes".

■ **When Bluetooth® audio is connected while registering a phone**

When you register your phone, Bluetooth® audio will disconnect. It will reconnect automatically when you finish registration. It will not be reconnected depending on the phone you are using.

■ **Connecting the phone while Bluetooth® audio is playing**

Bluetooth® audio will disconnect. It will reconnect automatically when you finish registration. It will not be reconnected depending on the phone you are using.

■ **Setting the "Handsfree Power"**

The state changes between "On" and "Off" every time you select "Handsfree Power" on the "Connect Phone" screen. When "Handsfree Power" is "On", the Bluetooth® phone is automatically connected when you turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Editing the "Device Name"**

If you change a device name, the name registered in your cellular phone is not changed.

■ **About "Device Address"**

This address is specific to the system and cannot be changed. If you have registered two Bluetooth® phones with the same device name and you cannot distinguish one from the other, refer to this address.

■ **When you delete a Bluetooth® phone**

The phonebook data will be deleted at the same time.

■ **Connecting the phone by voice recognition**

"Connect Phone" includes "Select Phone", "Add New Phone" and "Handsfree Power Off (On)" can be operated by voice recognition. (→P. 347)

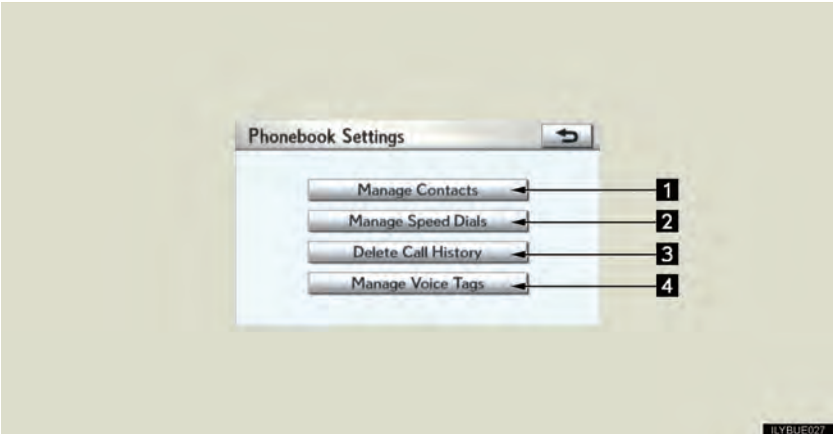
## Phonebook settings

▶ With navigation system

The phonebook manages a maximum of 4 phonebooks in total. Up to 1000 person's data (up to 3 numbers a person) can be registered in each phonebook.

▶ Without navigation system

The phonebook manages a maximum of 4 phonebooks in total. Up to 1000 person's data (up to 3 numbers a person) can be registered in total for the phonebooks.




1 Setting the phonebook

2 Speed dials setting

3 Deleting the call history

4 Setting the voice tag

To display the screen above, follow the steps below.

STEP 1 Display the "Phone Settings" screen. (→P. 353)

STEP 2 Touch "Phonebook" on the "Phone Settings" screen.

## ■ Setting the phonebook

● Transferring a phone number

You can transfer the phone numbers in your Bluetooth® phone to the system.

STEP 1 Display the "Phonebook Settings" screen. (→P. 360)

STEP 2 Touch "Manage Contacts" on the "Phonebook Settings" screen.

STEP 3




Touch "Transfer Contacts".

STEP 4




Select "Replace Contacts" or "Add Contacts".

In the case that the phonebook contains phonebook data, this screen will be displayed.




Transfer the phonebook data to the system using the Bluetooth® phone.

If you wish to cancel the transfer before it finishes, touch "Cancel".

If the transferring is interrupted midway through the process, the phonebook data transferred until then can be memorized in the system.

STEP 6 In the case that you have selected "Add Contacts", a message will be displayed.
If you want to transfer another phonebook, touch "Yes".

● Registering the phonebook data

You can register the phonebook data. Up to 3 numbers per person can be registered.

STEP 1 Display the "Phonebook Settings" screen. (→P. 360)

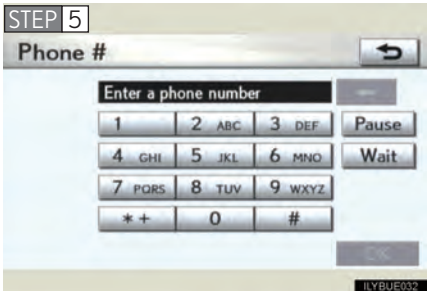
STEP 2 Touch "Manage Contacts" on the "Phonebook Settings" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "New Contact" on the "Contacts" screen.




Input the name, and touch "OK".

STEP 5




Input the phone number, and touch "OK".

If you want to use the tone signal after the phone number, input the tone signal too.

STEP 6




Touch the desired phone type.

STEP 7 When two or less numbers in total are registered to this contact, this screen is displayed. When you want to add a number to this contact, select "Yes".

● Editing the phonebook data

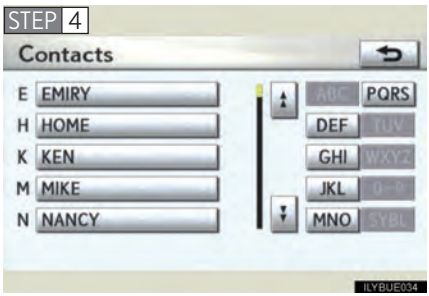
You can register the phone number separately.

STEP 1 Display the “Phonebook Settings” screen. (→P. 360)

STEP 2 Touch “Manage Contacts” on the “Phonebook Settings” screen.

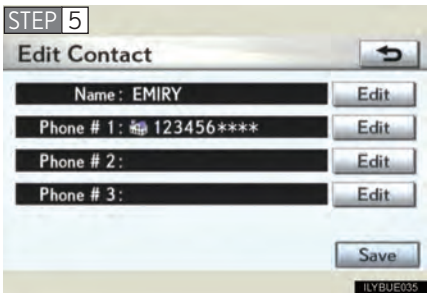
STEP 3 Touch “Edit Contacts” on the “Contacts” screen.

STEP 4




Choose the data to edit.

STEP 5




Choose “Edit” for the desired name or number.

STEP 6 Edit the name or number. After editing, touch “Save”.

● Deleting the phonebook data

STEP 1 Display the "Phonebook Settings" screen. (→P. 360)

STEP 2 Touch "Manage Contacts" on the "Phonebook Settings" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "Delete Contacts" on the "Contacts" screen.

STEP 4




Choose the data to delete.

You can select multiple data and delete them at the same time.

To delete all data, touch "Select All".

STEP 5 Touch "Delete". A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch "Yes".

■ **Phonebook data**

Phonebook data is managed for every registered phone. When another phone is connecting, you cannot read the registered data.

■ **Setting the phonebook in a different way (To display the "Contacts" screen)**

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 338)

STEP 2 Touch "Contacts" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "Options" on the "Contacts" screen.

STEP 4 Touch "Manage Contacts" on the "Contacts" screen.

■ **When transferring a phone number**

Transfer the phone number while engine is running.

■ **When you have selected "Replace Contacts" to transfer the phone number**

- If your cellular phone does not support PBAP or OPP service, you cannot use this function.
- If your phone supports PBAP service, you can transfer the phonebook data without operating your phone.
- If your phone does not support PBAP service, you must transfer the phonebook data by operating your phone.

■ **When you have selected "Add Contacts" to transfer the phone number**

If your cellular phone does not support OPP service, you can not use this function. You can transfer the phonebook data only by operating your phone.

■ **When another Bluetooth® device is connected during transferring a phonebook**

When another Bluetooth® device is connected, a confirmation message will be displayed.
If you want to disconnect it, touch "Yes".

■ **Transferring the phone number while Bluetooth® audio is playing**

Bluetooth® audio will disconnect. It will reconnect automatically when data transfer finishes. (It will not be reconnected depending on the phone you are using.)

■ **Editing the phonebook data in a different way (From "Contact Data" screen)**

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 338)

STEP 2 Touch "Contacts" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3 Choose the desired data from the list.

STEP 4 Touch "Options" on the "Contact Data" screen.

STEP 5 Touch "Edit Contact" on the "Contact Data" screen.

STEP 6 Follow the steps "Editing the phonebook data" from "STEP5". (→P. 364)

■ **Editing the phonebook data in a different way (From "Call History" screen)**

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 338)

STEP 2 Touch "Call History" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3 Choose the desired data from the list.

STEP 4 Touch "Add Contact" or "Update Contact".

STEP 5 If you touch "Add Contact", follow the steps "Editing the phonebook data" from "STEP5". (→P. 364)
If you touch "Update Contact", follow the steps "Editing the phonebook data" from "STEP4". (→P. 364)

■ **Deleting the phonebook data in a different way**

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 338)

STEP 2 Touch "Contacts" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3 Choose the desired data from the list.

STEP 4 Touch "Options" on the "Contact Data" screen.

STEP 5 Touch "Delete Contact" on the "Contact Data" screen.

STEP 6 A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch "Yes".

## ■ Speed dials setting

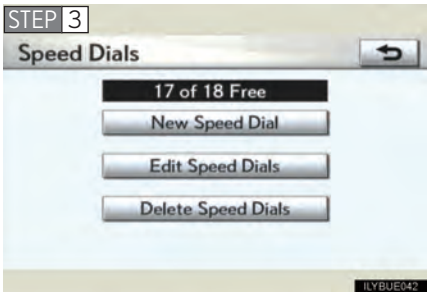
### ● Registering the speed dial

You can register the desired phone number from phonebook. Up to 18 numbers per phone can be registered.

STEP 1 Display the “Phonebook Settings” screen. (→P. 360)

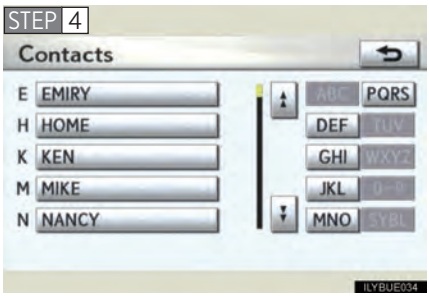
STEP 2 Touch “Manage Speed Dials” on the “Phonebook Settings” screen.

STEP 3



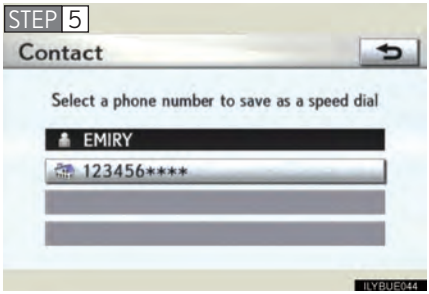

Touch “New Speed Dial”.

STEP 4



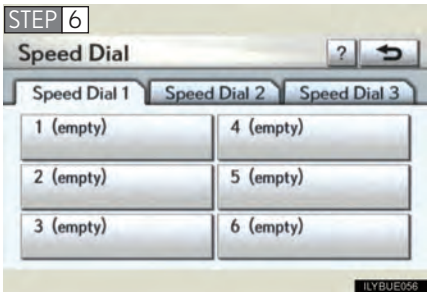

Choose the data to register.

STEP 5




Touch the desired phone number.

STEP 6




Touch the switch you want to register the number in.

STEP 7 If you select a switch you registered before, a confirmation message will be displayed. If you want to replace it, touch "Yes".

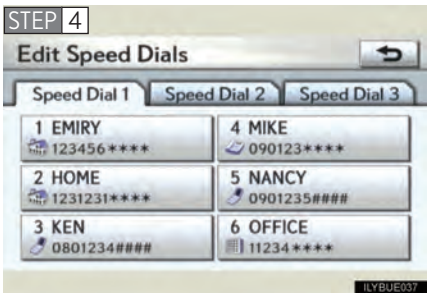
● Editing the speed dial

STEP 1 Display the “Phonebook Settings” screen. (→P. 360)

STEP 2 Touch “Manage Speed Dials” on the “Phonebook Settings” screen.

STEP 3 Touch “Edit Speed Dials” on the “Speed Dials” screen.

STEP 4




Choose the data to edit.

STEP 5




Touch “Edit”.

STEP 6 Edit the name. After editing, touch “OK” and then “Save”.

● Deleting the speed dial

STEP 1 Display the “Phonebook Settings” screen. (→P. 360)

STEP 2 Touch “Manage Speed Dials” on the “Phonebook Settings” screen.

STEP 3 Touch “Delete Speed Dials” on the “Speed Dials” screen.

STEP 4




Choose the data to delete.

You can select multiple data and delete them at the same time.

To delete all data, touch “Select All”.

STEP 5 Touch “Delete”. A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch “Yes”.

■ **Setting the speed dials in a different way (To display the "Speed Dials" screen)**

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 338)

STEP 2 Touch "Speed Dials" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "Options" on the "Speed Dial" screen.

■ **Registering the speed dial in a different way (From "Speed Dial" screen)**

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 338)

STEP 2 Touch "Speed Dials" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "(add new)" on the "Speed Dial" screen.

STEP 4 Touch "Yes" to set new speed dial.

STEP 5 Choose the desired data from the list.

STEP 6 Touch the desired phone number.

STEP 7 Follow the steps "Registering the speed dial" from "STEP6". (→P. 368)

■ **Registering the speed dial in a different way (From "Contact Data" screen)**

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 338)

STEP 2 Touch "Contacts" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3 Choose the desired data from the list.

STEP 4 Touch "Options" on the "Contact Data" screen.

STEP 5 Touch "Set Speed Dial" on the "Contact Data" screen.

STEP 6 Touch the desired phone number.

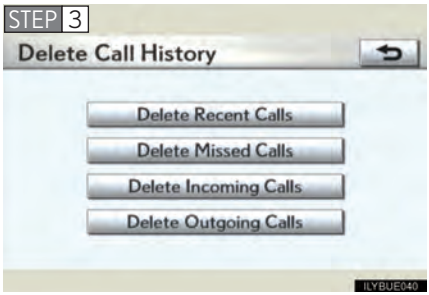
STEP 7 Follow the steps "Registering the speed dial" from "STEP6". (→P. 368)

## ■ Deleting call history

STEP 1 Display the "Phonebook Settings" screen. (→P. 360)

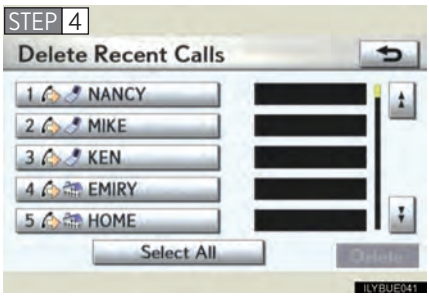
STEP 2 Touch "Delete Call History" on the "Phonebook Settings" screen.

STEP 3




Choose the desired history to delete.

STEP 4




Choose the data to delete.

You can select multiple data and delete them at the same time.

To delete all data, touch "Select All".

STEP 5 Touch "Delete". A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch "Yes".

---

### ■ Deleting call history in a different way

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 338)

STEP 2 Touch "Call History" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "Delete" on the "Call History" screen.

STEP 4 Follow the steps "Deleting call history" from "STEP4". (→P. 373)

## ■ Setting the voice tag

● Registering the voice tag

You can register a voice tag. Up to 20 numbers can be registered.

STEP 1 Display the "Phonebook Settings" screen. (→P. 360)

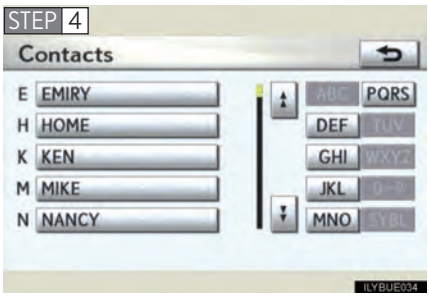
STEP 2 Touch "Manage Voice Tags" on the "Phonebook Settings" screen.

STEP 3




Touch "New Voice Tag".

STEP 4




Choose the data to register.

STEP 5




Touch "● REC", and record a voice tag.

To play the voice tag, touch "▶ Play".

STEP 6 When you complete the voice tag registration, touch "OK".

● Editing the voice tag

STEP 1 Display the "Phonebook Settings" screen. (→P. 360)

STEP 2 Touch "Manage Voice Tags" on the "Phonebook Settings" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "Edit Voice Tags" on the "Voice Tags" screen.

STEP 4




Choose the data to edit.

STEP 5 Edit the voice tag. After editing, touch "OK".

● Deleting the voice tag

STEP 1 Display the "Phonebook Settings" screen. (→P. 360)

STEP 2 Touch "Manage Voice Tags" on the "Phonebook Settings" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "Delete Voice Tags" on the "Voice Tags" screen.

STEP 4




Choose the data to delete.

You can select multiple data and delete them at the same time.

To delete all data, touch "Select All".

STEP 5 Touch "Delete". A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch "Yes".

■ **Setting the voice tag in a different way (To display the "Voice Tags" screen)**

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 338)

STEP 2 Touch "Contacts" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "Options" on the "Contacts" screen.

STEP 4 Touch "Manage Voice Tags" on the "Contacts" screen.

■ **When using the voice tag**

Do not change the language setting from the language setting used when registering. If they are different, the voice recognition cannot recognize the voice tag that you have registered.

■ **When recording a voice tag**

Do so in a quiet environment.

■ **Registering the voice tag in a different way**

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 338)

STEP 2 Touch "Contacts" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3 Choose the desired data from the list.

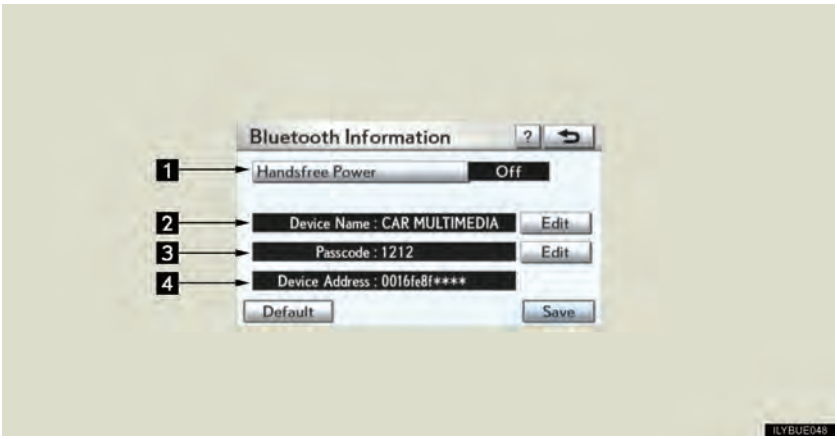
STEP 4 Touch "Options" on the "Contact Data" screen.

STEP 5 Touch "Set Voice Tag" on the "Contact Data" screen.

STEP 6 Follow the steps "Registering the voice tag" from "STEP5". (→P. 374)

## Bluetooth® settings

You can confirm and change the Bluetooth® settings.




1 Changing the handsfree power

2 Changing the name in the Bluetooth® network

3 Changing the password that you register your cellular phone in the system

4 The address specific to the system

You cannot change it. If the same device name is displayed on the screen of your phone, refer to it.

To display the screen above, follow the steps below.

STEP 1 Display the "Phone Settings" screen. (→P. 353)

STEP 2 Touch "Bluetooth*" on the "Phone Settings" screen.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

## ■ Changing the handsfree power

The Bluetooth® phone is automatically connected when you turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode. You can change this state to "On" or "Off".

STEP 1 Display the "Bluetooth* Information" screen. (→P. 377)

STEP 2 Touch "Handsfree Power" on the "Bluetooth* Information" screen.

STEP 3




Touch "On" or "Off", and then "Save".

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

## ■ Editing the device name

STEP 1 Display the "Bluetooth* Information" screen. (→P. 377)

STEP 2 Touch "Edit" of "Device Name" on the "Bluetooth* Information" screen.

STEP 3 Input the device name, and touch "OK".

STEP 4 Touch "Save" on the "Bluetooth* Information" screen.

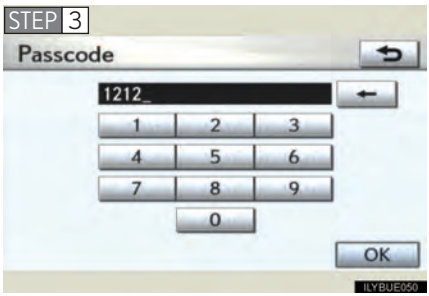
*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

### ■ Editing the passcode

STEP 1 Display the "Bluetooth* Information" screen. (→P. 377)

STEP 2 Touch "Edit" of "Passcode" on the "Bluetooth* Information" screen.

STEP 3




Input a passcode, and touch "OK".

STEP 4 Touch "Save" on the "Bluetooth* Information" screen.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

---

■ **While driving**

You cannot change the state of "Handsfree Power" from "On" to "Off" while driving.

■ **About "Device Name"**

The device names are common Bluetooth® audio and Bluetooth® phone.

If you change the device name of the phone, the device name of the audio will change at same time. However, passcodes can be set separately.

■ **To return to the default detailed phone settings**

Touch "Default", and then "Yes".

If the state of "Handsfree Power" is changed from "Off" to "On", Bluetooth® connection will begin.

## Detailed settings




1 Changing the incoming call display mode

2 Changing the display phone status

To display the screen above, follow the steps below.

STEP 1 Display the “Phone Settings” screen. (→P. 353)

STEP 2 Touch “Details” on the “Phone Settings” screen.

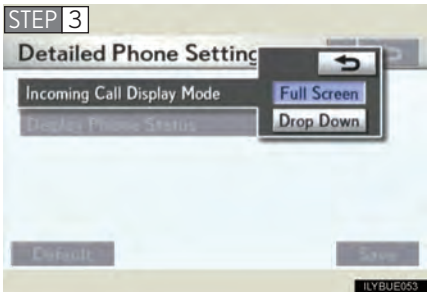
### Changing the incoming call display mode

You can select the method of the incoming call display.

STEP 1 Display the "Detailed Phone Settings" screen. (→P. 380)

STEP 2 Touch "Incoming Call Display Mode" on the "Detailed Phone Settings" screen.

STEP 3




Touch "Full Screen" or "Drop Down", and touch "Save".

"Full Screen":
The hands-free screen is displayed when a call is received, and you can operate the system from that screen.

"Drop Down":
A message is displayed at the top of the screen, and you can only operate the system with the steering switches.

### Changing the display phone status

You can set the system to show the status confirmation display when connecting.

STEP 1 Display the "Detailed Phone Settings" screen. (→P. 380)

STEP 2 Touch "Display Phone Status" on the "Detailed Phone Settings" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "On" or "Off", and then "Save".

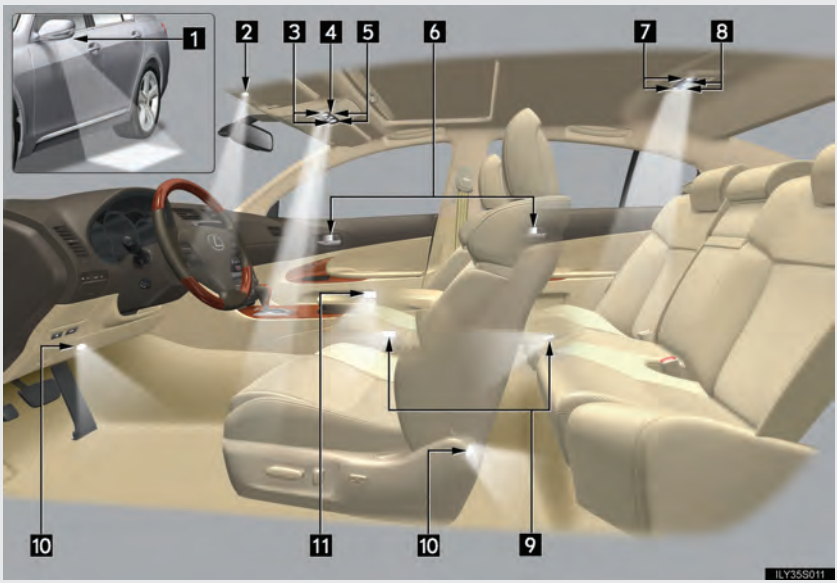
---

**To return to the default detailed phone settings**

Touch "Default", and then "Yes".

# Interior lights list

**Illuminated entry system: The various lights automatically turn on/off according to the presence of the electronic key, whether the doors are locked/unlocked, whether the doors are open/closed, and the "ENGINE START STOP" switch mode.**




1 Outer foot light
2 Steering spot light
3 Front personal lights (→P. 384)
4 Shift lever light
5 Front interior lights(→P. 383)
6 Inside door handle lights
7 Rear personal lights (→P. 384)
8 Rear interior lights
9 Door courtesy lights
10 Foot light
11 Front scuff light

When the instrument panel light control switch is turned to minimum, the foot lights, inside door handle lights and shift lever light will turn off. (→P. 148)

■ **To prevent 12 volt battery discharge**

If the interior lights, personal lights and steering spot light remain ON when the door is not fully closed or the interior light switch in "DOOR" position, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

■ **Customization that can be configured at Lexus dealer**

Setting (e.g. The time elapsed before lights turn off) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 622)

## Interior lights




1 "ON"
2 "OFF"
3 "DOOR"

The interior lights are turned on/off by the illuminated entry system.

## Personal lights

▶ Front




ON/OFF

▶ Rear

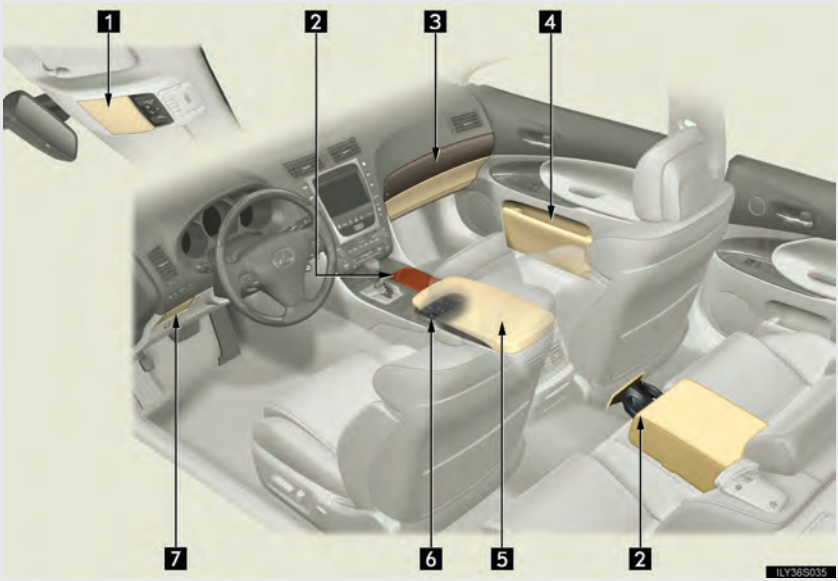


ON/OFF

■ **Customization that can be configured at Lexus dealer**

Settings can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 622)

# List of storage features




1 Overhead console (if equipped)
2 Cup holders
3 Glove box
4 Door pocket
5 Console box
6 Coin holder
7 Storage compartment

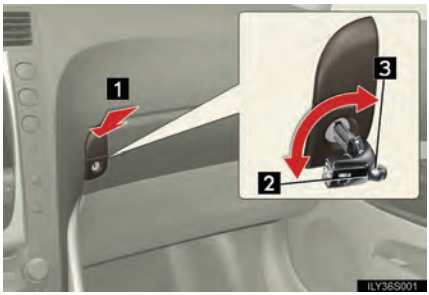
## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Items that should not be left in the storage spaces**

Do not leave glasses, lighters or spray cans in the storage spaces, as this may cause the following when cabin temperature becomes high:

- Glasses may be deformed by heat or cracked if they come into contact with other stored items.
- Lighters or spray cans may explode. If they come into contact with other stored items, the lighter may catch fire or the spray can may release gas, causing a fire hazard.

## Glove box




1 Open (push button)
2 Unlock with the mechanical key
3 Lock with the mechanical key

### Glove box light

The glove box light turns on when the headlight switch is on.

### Trunk opener main switch

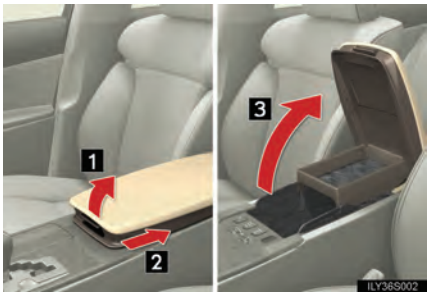
The trunk opener main switch is located in the glove box. (→P. 48)

### CAUTION

**While driving**

Keep the glove box closed.
Injuries may result in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

## Console box




1 Pull up the lever to release the lock.
2 Slide the armrest.
3 Lift the armrest to open.

### Console box light

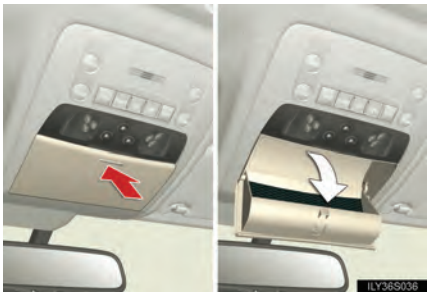
The console box light turns on when the headlight switch is on.

### CAUTION

**While driving**

Keep the console box closed.
Injuries may result in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

## Overhead console (if equipped)



The overhead console is useful for temporarily storing sunglasses and similar small items.

### CAUTION

**Caution while driving**

Do not leave the auxiliary box open while driving.
Items may fall out and cause death or serious injury in cause of an accident or sudden braking.

## Storage compartment



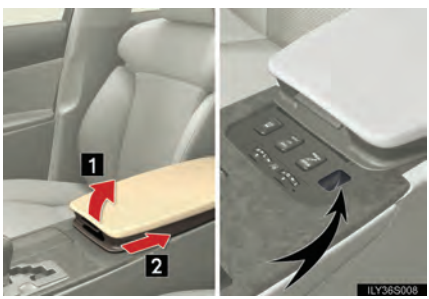

### CAUTION

**While driving**

Do not leave the storage compartment open.

The opened compartment may hit your body or items may be thrown out of the compartment in the event of an accident or sudden braking and cause injury.

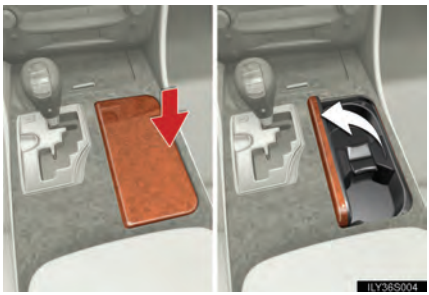
## Coin holder




1 Pull up lever to release the lock.
2 Slide the armrest.

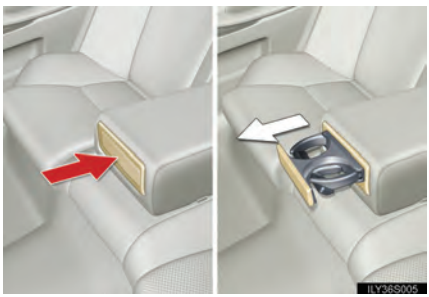
## Cup holders

▶ Front



To open, press down and release the cup holder lid.

▶ Rear



To open, press in and release the rear cup holder on the armrest.



### ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Items unsuitable for the cup holder**

Do not place anything other than cups or aluminum cans in the cup holders. Other items may be thrown out of the holders in the event of an accident or sudden braking and cause injury. If possible, cover hot drinks to prevent burns.

**■ When not in use**

Keep the cup holders closed.
Injuries may result in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

## Door pockets



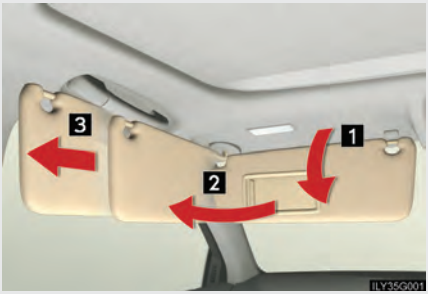

The front door pocket can be opened and closed.

### ⚠ CAUTION

**■ While driving**

Keep the door pockets closed.
Injuries may result in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

# Sun visors




1 Forward position: Flip down.

2 Side position: Flip down, unhook, and swing to the side.

3 Side extender: Place in side position, then slide backwards.



Slide the cover.

The light turns on when the cover is opened.

⚠ NOTICE

**To prevent battery discharge**

Do not leave the vanity lights on for extended periods while the engine is off.




■ **Adjust clock**

▶ With navigation system
→"Navigation System Owner's Manual".

▶ Without navigation system

STEP 1 Press SETUP.

STEP 2 Touch "Clock" on the "Setup" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "-", "+" or ":00" (Rounds to the nearest hour).

STEP 4 Touch "Save".

■ **The clock is displayed when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

■ **When the 12 volt battery is disconnected**

The time display will automatically be set to 1:00.

# Outside temperature display

The displayed temperature ranges from -40°F (-40°C) up to 122°F (50°C).




■ **The outside temperature is displayed when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **When "--" or "E" is displayed**

The system may be malfunctioning. Take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

■ **On the multi-information display**

→P. 156

■ **Display**

In the following situations, the correct outside temperature may not be displayed, or the display may take longer than normal to change.

- When stopped, or driving at low speeds (less than 12 mph [20 km/h])
- When the outside temperature has changed suddenly (at the entrance/exit of a garage, tunnel, etc.)

# Ashtrays

▶ Front

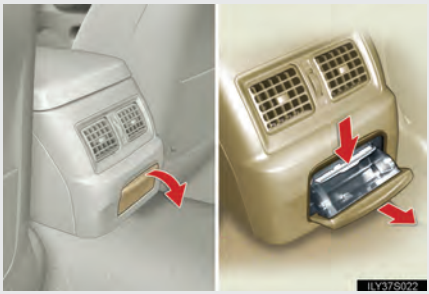


Slide the lid to open.

Push the lever to remove the ashtray.

Push the lid to close.

▶ Rear



Pull the lid to open.

Hold the plate down and pull the ashtray upwards to remove.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ When not in use**

Keep the ashtray closed.
Injuries may result in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

**■ To prevent fire**

- Fully extinguish matches and cigarettes before putting them in the ashtray, then make sure the ashtray is fully closed.
- Do not place paper or any other type of flammable object in the ashtray.




1 Slide the lid to open, and push the cigarette lighter down.

The cigarette lighter will pop up when ready for use.

### The cigarette lighter can be used when

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

### CAUTION

**To avoid burns or fires**

- Do not touch the metal parts of the cigarette lighter.
- Do not hold the cigarette lighter down. It could overheat and cause a fire.
- Do not insert anything other than the cigarette lighter into the outlet.

**When not in use**

Keep the ashtray lid closed.
Injuries may result in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

# Power outlet

The power outlet can be used for 12V accessories that run on less than 10A.




## The power outlet can be used when

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

### NOTICE

**To avoid damaging the power outlet**

Close the power outlet lid when not in use.
Foreign objects or liquids that enter the power outlet may cause a short circuit.

**To prevent the fuse from being blown**

Do not use an accessory that uses more than 12V/10A.

**To prevent 12 volt battery discharge**

Do not use the power outlet longer than necessary when the engine is off.

# Seat heaters/ventilators*

**The temperature of the seats can be adjusted individually.**

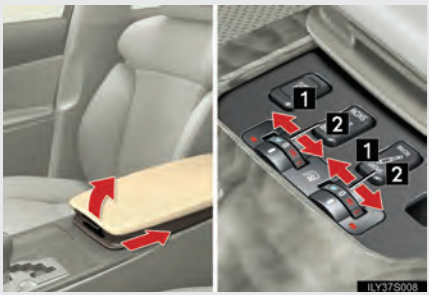
## Seat heaters




**1** Heats the seats

The indicator light comes on.
The higher the number, the warmer the seats become.

## Seat heaters/ventilators




**1** Heats the seats

The indicator light (red) comes on.
The higher the number, the warmer the seats become.

**2** Blows air from the seats

The indicator light (green) comes on.
The higher the number, the stronger the airflow becomes.

---

**The seat heaters/ventilators can be used when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

**When not in use**

Set the dial to "0". The indicator light turns off.

*: If equipped

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Burns**

- Use caution when seating the following persons in a seat with the seat heater on to avoid the possibility of burns:
  - Babies, small children, the elderly, the sick and the disabled
  - Persons with sensitive skin
  - Persons who are fatigued
  - Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs that induce sleep (sleeping drugs, cold remedies, etc.)
- Do not cover the seat with anything when using the seat heater.
  Using the seat heater with a blanket or cushion increases the temperature of the seat and may lead to overheating.
- Do not use seat heater more than necessary.
  Doing so may cause minor burns or overheating.

## ⚠ NOTICE

**■ To prevent damage to the seat heaters/ventilators**

Do not put heavy objects on the seat and do not stick sharp objects (needles, nails, etc.) into the seat.

**■ To prevent 12 volt battery discharge**

Turn the switches off when the engine is off.

# Armrest




Pull the armrest down for use.

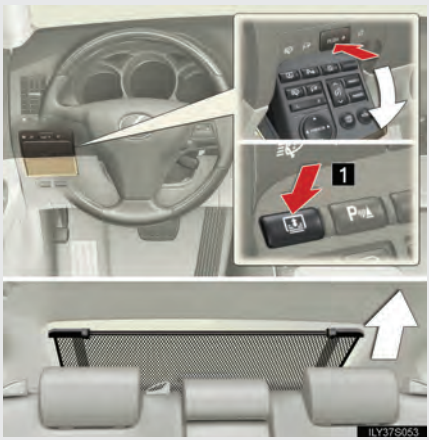
NOTICE

**To prevent damage to the armrest**

Do not place too much strain on the armrest.

# Rear sunshade*

The rear sunshade can be raised and lowered by pressing the switch shown below.




1 Raise/lower



*: If equipped

■ **The rear sunshade can be used when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Reverse operation feature**

This function will become operational when the rear sunshade is in the raised position and the vehicle has been driven at 9 mph (15 km/h) or more or with the shift lever in P.

To ensure adequate rear visibility, the sunshade automatically lowers when the shift lever is shifted to "R" and the function is in an operational condition.

However, the rear sunshade is raised again if any of the following occurs:

- Shift the shift lever into "P".
- The shift lever is shifted out of "R", and the vehicle reaches a speed of 9 mph (15 km/h).
- The switch is pressed again.*

*: Occasionally, the reverse function may not be carried out after the switch has been pressed. Repeat the above operation to operate the function.

If the engine is turned off when the rear sunshade has been lowered due to the reverse operation feature, it will not be raised even when the engine is turned on again and the vehicle reaches a speed of 9 mph (15 km/h). To raise the sunshade again, press the switch.

■ **After the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to OFF**

The rear sunshade can be raised and lowered for approximately 1 minute.

■ **Customization that can be configured at Lexus dealer**

Time elapsed before the reverse operation feature activates can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 622)

## ⚠ CAUTION

**When the rear sunshade is being raised or lowered**

Do not place fingers or other objects in the fastener section or in the opening. They may get caught, causing injury.

## NOTICE

**To prevent 12 volt battery discharge**

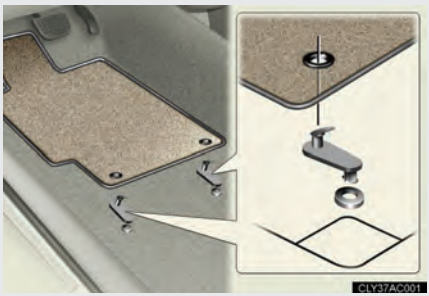
Do not operate the rear sunshade when the engine is off.

**To ensure normal operation of the sunshade**

Observe the following precautions.

- Do not place excessive load on the motor or other components.
- Do not place objects where they may hinder opening and closing operations.
- Do not attach items to the rear sunshade.
- Keep the opening clean and clear of obstructions.
- Do not operate the rear sunshade continuously over long periods of time.

**Use only floor mats designed specifically for vehicles of the same model and model year as your vehicle. Fix them securely in place onto the carpet.**




Fix the floor mat in place using the retaining hooks (clips) provided.

For details, refer to the floor mat retention clip installation instructions supplied with the clips.

## ⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause the driver's floor mat to slip, possibly interfering with the pedals while driving. An unexpectedly high speed may result or it may become difficult to stop the vehicle, leading to a serious accident.

**■ When installing the driver's floor mat**

- Do not use floor mats designed for other models or different model year vehicles, even if they are Lexus Genuine floor mats.
- Only use floor mats designed for the driver's seat.
- Always install the floor mat securely using the retaining hooks (clips) provided.
- Do not use two or more floor mats on top of each other.
- Do not place the floor mat bottom-side up or upside-down.

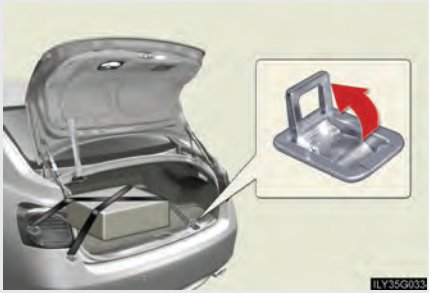
## CAUTION

### Before driving




- Check that the floor mat is securely fixed in the right place with all the provided retaining hooks (clips). Be especially careful to perform this check after cleaning the floor.
- With the engine stopped and the shift lever in "P", fully depress each pedal to the floor to make sure it does not interfere with the floor mat.

## Cargo hooks

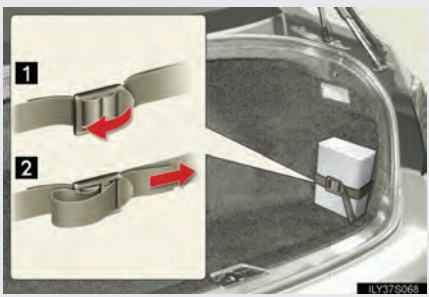


Cargo hooks are provided for securing loose items.

## Shopping bag hooks

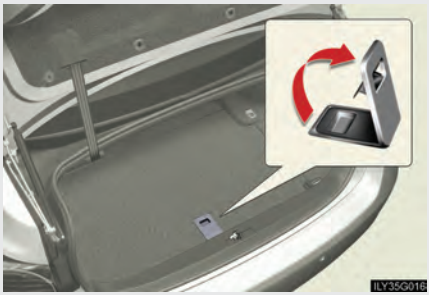


## First-aid kit storage belt




1 Loosen
2 Tighten

### Luggage mat

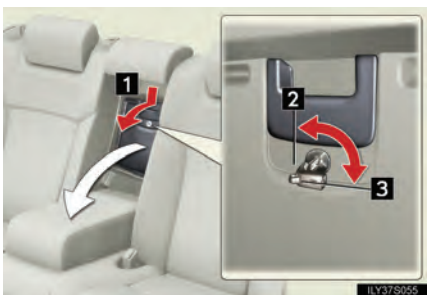


Pull the lever upwards when lifting the luggage mat up.



The lever can be hooked on the edge of the trunk.

## Trunk storage extension




Pull down the rear armrest.

1 Open (push down the handle)
2 Unlock with the mechanical key
3 Lock with the mechanical key

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ While driving**

- To avoid injury, always return the cargo hooks to their positions when they are not in use.
- Always keep the trunk storage extension door closed to reduce the chance of injury in case of an accident or sudden stop.

## NOTICE

**■ When closing the trunk**

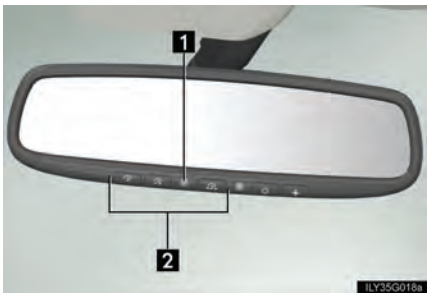
Do not leave the luggage mat lever hooked on the edge of the trunk.
The luggage mat may get damaged.

**The garage door opener can be programmed to operate garage doors, gates, entry doors, door locks, home lighting systems, security systems, and other devices.**

The garage door opener (HomeLink® Universal Transceiver) is manufactured under license from HomeLink®.

## Programming the HomeLink® (for U.S.A. owners)

The HomeLink® compatible transceiver in your vehicle has 3 buttons which can be programmed to operate 3 different devices. Refer to the programming method below appropriate for the device.




1 Indicator
2 Buttons

### Programming the HomeLink®




Point the remote control transmitter for the device 1 to 3 in. (25 to 75 mm) from the HomeLink® control buttons.

Keep the HomeLink® indicator light in view while programming.




Press and hold one of the HomeLink® buttons and the transmitter button. When the HomeLink® indicator light changes from a slow to a rapid flash after 20 seconds, release both buttons.




Test the HomeLink® operation by pressing the newly programmed button.

If a HomeLink® button has been programmed for a garage door, check to see if the garage door opens and closes. If the garage door does not operate, see if your remote control transmitter is of the rolling code type. Press and hold the programmed HomeLink® button. The remote control transmitter is of the rolling code type if the HomeLink® indicator light flashes rapidly for 2 seconds and then remains lit. If your transmitter is of the rolling code type, proceed to the heading "Programming a rolling code system".

STEP 4 Repeat the steps above to program another device for each of the remaining HomeLink® buttons.

### Programming a Rolling Code system

If your device is Rolling Code equipped, follow the steps under the heading "Programming the HomeLink®" before proceeding with the steps listed below.

STEP 1 Locate the learn button on the ceiling mounted garage door opener motor. The exact location and color of the button may vary by brand of garage door opener motor.

Refer to the operation manual supplied with the garage door opener motor for the location of the learn button.

STEP 2 Press the learn button.

Following this step, you have 30 seconds in which to initiate step 3 below.

STEP 3 Press and hold the vehicle's programmed HomeLink® button for 2 seconds and release it. Repeat this step once again. The garage door may open.

If the garage door opens, the programming process is complete. If the door does not open, press and release the button a third time. This third press and release will complete the programming process by opening the garage door.

The ceiling mounted garage door opener motor should now recognize the HomeLink® transceiver and operate the garage door.

STEP 4 Repeat the steps above to program another rolling code system for any of the remaining HomeLink® buttons.

■ **Programming an entry gate (for U.S.A. owners)/Programming all devices in the Canadian market**

STEP 1 Place your transmitter 1 to 3 in. (25 to 75 mm) away from the surface of the HomeLink®.

Keep the indicator light on the HomeLink® in view while programming.

STEP 2 Press and hold the selected HomeLink® button.

STEP 3 Repeatedly press and release (cycle) the device's remote control button for two seconds each until step 4 is completed.

STEP 4 When the indicator light on the HomeLink® compatible transceiver starts to flash rapidly, release the buttons.

STEP 5 Test the operation of the HomeLink® by pressing the newly programmed button. Check to see if the gate/device operates correctly.

STEP 6 Repeat the steps above to program another device for each of the remaining HomeLink® buttons.

■ **Programming other devices**

To program other devices such as home security systems, home door locks or lighting, contact your authorized Lexus dealer for assistance.

■ **Reprogramming a button**

The individual HomeLink® buttons cannot be erased but can be reprogrammed. To reprogram a button, follow the "Reprogramming a HomeLink® button" instructions.

## Operating the HomeLink®

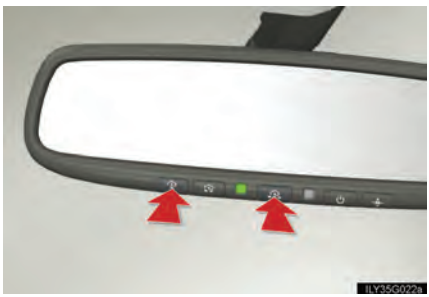
Press the appropriate HomeLink® button. The HomeLink® indicator light on the HomeLink® transceiver should turn on.

The HomeLink® continues to send a signal for up to 20 seconds as long as the button is pressed.

## Reprogramming a HomeLink® button

Press and hold the desired HomeLink® button. After 20 seconds, the HomeLink® indicator light will start flashing slowly. Next, while still pressing and holding the HomeLink® button, press and hold the button on the transmitter until the HomeLink® indicator light changes from a slow to a rapid flash.

## Erasing the entire HomeLink® memory (all three programs)



Press and hold the 2 outside buttons for 20 seconds until the indicator light flashes.

If you sell your vehicle, be sure to erase the programs stored in the HomeLink® memory.

■ **Before programming**

- Install a new battery in the remote control transmitter.
- The battery side of the remote control transmitter must be pointed away from the HomeLink® button.

■ **Certification for the garage door opener**

FCC ID: NZLWZLHL4

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of the IC Rules.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

WARNING: This transmitter has been tested and complies with FCC and IC rules. Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the device.

■ **When support is necessary**

Visit on the web at www.homelink.com or call 1-800-355-3515

**⚠ CAUTION**

■ **When programming a garage door or other remote control devices**

The garage door on other devices may operate, so ensure people and objects are out of danger to prevent potential harm.

■ **Conforming to federal safety standards**

Do not use the HomeLink® Compatible Transceiver with any garage door opener or device that lacks safety stop and reverse features as required by federal safety standards.
This includes any garage door that cannot detect an obstruction object. A door or device without these features increases the risk of death or serious injury.

The compass on the inside rear view mirror indicates the direction in which the vehicle is heading.

## Operation

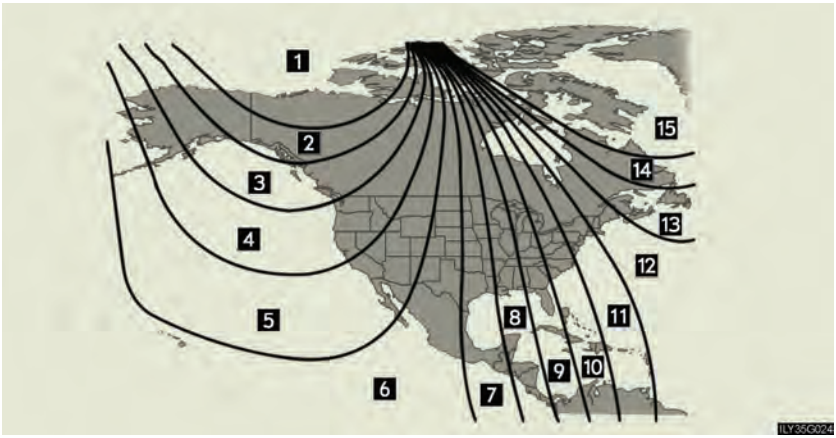



To turn the compass on or off, press the button for more than 3 seconds.

## Displays and directions

| Display | Direction |
|---|---|
| N | North |
| NE | Northeast |
| E | East |
| SE | Southeast |
| S | South |
| SW | Southwest |
| W | West |
| NW | Northwest |

## Calibrating the compass

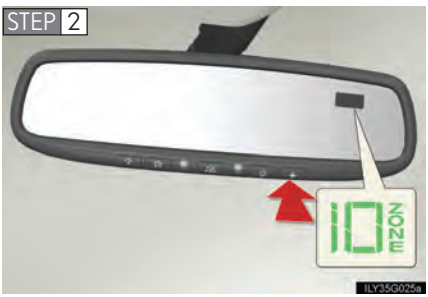



The direction display deviates from the true direction determined by the earth's magnetic field. The amount of deviation varies according to the geographic position of the vehicle.

If you cross over a map boundary shown in illustration, the compass will deviate.
To obtain higher precision or perfect calibration, refer to the following.

### Deviation calibration

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle where it is safe to drive in a circle.




Press and hold the switch.
A number (1 to 15) appears on the compass display.

STEP 3 Referring to the map above, press the switch to select the number of the zone you are in.

STEP 4 Wait a few seconds until the compass direction is displayed.
The calibration is complete.

### Circling calibration



If "CAL" appears on the display, drive the vehicle at 5 mph (8 km/h) or less in a circle until a direction is displayed.

If there is not enough space to drive in a circle, drive around the block until the direction is displayed.

### Conditions unfavorable to correct operation

The compass may not show the correct direction in the following conditions:

- The vehicle is stopped immediately after turning.
- The vehicle is on an inclined surface.
- The vehicle is in a place where the earth's magnetic field is subject to interference by artificial magnetic fields (underground car park/parking lot, under a steel tower, between buildings, roof car park/parking lot, near an intersection, near a large vehicle, etc.).
- The vehicle has become magnetized.
(There is a magnet or metal object near the inside rear view mirror.)
- The 12 volt battery has been disconnected.
- A door is open.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ While driving**

Do not adjust the display.
Be sure to adjust the display only when the vehicle is stopped.

**■ When doing the circling calibration**

Be sure to secure a wide space, and watch out for people and vehicles in the neighborhood. Do not violate any local traffic rules while performing circling calibration.

## ⚠ NOTICE

**■ To avoid the compass malfunctions**

Do not place magnets or any metal objects near the inside rear view mirror.
Doing this may cause a malfunction of the compass sensor.

**■ To ensure normal operation of the compass**

- Do not perform circling calibration of the compass in a place where the earth's magnetic field is subject to interference by artificial magnetic fields.
- During calibration, do not operate electric systems (moon roof, power windows, etc.) as they may interfere with the calibration.

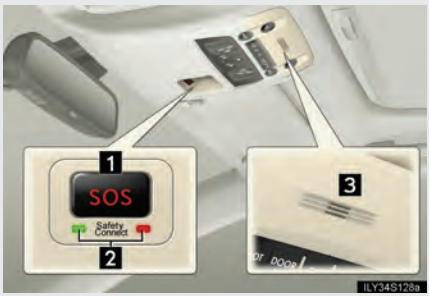
# Safety Connect*

Safety Connect is a subscription-based telematics service that uses Global Positioning System (GPS) data and embedded cellular technology to provide safety and security features to subscribers. Safety Connect is supported by Lexus' designated response center, which operates 24 hours per day, 7 days per week.

Safety Connect service is available by subscription on select, telematics hardware-equipped vehicles.

By using the Safety Connect service, you are agreeing to be bound by the Telematics Subscription Service Agreement and its Terms and Conditions, as in effect and amended from time to time, a current copy of which is available at Lexus.com. All use of the Safety Connect service is subject to such then-applicable Terms and Conditions.

## System components




1 "SOS" button
2 LED light indicators
3 Microphone



*: If equipped

■ **Services**

Subscribers have the following Safety Connect services available:

- Automatic Collision Notification*
  Helps drivers receive necessary response from emergency service providers. (→P. 424)

  *: U.S. Patent No. 7,508,298 B2
- Stolen Vehicle Location
  Helps drivers in the event of vehicle theft. (→P. 425)
- Emergency Assistance Button (SOS)
  Connects drivers to response-center support. (→P. 425)
- Enhanced Roadside Assistance
  Provides drivers various on-road assistance. (→P. 425)

■ **Subscription**

After you have signed the Telematics Subscription Service Agreement and are enrolled, you can begin receiving services.

A variety of subscription terms is available for purchase. Contact your Lexus dealer, call 1-800-25-LEXUS (1-800-255-3987) or push the "SOS" button in your vehicle for further subscription details.

■ **Safety Connect Services Information**

- Phone calls using the vehicles Bluetooth® technology will not be possible during Safety Connect.
- Safety Connect is available beginning Fall 2009 on select Lexus models. Contact with the Safety Connect response center is dependent upon the telematics device being in operative condition, cellular connection availability, and GPS satellite signal reception, which can limit the ability to reach the response center or receive emergency service support. Enrollment and Telematics Subscription Service Agreement required. A variety of subscription terms is available; charges vary by subscription term selected.
- Safety Connect services will function in the United States, including Hawaii and Alaska, and in Canada. The services will not function outside of the United States in countries other than Canada. For details about the service, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Safety Connect services are not subject to section 255 of the Telecommunications Act and the device is not TTY compatible.

■ **Languages**

The Safety Connect response center will offer support in multiple languages. The Safety Connect system will offer voice prompts in English and Spanish. Please indicate your language of choice when enrolling.

■ **When contacting the response center**

You may be unable to contact the response center if the network is busy.

## Safety Connect LED light Indicators

When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode, the red indicator light comes on for 2 seconds then turns off. Afterward, the green indicator light comes on, indicating that the service is active.
The following indicator light patterns indicate specific system usage conditions:

- Green indicator light on = Active service
- Green indicator light flashing = Safety Connect call in process
- Red indicator light (except at vehicle start-up) = System malfunction (contact your Lexus dealer)
- No indicator light (off) = Safety Connect service not active

## Safety Connect services

### Automatic Collision Notification

In case of either airbag deployment or severe collision, the system is designed to automatically call the response center. The responding agent receives the vehicle's location and attempts to speak with the vehicle occupants to assess the level of emergency. If the occupants are unable to communicate, the agent automatically treats the call as an emergency, contacts the nearest emergency services provider to describe the situation, and requests that assistance be sent to the location.

### Stolen Vehicle Location

If your vehicle is stolen, Safety Connect can work with local authorities to assist them in locating and recovering the vehicle. After filing a police report, call the Safety Connect response center at 1-800-25-LEXUS (1-800-255-3987) and follow the prompts for Safety Connect to initiate this service.

In addition to assisting law enforcement with recovery of a stolen vehicle, Safety-Connect-equipped vehicle location data may, under certain circumstances, be shared with third parties to locate your vehicle. Further information is available at Lexus.com.

### Emergency Assistance Button ("SOS")

In the event of an emergency on the road, push the "SOS" button to reach the Safety Connect response center. The answering agent will determine your vehicle's location, assess the emergency, and dispatch the necessary assistance required.

If you accidentally press the "SOS" button, tell the response-center agent that you are not experiencing an emergency.

### Enhanced Roadside Assistance

Enhanced Roadside Assistance adds GPS data to the already included warranty-based Lexus roadside service.
Subscribers can press the "SOS" button to reach a Safety Connect response-center agent, who can help with a wide range of needs, such as: towing, flat tire, fuel delivery, etc. For a description of the Roadside Assistance services and their limitations, please see the Safety Connect Terms and Conditions, which are available at Lexus.com.

## Safety information for Safety Connect

Important! Read this information before using Safety Connect.

### Exposure to radio frequency signals

The Safety Connect to be installed in your vehicle is a low-power radio transmitter and receiver. It receives and also sends out radio frequency (RF) signals.
In August 1996, the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) adopted RF exposure guidelines with safety levels for mobile wireless phones. Those guidelines are consistent with the safety standards previously set by the following U.S. and international standards bodies.

- ANSI (American National Standards Institute) C95.1 [1992]
- NCRP (National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurement) Report 86 [1986]
- ICNIRP (International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection) [1996]

Those standards were based on comprehensive and periodic evaluations of the relevant scientific literature. Over 120 scientists, engineers, and physicians from universities, and government health agencies and industries reviewed the available body of research to develop the ANSI Standard (C95.1).

The design of Safety Connect complies with the FCC guidelines in addition to those standards.

■ **License**

Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:

4,901,307 5,490,165 5,056,109 5,504,773 5,101,501
5,506,865 5,109,390 5,511,073 5,228,054 5,535,239
5,267,261 5,544,196 5,267,262 5,568,483 5,337,338
5,600,754 5,414,796 5,657,420 5,416,797 5,659,569
5,710,784 5,778,338

■ **Certification for Lexus Enform with Safety Connect**

FCC ID: O9EGTM1

FCC ID: O6Y-CDMRF101

NOTE:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

# Maintenance and care 4


**4-1. Maintenance and care**

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior ..... 430

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior ..... 433

**4-2. Maintenance**

Maintenance requirements ..... 436

General maintenance ..... 438

Emission inspection and maintenance (I/M) programs ..... 441

**4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance**

Do-it-yourself service precautions ..... 442

Hood ..... 445

Positioning a floor jack ..... 446

Engine compartment ..... 448

Tires ..... 463

Tire inflation pressure ..... 473

Wheels ..... 477

Air conditioning filter ..... 479

Electronic key battery ..... 482

Checking and replacing fuses ..... 484

Headlight aim ..... 509

Light bulbs ..... 512

# Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior

**Perform the following to protect the vehicle and maintain it in prime condition.**

- Working from top to bottom, liberally apply water to the vehicle body, wheel wells and underside of the vehicle to remove any dirt and dust.

  Wash the vehicle body using a sponge or soft cloth, such as a chamois.
- For hard-to-remove marks, use car wash soap and rinse thoroughly with water.
- Wipe away any water.
- Wax the vehicle when the waterproof coating deteriorates.

  If water does not bead on a clean surface, apply wax when the vehicle body is cool.

■ **Automatic car washes**

- Fold the mirrors back before washing the vehicle.
- Brushes used in automatic car washes may scratch the vehicle surface and harm your vehicle's paint.
- Before entering an automatic car wash, check that the fuel filler door is closed.

■ **High pressure washers**

Do not allow the nozzles of the washers to come within close proximity of the windows and fuel filler door.

■ **Aluminum wheels**

- Remove any dirt immediately by using a neutral detergent. Do not use hard brushes or abrasive cleaners. Do not use strong or harsh chemical cleaners. Use the same mild detergent and wax as used on the paint.
- Do not use detergent on the wheels when they are hot, for example after driving for long distance in the hot weather.
- Wash detergent from the wheels immediately after use.

■ **Bumpers and side moldings**

Do not scrub with abrasive cleaners.

**⚠ CAUTION**

■ **Caution about the exhaust pipe**

Exhaust gasses cause the exhaust pipe to become quite hot.
When washing the vehicle, be careful not to touch the pipe until it has cooled sufficiently, as touching a hot exhaust pipe can cause burns.

## NOTICE

### To prevent paint deterioration and corrosion on the body and components (aluminum wheels etc.)

- Wash the vehicle immediately in the following cases:
  - After driving near the sea coast
  - After driving on salted roads
  - If you see coal tar or tree sap on the paint surface
  - If you see dead insects, insect droppings or bird droppings on the paint
  - After driving in an area contaminated with soot, oily smoke, mine dust, iron powder or chemical substances
  - If the vehicle becomes heavily soiled in dust or mud
  - If liquids such as benzene and gasoline are spilled on the paint surface
- If the paint is chipped or scratched, have it repaired immediately.
- To prevent the wheels from corroding, remove any dirt and store in a place with low humidity when storing the wheels.

### Cleaning the exterior lights

- Wash carefully. Do not use organic substances or scrub with a hard brush. This may damage the surfaces of the lights.
- Do not apply wax on the surfaces of the lights. Wax may cause damage to the lenses.

### When using an automatic car wash (with rain-sensing windshield wipers)




Set the wiper switch to off.
If the wiper switch is in "AUTO", the wipers may operate and the wiper blades may be damaged.

# Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior

**The following procedures will help protect your vehicle's interior and keep it in top condition:**

## Protecting the vehicle interior

Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner. Wipe dirty surfaces with a cloth dampened with lukewarm water.

## Cleaning the leather areas

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe any excess dirt and dust with a soft cloth dampened with diluted detergent.

  Use a diluted water solution of approximately 5% neutral wool detergent.
- Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off all remaining traces of detergent.
- Wipe the surface with a dry, soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture. Allow the leather to dry in a shaded and ventilated area.

## Synthetic leather areas

- Remove loose dirt using a vacuum cleaner.
- Apply a mild soap solution to the synthetic leather using a sponge or soft cloth.
- Allow the solution to soak in for a few minutes. Remove the dirt and wipe off the solution with a clean, damp cloth.

### Caring for leather areas

Lexus recommends cleaning the interior of the vehicle at least twice a year to maintain the quality of the vehicle's interior.

### Shampooing the carpets

There are several commercial foaming-type cleaners available. Use a sponge or brush to apply the foam. Rub in overlapping circles. Do not apply water. Excellent results are obtained by keeping the carpet as dry as possible.

### Seat belts

Clean with mild soap and lukewarm water using a cloth or sponge. Also check the belts periodically for excessive wear, fraying or cuts.

**CAUTION**

### Water in the vehicle

- Do not splash or spill liquid in the vehicle, such as on the floor or in the trunk. Doing so may cause electrical components etc. to malfunction or catch fire.
- Do not get any of the SRS components or wiring in the vehicle interior wet. (→P. 94)
  Electrical malfunction may cause the airbags to deploy or not function properly, resulting in death or serious injury.

### Cleaning the interior (especially instrument panel)

Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel may reflect off the windshield, obstructing the driver's view and leading to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ **Cleaning detergents**

- Do not use the following types of detergent, as they may discolor the vehicle interior or cause streaks or damage to painted surfaces.
  - Non-seat portions: Organic substances such as benzene or gasoline, alkaline or acidic solutions, dye, or bleach.
  - Seats: Acidic solutions, such as thinner, benzene, or alcohol.
- Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel's or other interior part's painted surface may be damaged.

■ **Preventing damage to leather surfaces**

Observe the following precautions to avoid damage to and deterioration of leather surfaces.

- Remove any dust or dirt on leather surfaces immediately.
- Do not expose the vehicle to direct sunlight for extended periods of time. Park the vehicle in the shade, especially during summer.
- Do not place items made of vinyl, plastic, or that contain wax on the upholstery, as they may stick to the leather surface if the vehicle interior heats up significantly.

■ **Water on the floor**

Do not wash the vehicle floor with water.
Vehicle systems such as the audio system may be damaged if water comes into contact with electrical components under the floor of the vehicle, and may also cause the body to rust.

■ **Cleaning the inside of the rear window**

- Do not use glass cleaner to clean the rear window, as this may cause damage to the rear window defogger heater wires. Use a cloth dampened with lukewarm water to gently wipe the window clean. Wipe the window in strokes running parallel to the heater wires.
- Be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires or antenna.

# Maintenance requirements

**To ensure safe and economical driving, day-to-day care and regular maintenance is essential. It is the owner's responsibility to perform regular checks. Lexus recommends the following maintenance.**

## General maintenance

Should be performed on a daily basis. This can be done by yourself or by a Lexus dealer.

## Scheduled maintenance

Should be performed at specified intervals according to the maintenance schedule.

For details about maintenance items and schedules, refer to the "Warranty and Services Guide/Owner's Manual Supplement/Scheduled Maintenance".

## Do-it-yourself maintenance

You can perform some maintenance procedures yourself.
Please be aware that do-it-yourself maintenance may affect warranty coverage.

The use of Lexus Repair Manuals is recommended.

For details about warranty coverage, see the separate "Owner's Guide", "Warranty and Services Guide", "Owner's Manual Supplement" or "Warranty Booklet".

■ **Repair and replacement**

It is recommended that genuine Lexus parts be used for repair to ensure performance of each system. If non-Lexus parts are used in replacement or if a repair shop other than a Lexus dealer performs repairs, confirm the warranty coverage.

■ **Allow inspection and repairs to be performed by a Lexus dealer**

- Lexus technicians are well-trained specialists and are kept up to date with the latest service information. They are well informed about the operations of all systems on your vehicle.
- Keep a copy of the repair order. It proves that the maintenance that has been performed is under warranty coverage. If any problem should arise while your vehicle is under warranty, your Lexus dealer will promptly take care of it.

**⚠ CAUTION**

■ **If your vehicle is not properly maintained**

It could result in serious damage to the vehicle and possible serious injury or death.

■ **Hazardous materials**

- Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and a wide variety of automobile components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and other reproductive harm. Work in a well ventilated area.
- Oils, fuels and fluids contained in vehicles as well as waste produced by component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Avoid exposure and wash any affected area immediately.
- 12 volt battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds which are known to cause brain damage. Wash your hands after handling. (→P. 459)
- Used engine oil contains chemicals that have been shown to cause cancer in laboratory animals. Avoid prolonged and repeated contact. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.

Listed below are the general maintenance items that should be performed at the intervals specified in the "Warranty and Services Guide/Owner's Manual Supplement". It is recommended that any problem you notice should be brought to the attention of your Lexus dealer or qualified service shop for advice.

## Engine compartment

| Items | Check points |
|---|---|
| Brake fluid | • At the correct level? (→P. 457) |
| Engine coolant | • At the correct level? (→P. 455) |
| Engine oil | • At the correct level? (→P. 451) |
| Exhaust system | • No fumes or strange sounds? |
| Radiator/condenser/hoses | • Not blocked with foreign matter? (→P. 457) |
| Washer fluid | • At the correct level? (→P. 462) |
| 12 volt battery | • Maintenance-free (→P. 459) |

## Vehicle interior

| Items | Check points |
|---|---|
| Accelerator pedal | • Moves smoothly (without uneven pedal effort or catching)? |
| Automatic transmission "Park" mechanism | • Can the vehicle be hold securely on an incline with the shift lever in "P"? |
| Brake pedal | • Moves smoothly?<br>• Does it have appropriate clearance and correct amount of free play? |
| Brakes | • Pulls to one side when applied?<br>• Loss of brake effectiveness?<br>• Spongy feeling brake pedal?<br>• Pedal almost touches floor? |
| Head restraints | • Move smoothly and lock securely? |
| Indicators/buzzers | • Function properly? |
| Lights | • Do all the lights come on?<br>• Headlights aimed correctly? (→P. 509) |
| Parking brake | • Moves smoothly?<br>• Can hold the vehicle securely on an incline? |
| Seat belts | • Does the seat belt system operate smoothly?<br>• Are the belts undamaged? |
| Seats | • Do the seat controls operate properly? |
| Steering wheel | • Moves smoothly?<br>• Has correct free play?<br>• No strange noises? |

## Vehicle exterior

| Items | Check points |
|---|---|
| Doors/trunk | • Operate smoothly? |
| Engine hood | • The lock system works properly? |
| Fluid leaks | • Is there any leakage after parking? |
| Tire | • Inflation pressure is correct?<br>• Tire surfaces not worn or damaged?<br>• Tires rotated according to the maintenance schedule?<br>• Wheel nuts are not loose? |

### ⚠ CAUTION

**■ If the engine is running**

Turn off the engine and ensure that there is adequate ventilation before performing maintenance checks.

# Emission inspection and maintenance (I/M) programs

**Some states have vehicle emission inspection programs which include OBD (On Board Diagnostics) checks. The OBD system monitors the operation of the emission control system.**

## If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on

The OBD system determines that a problem exists somewhere in the emission control system. Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test and may need to be repaired. Contact your Lexus dealer to service the vehicle.

## Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test:

- When the 12 volt battery is disconnected or discharged

  Readiness codes that are set during ordinary driving are erased. Also, depending on your driving habits, the readiness codes may not be completely set.

- When the fuel tank cap is loose

  The malfunction indicator lamp comes on as a temporary malfunction and your vehicle may not pass the I/M test.

## When the malfunction indicator lamp goes off after several driving trips

The error code in the OBD system will not be cleared unless the vehicle is driven 40 or more times.

## If your vehicle does not pass the I/M test

Contact your Lexus dealer to prepare the vehicle for re-testing.

# Do-it-yourself service precautions

**If you perform maintenance yourself, be sure to follow the correct procedure given in these sections.**

| Items | Parts and tools |
|---|---|
| 12 volt battery condition (→P. 459) | • Grease<br>• Conventional wrench (for terminal clamp bolts) |
| Brake fluid level (→P. 457) | • FMVSS No.116 DOT 3 or SAE J1703 brake fluid<br>• Rag or paper towel<br>• Funnel (used only for adding brake fluid) |
| Engine coolant level (→P. 455) | • "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology.<br>For the U.S.A.:<br>"Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is pre-mixed with 50% coolant and 50% deionized water.<br>For Canada:<br>"Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is pre-mixed with 55% coolant and 45% deionized water.<br>• Funnel (used only for adding coolant) |

| Items | | Parts and tools |
|---|---|---|
| Engine oil level | (→P. 451) | • "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent<br>• Rag or paper towel, funnel (used only for adding engine oil) |
| Fuses | (→P. 484) | • Fuse with same amperage rating as original |
| Headlight aim | (→P. 509) | • Phillips-head screwdriver |
| Radiator and condenser | (→P. 457) | — |
| Tire inflation pressure | (→P. 473) | • Tire pressure gauge<br>• Compressed air source |
| Washer fluid | (→P. 462) | • Water or washer fluid containing antifreeze (for winter use)<br>• Funnel |

## ⚠ CAUTION

The engine compartment contains many mechanisms and fluids that may move suddenly, become hot, or become electrically energized. To avoid death or serious injury, observe the following precautions.

**■ When working on the engine compartment**

- Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from the moving fan and engine drive belt.
- Be careful not to touch the engine, radiator, exhaust manifold, etc. right after driving as they may be hot. Oil and other fluids may also be hot.
- Do not leave anything that may burn easily, such as paper or rags, in the engine compartment.
- Do not smoke, cause sparks or expose an open flame to fuel or the 12 volt battery. Fuel and 12 volt battery fumes are flammable.
- Be extremely cautious when working on the 12 volt battery. It contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid.

**■ When working near the electric cooling fan or radiator grille**

Be sure the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is OFF.
With the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in IGNITION ON mode, the electric cooling fan may automatically start to run if the air conditioning is on and/or the coolant temperature is high. (→P. 457)

**■ Safety glasses**

Wear safety glasses to prevent flying or falling material, fluid spray, etc. from getting in the eyes.

## ⚠ NOTICE

**■ If you remove the air cleaner filter**

Driving with the air cleaner filter removed may cause excessive engine wear due to dirt in the air. Also a backfire could cause a fire in the engine compartment.

**Release the lock from the inside of the vehicle to open the hood.**

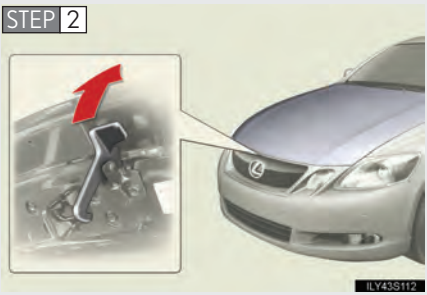
STEP 1



Pull the hood lock release lever.

The hood will pop up slightly.

STEP 2



Lift the hood catch and lift the hood.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Pre-driving check**

Check that the hood is fully closed and locked.
If the hood is not locked properly it may open while the vehicle is in motion and cause an accident, which may result in death or serious injury.

# Positioning a floor jack

When raising your vehicle with a floor jack, position the jack correctly. Improper placement may damage your vehicle or cause injury.

▶ Front




▶ Rear



## ⚠ CAUTION

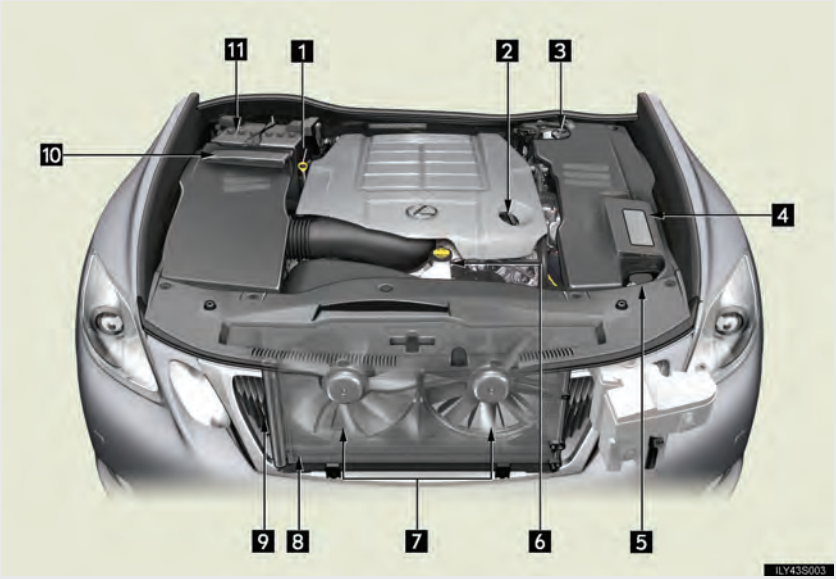
### ■ When raising your vehicle

Make sure to observe the following to reduce the possibility of death or serious injury.



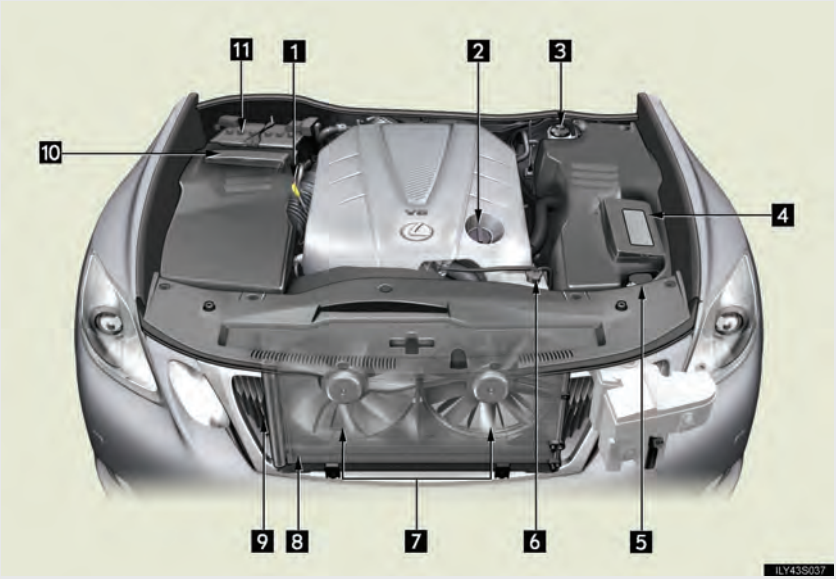

- Lift up the vehicle using a floor jack such as the one shown in the illustration.
- When using a floor jack, follow the instructions of the manual provided with the jack.
- Do not use the jack that was supplied with your vehicle.
- Do not put any part of your body or get underneath the vehicle supported only by the floor jack.
- Always use floor jack and/or automotive jack stands on a solid, flat, level surface.
- Do not start the engine while the vehicle is supported by the floor jack.
- Stop the vehicle on level firm ground, firmly set the parking brake and put the shift lever in "P".
- Make sure to set the floor jack properly at the jack point.
  Raising the vehicle with an improperly positioned floor jack will damage the vehicle and may cause the vehicle to fall off the floor jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is in the vehicle.
- When raising the vehicle, do not place any objects on top of or underneath the floor jack.

▶ GS460




1 Engine oil level dipstick (→P. 451)
2 Engine oil filler cap (→P. 452)
3 Brake fluid reservoir (→P. 457)
4 Fuse box (→P. 484)
5 Washer fluid tank (→P. 462)
6 Engine coolant reservoir (→P. 455)
7 Electric cooling fans
8 Condenser (→P. 457)
9 Radiator (→P. 457)
10 Fuse box (→P. 484)
11 12 volt battery (→P. 459)

▶ GS350




1 Engine oil level dipstick (→P. 451)
2 Engine oil filler cap (→P. 452)
3 Brake fluid reservoir (→P. 457)
4 Fuse box (→P. 484)
5 Washer fluid tank (→P. 462)
6 Engine coolant reservoir (→P. 455)
7 Electric cooling fans
8 Condenser (→P. 457)
9 Radiator (→P. 457)
10 Fuse box (→P. 484)
11 12 volt battery (→P. 459)

## Engine compartment cover

### Removing the cover

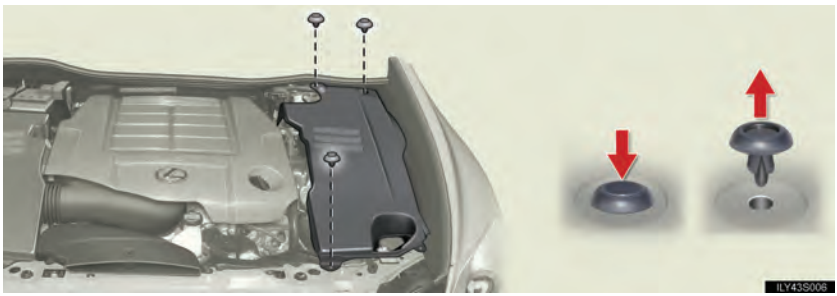
▶ Front



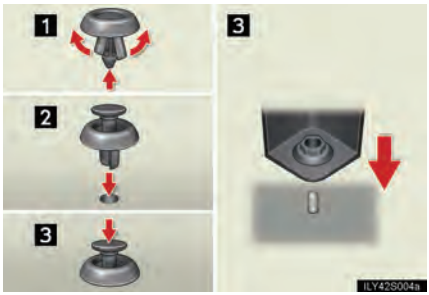

▶ Right-hand side




▶ Left-hand side



### Installing the clips



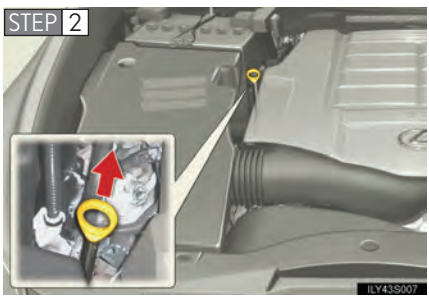

1 Push up center portion
2 Insert
3 Press

## Engine oil

With the engine at operating temperature and turned off, check the oil level on the dipstick.

### Checking the engine oil

STEP 1 Park the vehicle on level ground. After turning off the engine, wait more than five minutes for the oil to drain back into the bottom of the engine.



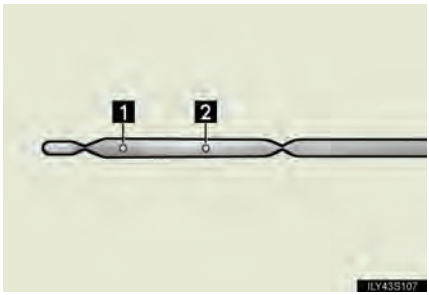

Hold a rag under the end and pull the dipstick out.

STEP 3 Wipe the dipstick clean.

STEP 4 Reinsert the dipstick fully.

STEP 5 Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out and check the oil level.

STEP 6 Wipe the dipstick and reinsert it fully.




1 Low
2 Full

## Adding engine oil




If the oil level is below or near the low level mark, add engine oil of the same type as already in the engine.

Make sure to check the oil type and prepare the items needed before adding oil.

| | |
|---|---|
| Engine oil selection | →P. 590 |
| Oil quantity (Low → Full) | 1.6 qt. (1.5 L, 1.3 Imp.qt.) |
| Items | Clean funnel |

STEP 1 Remove the oil filler cap.

STEP 2 Add engine oil slowly, checking the dipstick.

STEP 3 Install the filler cap, turning it clockwise.

■ **Engine oil consumption**

- The amount of engine oil consumed depends on the oil viscosity, the quality of the oil and the way the vehicle is driven.
- More oil is consumed under driving conditions such as high speeds, frequent acceleration and deceleration.
- A new engine consumes more oil.
- When judging the amount of oil consumption, keep in mind that the oil may have become diluted, making it difficult to judge the true level accurately.
- Oil consumption: Max. 1.1 qt./600 miles, 0.9 Imp.qt./600 miles (1.0 L per 1000 km). If the vehicle consumes more than this amount, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Resetting the engine oil maintenance data (U.S.A. only)**

Perform the following steps:

STEP 1 Press the "DISP" switch (→P. 155) to change the multi-information display to blank.

STEP 2 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to OFF.

STEP 3 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode with the trip meter reset button held down.

STEP 4 Keep pressing the button for longer than 7 seconds after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.




After the above operation, the message shown in the left will appear on the display.

The master warning light and tone will turn on. After 5 seconds, the system reset is completed.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Used engine oil**

- Used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants which may cause skin disorders such as inflammation or skin cancer, so care should be taken to avoid prolonged and repeated contact. To remove used engine oil from your skin, wash thoroughly with soap and water.
- Dispose of used oil and filters only in a safe and acceptable manner. Do not dispose of used oil and filters in household trash, in sewers or onto the ground. Call your Lexus dealer, service station or auto parts store for information concerning recycling or disposal.
- Do not leave used engine oil within the reach of children.

## ⚠ NOTICE

**■ To prevent serious engine damage**

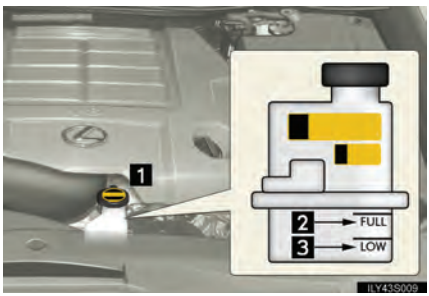
Check the oil level on regular basis.

**■ When replacing the engine oil**

- Be careful not to spill engine oil on the vehicle components.
- Avoid overfilling, or the engine could be damaged.
- Check the oil level on the dipstick every time you refill the vehicle.
- Be sure the engine oil filler cap is properly tightened.

## Engine coolant

The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the “FULL” and “LOW” lines on the reservoir when the engine is cold.




1 Reservoir cap
2 “FULL”
3 “LOW”

If the level is on or below the “LOW” line, add coolant up to the “FULL” line.

### If the coolant level drops within a short time after replenishing

Visually check the radiator, hoses, reservoir cap, radiator cap, drain cock and water pump.
If you cannot find a leak, have your Lexus dealer pressure test the cap and check for leaks in the cooling system.

### Coolant selection

Only use “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” or similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology.

U.S.A.: “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is a mixture of 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. (Enabled: -31°F [-35°C])

Canada: “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is a mixture of 55% coolant and 45% deionized water. (Enabled: -44°F [-42°C])

For more details about coolant, contact your Lexus dealer.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**When the engine is hot**

Do not remove the radiator and reservoir cap.
The cooling system may be under pressure and may spray hot coolant if the cap is removed, causing burns or other injuries.

## NOTICE

**When adding the coolant**

Coolant is neither plain water nor straight antifreeze. The correct mixture of water and antifreeze must be used to provide proper lubrication, corrosion protection and cooling. Be sure to read the antifreeze or coolant label.

**If you spill coolant**

Be sure to wash it off with water to prevent it from damaging parts or paint.

## Radiator and condenser

Check the radiator and condenser and clear any foreign objects.
If either of the above parts are extremely dirty or you are not sure of their condition, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**When the engine is hot**

Do not touch the radiator or condenser, as they may be hot and you may be burned.

## Brake fluid

### Checking fluid level




The brake fluid level should be between the "MAX" and "MIN" lines on the tank.

Make sure to check the fluid type and prepare the necessary items.

### Adding fluid

| | |
|---|---|
| Fluid type | FMVSS No.116 DOT 3 or SAE J1703 brake fluid |
| Items | Clean funnel |

**Brake fluid can absorb moisture from the air**

Excess moisture in the fluid can cause a dangerous loss of braking efficiency. Use only newly opened brake fluid.

**CAUTION**

**When filling the reservoir**

Take care because brake fluid can harm your hands or eyes and damage painted surfaces.
If fluid gets in your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water immediately.

If you still experience discomfort, see a doctor.

**NOTICE**

**If the fluid level is low or high**

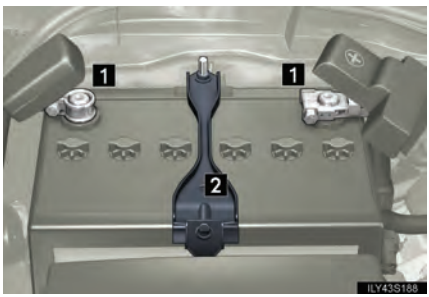
It is normal for the brake fluid level to go down slightly as the brake pads wear or when the fluid level in the accumulator is high.
If the reservoir needs frequent refilling, it may indicate a serious problem.

## 12 volt battery

Check the battery as follows.

### Exterior

Make sure that the battery terminals are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, cracks, or loose clamps.




1 Terminals
2 Hold-down clamp

### Before recharging

When recharging, the battery produces hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Therefore, before recharging:

- If recharging with the battery installed on the vehicle, be sure to disconnect the ground cable.
- Make sure the power switch on the charger is off when connecting and disconnecting the charger cables to the battery.

■ **After recharging/reconnecting the battery**

In some cases, the engine may not start. Follow one or both of the following procedures:

- After opening and closing the driver's door, wait 10 seconds then attempt to start the engine. (If the system does not start first time, repeat the procedure.)
- With the shift lever in "P" and the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is OFF, open and close any door, then attempt to start the engine.

If the system will not start even after multiple attempts at both methods, contact your Lexus dealer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

■ **Chemicals in the battery**

A battery contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid and may produce hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. To reduce the risk of death or serious injury, take the following precautions while working on or near battery:

- Do not cause sparks by touching the battery terminals with tools.
- Do not smoke or light a match near the battery.
- Avoid contact with eyes, skin and clothes.
- Never inhale or swallow electrolyte.
- Wear protective safety glasses when working near the battery.
- Keep children away from the battery.

■ **Where to safely charge the battery**

Always charge the battery in an open area. Do not charge the battery in a garage or closed room where there is not sufficient ventilation.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**How to recharge the battery**

Only perform a slow charge (5A or less). The battery may explode if charged at a quicker rate.

**Emergency measures regarding electrolyte**

- If electrolyte gets in your eyes
  Flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth while traveling to the nearest medical facility.
- If electrolyte gets on your skin
  Wash the affected area thoroughly. If you feel pain or a burning sensation, seek medical attention immediately.
- If electrolyte gets on your clothes
  It can soak through clothing on to your skin. Immediately take off the clothing and follow the procedure above if necessary.
- If you accidentally swallow electrolyte
  Drink a large quantity of water or milk. Follow with milk of magnesia, beaten raw egg or vegetable oil. Get emergency medical attention immediately.

## ⚠ NOTICE

**When recharging the battery**

Never recharge the battery while the engine is on. Also, be sure all accessories are turned off.

## Washer fluid



If any washer does not work or the warning message appears on the multi-information display, the washer tank may be empty. Add washer fluid.

### CAUTION

**When refilling the washer fluid**

Do not refill the washer fluid when the engine is hot or running, as the washer fluid contains alcohol and may catch the fire if spilled on the engine etc.

### NOTICE

**Do not use any fluid other than washer fluid**

Do not use soapy water or engine antifreeze instead of washer fluid.
Doing so may cause streaking on the vehicle's painted surfaces.

**Diluting washer fluid**

Dilute washer fluid with water as necessary.
Refer to the freezing temperatures listed on the washer fluid tank.

Replace the tires when the treadwear indicators show.

## Checking tires

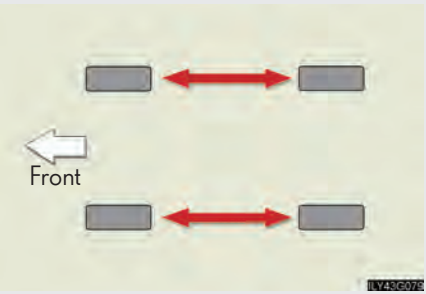



1 New tread
2 Treadwear indicator
3 Worn tread

The location of treadwear indicators is shown by the "TWI" or "△" marks, etc., molded on the sidewall of each tire.

Check spare tire condition and inflation pressure if not rotated.

## Tire rotation




Rotate the tires in the order shown.

To equalize tire wear and extend tire life, Lexus recommends that tire rotation is carried out at the same interval as tire inspection.

## The tire pressure warning system

Your Lexus is equipped with a tire pressure warning system that uses tire pressure warning valves and transmitters to detect low tire inflation pressure before serious problems arise. (→P. 537)

## Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When replacing tires or wheels, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must also be installed.

When new tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are installed, new tire pressure warning valve and transmitter ID codes must be registered in the tire pressure warning computer and tire pressure warning system must be initialized. Have tire pressure warning valve and transmitter ID codes registered by your Lexus dealer. (→P. 466)

## Initializing the tire pressure warning system

### The tire pressure warning system must be initialized in the following circumstances:

- When changing the tire inflation pressure by changing traveling speed or load weight, etc.
- When changing the tire size.

When the tire pressure warning system is initialized, the current tire inflation pressure is set as the pressure benchmark.

## How to initialize the tire pressure warning system

STEP 1 Park the vehicle in safe place and turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to OFF.

While the vehicle is moving, initialization is not performed.

STEP 2 Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. (→P. 598)

Make sure to adjust the tire pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. The tire pressure warning system will operate based on this pressure level.

STEP 3 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode.

STEP 4




Push and hold the tire pressure warning reset switch until the tire pressure warning light blinks slowly three times and the message "PRESSURE INITIAL" appears on the multi-information display.

STEP 5 Wait for a few minutes with the IGNITION ON mode, and then turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to OFF.

## Registering and selecting ID codes

### Registering ID codes

2 sets of tire pressure warning valve and transmitter ID codes can be registered. Once a second set of tires is registered at "2nd", you can switch between tire set settings simply by pressing the tire pressure warning select switch.

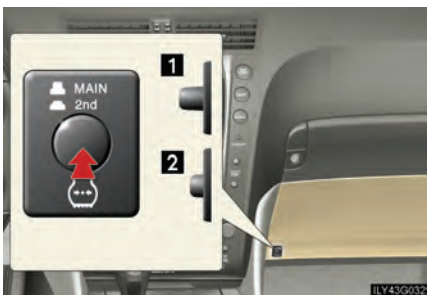
There are 2 settings:

"MAIN" position: The ID code of the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter on the tires originally installed on the vehicle is registered.

"2nd" position: The ID code is not registered. When you replace a new set of tires, purchase tire pressure warning valves and transmitters from your Lexus dealer and have the new ID code registered by your Lexus dealer.

### Selecting ID codes

When replacing tires, make sure to select the ID code set that matches the new tire set. If the tire pressure warning select switch is set to the wrong tire setting, the tire pressure warning system will not operate properly. After driving for about 20 minutes, the tire pressure warning light comes on after blinking for 1 minute to indicate a system malfunction.




1 "MAIN"
2 "2nd"

### When to replace your vehicle's tires

Tires should be replaced if:

- You have tire damage such as cuts, splits, cracks deep enough to expose the fabric or bulges indicating internal damage
- A tire goes flat repeatedly or cannot be properly repaired due to the size or location of a cut or other damage

If you are not sure, consult with your Lexus dealer.

### Replacing tires and wheels

If the ID code of the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is not registered, the tire pressure warning system will not work properly. After driving for about 20 minutes, the tire pressure warning light comes on after blinking for 1 minute to indicate a system malfunction.

### Tire life

Any tire over 6 years old must be checked by a qualified technician even if they have seldom or never been used or damage is not obvious.

### If the tread wears down below 0.16 in. (4 mm) on snow tires

The effectiveness of snow tires is lost.

### Low profile tires

Generally, low profile tires will wear more rapidly and tire grip performance will be reduced on snowy and/or icy roads when compared to standard tires. Be sure to use snow tires or snow chains on snowy and/or icy roads and drive carefully at a speed appropriate for road and weather conditions.

### Maximum load of tire

Check that the maximum load of the replacement tire is greater than 1/2 of the Gross Axle Weight Ratings (GAWR) of either the front axle or the rear axle, whichever is greater.




For the GAWR, see the Certification Label. For the maximum load of the tire, see the load limit at maximum cold tire inflation pressure mentioned on the sidewall of the tire. (→P. 604)

### Tire types

1 Summer tires

Summer tires are high-speed performance tires best suited to highway driving under dry conditions. Since summer tires do not have the same traction performance as snow tires, summer tires are inadequate for driving on snow-covered or icy roads. For driving on snow-covered roads or icy roads, the use of snow tires is recommended. When installing snow tires, be sure to replace all four tires.

2 All season tires

All season tires are designed to provide better traction in snow and to be adequate for driving in most winter conditions, as well as for use year round. All season tires, however, do not have adequate traction performance compared with snow tires in heavy or loose snow. Also, all season tires fall short in acceleration and handling performance compared with summer tires in highway driving.

3 Snow tires

For driving on snow-covered roads or icy roads, we recommend using snow tires. If you need snow tires, select tires of the same size, construction and load capacity as the originally installed tires. Since your vehicle has radial tires as original equipment, make sure your snow tires also have radial construction. Do not install studded tires without first checking local regulations for possible restriction. Snow tires should be installed on all wheels. (→P. 219)

■ **Initializing the tire pressure warning system**

Initialize the tires with the tire inflation pressure adjusted to the specified level.

■ **If you push the tire pressure warning reset switch accidentally**

If initialization is performed, adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level and initialize the system again.

■ **When the initialization of the tire pressure warning system has failed**

Initialization can be completed in a few minutes. However, in the following cases, the settings have not been recorded and the system will not operate properly. If repeated attempts to record tire inflation pressure settings are unsuccessful, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

- When operating the tire pressure warning reset switch, the tire pressure warning light does not flash 3 times and the setting message does not appear on the multi-information display.
- After carrying out the initialization procedure, the tire pressure warning light blinks for 1 minute then stays on after driving for 20 minutes.

■ **Routine tire inflation pressure checks**

The tire pressure warning system does not replace routine tire inflation pressure checks. Make sure to check tire inflation pressure as part of your routine of daily vehicle checks.

■ **Tire pressure warning system certification**

FCC ID: PAXPMV107J

FCC ID: HYQ13BCG

IC ID: 3729A-PMV107J

IC ID: 1551A-13BCG

▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

NOTE:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

NOTE:
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Tire pressure warning system operation**

The tire pressure warning system may not provide warning immediately if a tire bursts or if sudden air leakage occurs.

**■ When inspecting or replacing tires**

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents. Failure to do so may cause damage to parts of the drive train, as well as dangerous handling characteristics, which may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not mix tires of different makes, models or tread patterns.
  Also, do not mix tires of remarkably different treadwear.
- Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended by Lexus.
- Do not mix differently constructed tires (radial, bias-belted or bias-ply tires).
- Do not mix summer, all season and winter tires.
- Do not use tires that have been used on another vehicle.
  Do not use tires if you do not know how they were used previously.

**■ When initializing the tire pressure warning system**

Do not push the tire pressure warning reset switch without first adjusting the tire inflation pressure to the specified level. Otherwise, the tire pressure warning light may not come on even if the tire inflation pressure is low, or it may come on when the tire inflation pressure is actually normal.

## ⚠ NOTICE

**Repairing or replacing tires, wheels, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters and tire valve caps**

- When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.
- When replacing tire valve caps, do not use tire valve caps other than those specified. The cap may become stuck.

**To avoid damaging the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters**

Do not use liquid sealants on flat tires.

**Driving on rough roads**

Take particular care when driving on roads with loose surfaces or potholes.
These conditions may cause losses in tire inflation pressure, reducing the cushioning ability of the tires. In addition driving on rough roads may cause damage to the tires themselves, as well as the vehicle's wheels and body.

**Low profile tires**

Low profile tires may cause greater damage than usual to the tire wheel when receiving impact from the road surface. Therefore pay attention to the following:

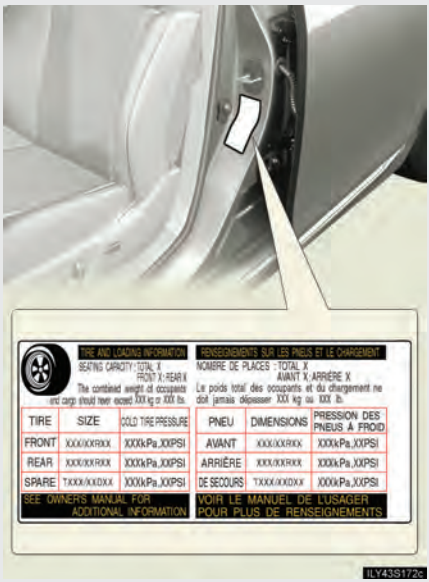
- Be sure to use proper tire inflation pressure. If tires are under-inflated, they may be damaged more severely.
- Avoid potholes, uneven pavements, curbs and other road hazards. Failure to do so can lead to severe tire and wheel damage.

**If tire inflation pressures become low while driving**

Do not continue driving, or your tires and/or wheels may be ruined.

## Tire inflation pressure

The recommended cold tire inflation pressure and tire size is displayed on the tire and loading information label. (→P. 598)



## Inspection and adjustment procedure




1 Tire valve
2 Tire pressure gauge

STEP 1 Remove the tire valve cap.

STEP 2 Press the tip of the tire pressure gauge onto the tire valve.

STEP 3 Read the pressure using the graduations of the gauge.

STEP 4 If the tire inflation pressure is not within the recommended levels, adjust tire pressure.
If you add too much air, press the center of the valve to lower.

STEP 5 After completing the tire inflation pressure measurement and adjustment, apply soapy water to the valve and check for leakage.

STEP 6 Reinstall the tire valve cap.

■ **Tire inflation pressure check interval**

You should check tire inflation pressure every 2 weeks, or at least once a month. If equipped, do not forget to check the spare.

■ **Effects of incorrect tire inflation pressure**

Driving with incorrect tire inflation pressure may result in the following:

- Reduced fuel efficiency
- Reduced driving comfort and tire life
- Reduced safety
- Damage to the drive train

If a tire needs frequent refilling, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

■ **Instructions for checking tire inflation pressure**

When checking tire inflation pressure, observe the following:

- Check only when the tires are cold.
  If your vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours and has not been driven for more than 1 mile or 1.5 km, you will get an accurate cold tire inflation pressure reading.
- Always use a tire pressure gauge.
  The appearance of the tire can be misleading. In addition, tire inflation pressures that are even just a few pounds off can degrade ride and handling.
- Do not bleed or reduce tire inflation pressure after driving. It is normal for the tire inflation pressure to be higher after driving.
- Never exceed the vehicle capacity weight.
  Passengers and luggage weight should be placed so that the vehicle is balanced.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Proper inflation is critical to save tire performance**

Keep your tires properly inflated. Otherwise, the following conditions may occur and result in an accident causing death or serious injury.

- Excessive wear
- Uneven wear
- Poor handling
- Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tires
- Poor sealing of the tire bead
- Wheel deformation and/or tire separation
- A greater possibility of tire damage from road hazards

## ⚠ NOTICE

**■ When inspecting and adjusting tire inflation pressure**

Be sure to reinstall the tire valve caps.
Without the valve caps, dirt or moisture could get into the valve and cause air leakage, which could result in an accident. If the caps have been lost, replace them as soon as possible.

**If a wheel is bent, cracked or heavily corroded, it should be replaced. Otherwise, the tire may separate from the wheel or cause loss of handling control.**

### Wheel selection

When replacing wheels, care should be taken to ensure that they are equivalent to those removed in load capacity, diameter, rim width, and inset*.
Replacement wheels are available at your Lexus dealer.

*: Conventionally referred to as "offset".

Lexus does not recommend using:

- Wheels of different sizes or types
- Used wheels
- Bent wheels that have been straightened

### Aluminum wheel precautions

- Use only Lexus wheel nuts and wrenches designed for use with your aluminum wheels.
- After rotating, repairing or changing your tires, check that the wheel nuts are still tight after driving 1000 miles (1600 km).
- Be careful not to damage the aluminum wheels when using tire chains.
- Use only Lexus genuine balance weights or equivalent when balancing your wheels.

### When replacing wheels

The wheels of your Lexus are equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters that allow the tire pressure warning system to provide advanced warning in the event of a loss in tire inflation pressure. Whenever wheels are replaced, the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must be installed. (→P. 464)

**⚠ CAUTION**

**When replacing wheels**

- Do not use wheels that are a different size from those recommended in the Owner's Manual, as this may result in loss of handling control.
- Never use an inner tube in a leaking wheel which is designed for a tubeless tire. Doing so may result in an accident, causing death or serious injury.

**⚠ NOTICE**

**Replacing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters**

- Because tire repair or replacement may affect the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, make sure to have tires serviced by your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop. In addition, make sure to purchase your tire pressure warning valves and transmitters at your Lexus dealer.
- Ensure that only genuine Lexus wheels are used on your vehicle.
  Tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not work properly with non-genuine wheels.

# Air conditioning filter

**The air conditioning filter must be cleaned or changed regularly to maintain air conditioning efficiency.**

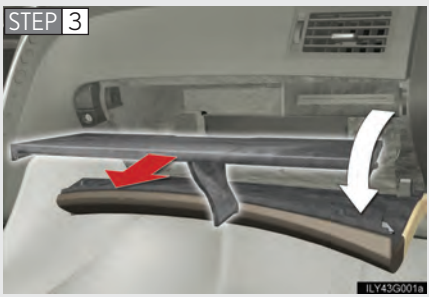
## Removal method

STEP 1 Set the air conditioning system to recirculated mode.

The air conditioning filter case cannot be removed with the system in the outside air mode.

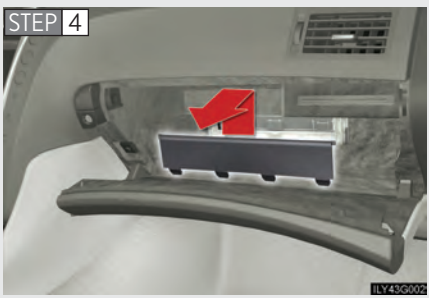
STEP 2 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to OFF.

STEP 3



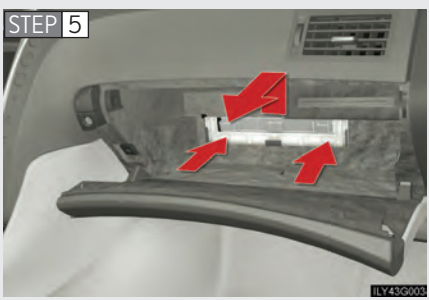

Open the glove box and remove the partition.

STEP 4




Remove the filter cover.

STEP 5




Press the tabs and remove the filter case.

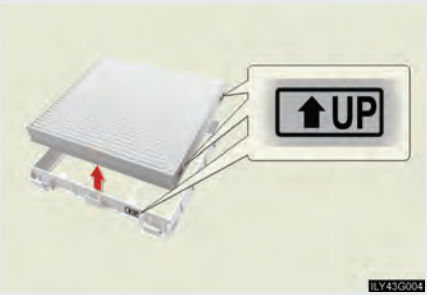
## Cleaning method




If the filter is dirty, clean by blowing compressed air through the filter from the downward side.

Hold the air gun 2 in. (5 cm) from the filter and blow for approximately 2 minutes at 73 psi (500 kPa, 5.1 kgf/cm$^2$ or bar).
If it is not available, have the filter cleaned by your Lexus dealer.

## Replacement method




Remove the air conditioning filter from the filter case and replace it with a new one.

The "↑UP" marks shown on the filter and the filter case should be pointing up.

### Checking interval

Inspect and replace the air conditioning filter according to the maintenance schedule. In dusty areas or areas with heavy traffic flow, early replacement may be required. (For scheduled maintenance information, refer to the "Warranty and Services Guide/Owner's Manual Supplement/Scheduled Maintenance".)

### If air flow from the vents decreases dramatically

The filter may be clogged. Check the filter and replace if necessary.

**NOTICE**

### To prevent damage to the system

- When using the air conditioning system, make sure that a filter is always installed.
- When cleaning the filter, do not clean the filter with water.

# Electronic key battery

Replace the battery with a new one if it is discharged.

## You will need the following items:

- Flathead screwdriver
- Small Phillips-head screwdriver
- Lithium battery (CR1632)

## Replacing the battery

STEP 1



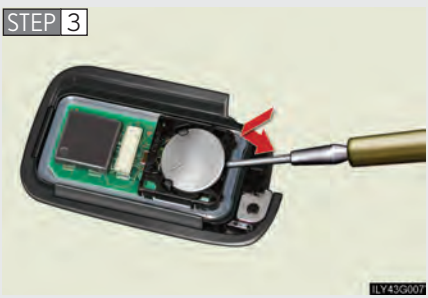
Take out the mechanical key.

STEP 2



Remove the cover.

STEP 3



Remove the depleted battery.

Insert a new battery with the "+" terminal facing up.

■ **If the electronic key battery is discharged**

The following symptoms may occur.

- The smart access system with push-button start and wireless remote control will not function properly.
- The operational range is reduced.

■ **Use a CR1632 lithium battery**

- Batteries can be purchased at your Lexus dealer, jewelers, or camera stores.
- Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by your Lexus dealer.
- Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.

■ **When the card key battery needs to be replaced**

The battery for the card key is available only at Lexus dealers. Your Lexus dealer can replace the battery for you.

**CAUTION**

■ **Removed battery and other parts**

Keep away from children.
These parts are small and if swallowed by a child they can cause choking.

**NOTICE**

■ **For normal operation after replacing the battery**

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents.

- Always work with dry hands.
  Moisture may cause the battery to rust.
- Do not touch or move any other components inside the electronic key.
- Do not bend the battery terminals.

# Checking and replacing fuses

**If any of the electrical components do not operate, a fuse may have blown. If this happens, check and replace the fuses as necessary.**

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to OFF.

STEP 2 Remove the engine compartment cover if necessary.
→P. 450

STEP 3 Open the fuse box cover.

## Engine compartment

▶ Type A



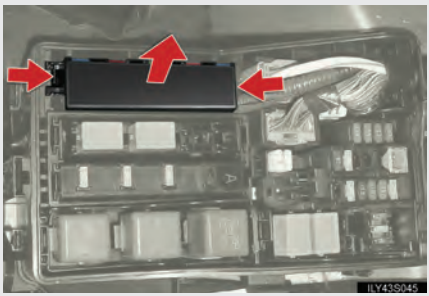

Push the tabs in and lift the lid off.

▶ Type B




Push the tabs in and lift the lid off.

■ Front controller in the engine compartment fuse box (engine compartment: type B)



Lift the lid off while pushing the tabs on either side.

■ Left side instrument panel



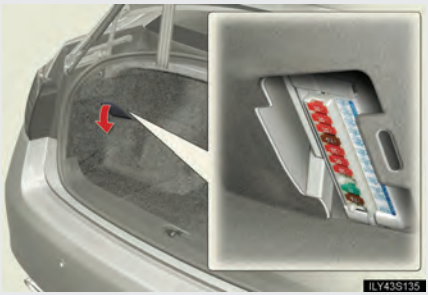
Remove the lid.

■ Right side instrument panel



Remove the lid.

■ Luggage compartment



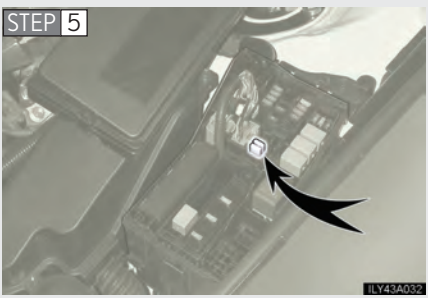

Remove the cover.

■ Luggage compartment (vehicles with active stabilizer suspension system)




Remove the lid.

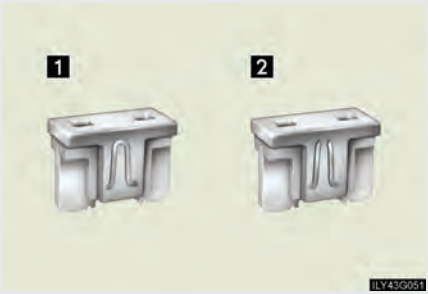
STEP 4 After a system failure, see "Fuse layout and amperage ratings" (→P. 489) for details about which fuse to check.




Remove the fuse with the pull-out tool.

STEP 6 Check if the fuse has blown.

▶ Type A

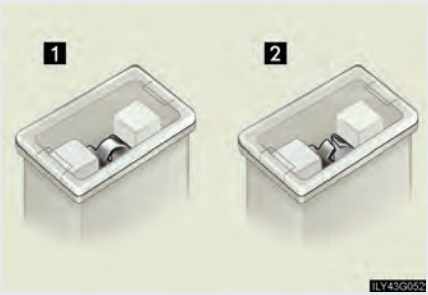



1 Normal fuse

2 Blown fuse

Replace it with one of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

▶ Type B

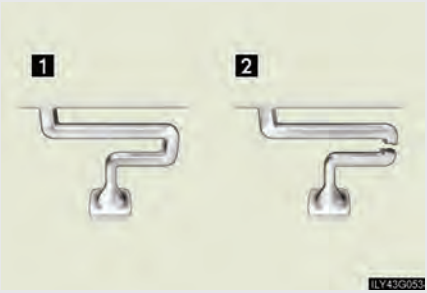



1 Normal fuse

2 Blown fuse

Replace it with one of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

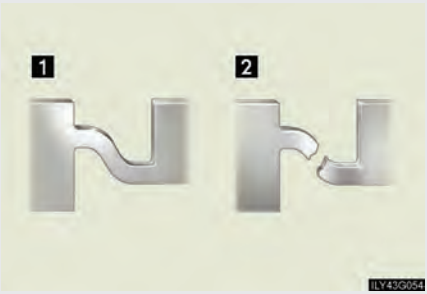
▶ Type C




1 Normal fuse
2 Blown fuse

Contact your Lexus dealer.

▶ Type D



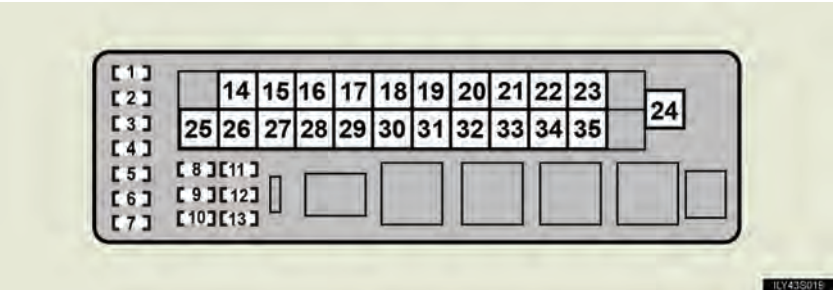

1 Normal fuse
2 Blown fuse

Contact your Lexus dealer.

## Fuse layout and amperage ratings

### Engine compartment (Type A)

▶ GS460



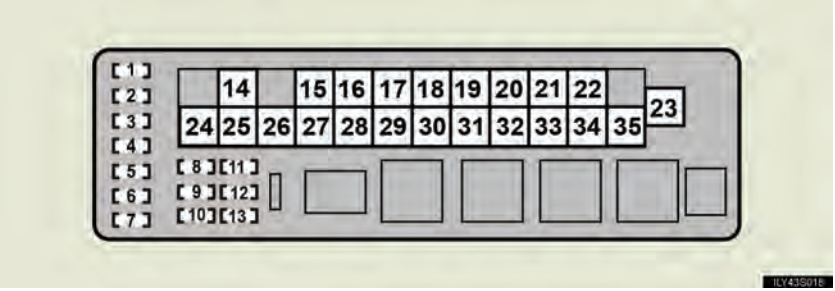

| Fuse | | Ampere | Circuit |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | ECU-B | 10 | VGRS, EPS, driver's seat switch module |
| 2 | ABS MAIN3 | 10 | Electronically controlled brake system |
| 3 | TURN-HAZ | 15 | Turn signal lights, emergency flashers |
| 4 | IG2 MAIN | 20 | IG2, GAUGE and IGN |
| 5 | RAD NO.2 | 30 | Audio system |
| 6 | D/C CUT | 20 | DOME and MPX-B |
| 7 | RAD NO.1 | 30 | Audio system |

| Fuse | | Ampere | Circuit |
|---|---|---|---|
| 8 | MPX-B | 10 | Multiplex communication system, front controller, door control system (power door lock system, door courtesy lights, power windows, power rear view mirror control system, outside rear view mirror heaters), power seat system, steering sensors, electronically controlled brake system, tilt and telescopic steering wheel, gauges and meters, combination switch |
| 9 | DOME | 10 | Foot lights, vanity lights, gauges and meters, steering spot light, steering switch illumination, rear personal lights, automatic transmission selector lever spot light, front personal lights |
| 10 | CDS | 10 | Noise filter |
| 11 | ABS MAIN2 | 10 | Electronically controlled brake system |
| 12 | ABS MOTOR | 30 | ABS |
| 13 | ABS MAIN1 | 10 | Capacitor |
| 14 | E/G-B | 60 | FR CTRL BATT, ETCS, ALT-S, A/F HTR and INJ2 |
| 15 | P/I-B | 60 | EFI NO.1, F/PMP and INJ |
| 16 | ABS1 | 50 | VDIM |
| 17 | RH J/B-B | 30 | AM2, DOOR FR and DOOR RR |

| Fuse | | Ampere | Circuit |
|---|---|---|---|
| 18 | VGRS | 40 | VGRS |
| 19 | MAIN | 30 | H-LP R LWR and H-LP L LWR |
| 20 | STARTER | 30 | Starting system |
| 21 | LH J/B-B | 30 | FL DOOR, RL DOOR and RAD NO.3 |
| 22 | VVT | 40 | Electronic engine control system |
| 23 | EPS | 80 | EPS |
| 24 | ALT | 180 | RH J/B-AM, LH J/B-AM, E/G-AM, RR JB, HEATER, DEFOG, FAN1, FAN2, ABS2, ABS MOTOR, ABS MAIN1, and ABS MAIN2 |
| 25 | RH J/B-AM | 80 | AM1, OBD, STOP SW, TI & TE, PWR OUTLET, FR P/SEAT RH, STR LOCK, ECU-IG RH, RH-IG, ACC, CIG, SECURITY, FR S/HTR RH and AIR SUS |
| 26 | FAN3 | 80 | Electric cooling fans |
| 27 | LH J/B-AM | 80 | S/ROOF, P/SEAT, TV, FL S-HTR, ECU-IG L, WIP, H-LP LVL, LH-IG, FUEL OPN, A/C, PANEL, LH-B and TRK OPN |
| 28 | ABS2 | 30 | ABS |
| 29 | DEFFOG | 50 | Rear window defogger, noise filter |
| 30 | CDS | 40 | CDS |

| Fuse | | Ampere | Circuit |
|---|---|---|---|
| 31 | FAN1 | 40 | Electric cooling fans |
| 32 | HEATER | 50 | Air conditioning system |
| 33 | FAN2 | 40 | Electric cooling fans |
| 34 | E/G-AM | 60 | H-LP CLN, FR CTRL ALT, A/C COMP and STB-AM |
| 35 | RR J/B | 80 | STOP LP R, STOP LP L, RR-B, RR TAIL, RR FOG, RR-IG1, PSB, and RR S/SHADE |

▶ GS350



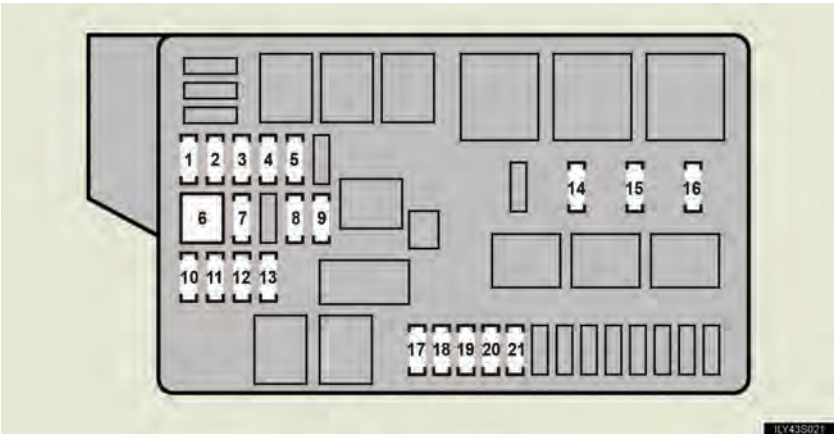

| Fuse | | Ampere | Circuit |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | ECU-B | 10 | VGRS, EPS, driver's seat switch module |
| 2 | ABS MAIN3 | 25 | Electronically controlled brake system |
| 3 | TURN-HAZ | 15 | Turn signal lights, emergency flashers |
| 4 | IG2 MAIN | 20 | IG2, GAUGE and IGN |
| 5 | RAD NO.2 | 30 | Audio system |
| 6 | D/C CUT | 20 | DOME and MPX-B |
| 7 | RAD NO.1 | 30 | Audio system |
| 8 | MPX-B | 10 | Multiplex communication system, front controller, door control system (power door lock system, door courtesy lights, power windows, power rear view mirror control system, outside rear view mirror heaters), power seat system, steering sensors, electronically controlled brake system, tilt and telescopic steering wheel, gauges and meters, combination switch |

| Fuse | | Ampere | Circuit |
|---|---|---|---|
| 9 | DOME | 10 | Foot lights, vanity lights, gauges and meters, steering spot light, steering switch illumination, rear personal lights, automatic transmission selector lever spot light, front personal lights |
| 10 | CDS | 10 | Noise filter |
| 11 | ABS MAIN2 | 10 | Electronically controlled brake system |
| 12 | ABS MOTOR | 30 | ABS |
| 13 | ABS MAIN1 | 10 | Capacitor |
| 14 | E/G-B | 60 | FR CTRL BATT, ETCS, ALT-S and A/F HTR |
| 15 | ABS1 | 50 | VDIM |
| 16 | RH J/B-B | 30 | AM2, DOOR FR and DOOR RR |
| 17 | VGRS | 40 | VGRS |
| 18 | MAIN | 30 | H-LP R LWR and H-LP L LWR |
| 19 | STARTER | 30 | Starting system |
| 20 | LH J/B-B | 30 | FL DOOR, RL DOOR and RAD NO.3 |
| 21 | P/I-B | 60 | EFI NO.1, F/PMP and INJ |
| 22 | EPS | 80 | EPS |
| 23 | ALT | 150 | RH J/B-AM, LH J/B-AM, E/G-AM, RR JB, HEATER, DEFOG, FAN1, FAN2, ABS2, ABS MOTOR, ABS MAIN1, and ABS MAIN2 |

| Fuse | | Ampere | Circuit |
|---|---|---|---|
| 24 | RR J/B | 80 | STOP LP R, STOP LP L, RR-B, RR TAIL, RR FOG, RR-IG1, PSB, and RR S/SHADE |
| 25 | GLW PLG1 | 50 | Starting system |
| 26 | RH J/B-AM | 80 | AM1, OBD, STOP SW, TI & TE, PWR OUTLET, FR P/SEAT RH, STR LOCK, ECU-IG RH, RH-IG, ACC, CIG, SECURITY, FR S/HTR RH and AIR SUS |
| 27 | ABS2 | 30 | ABS |
| 28 | DEFFOG | 50 | Rear window defogger, noise filter |
| 29 | CDS | 40 | CDS |
| 30 | FAN1 | 40 | Electric cooling fans |
| 31 | HEATER | 50 | Air conditioning system |
| 32 | GLW PLG2 | 50 | Starting system |
| 33 | E/G-AM | 60 | H-LP CLN, FR CTRL ALT, A/C COMP and STB-AM |
| 34 | LH J/B-AM | 80 | S/ROOF, P/SEAT, TV, FL S-HTR, ECU-IG L, WIP, H-LP LVL, LH-IG, FUEL OPN, A/C, PANEL, LH-B and TRK OPN |
| 35 | FAN2 | 60 | Electric cooling fans |

## Engine compartment (Type B)

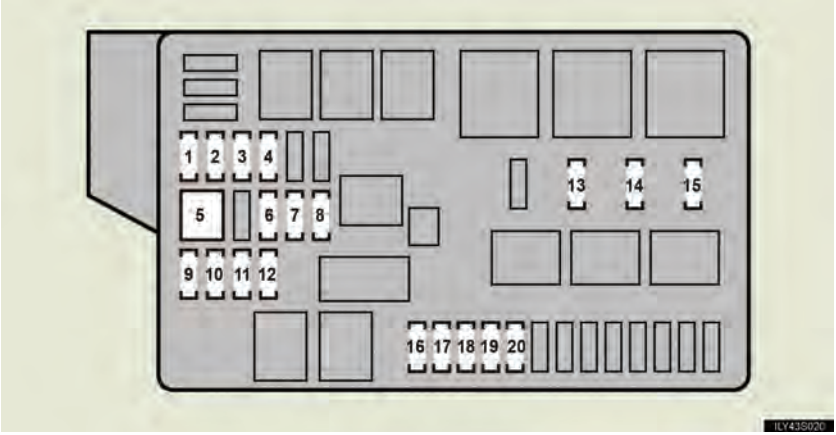
▶ GS460




| Fuse | | Ampere | Circuit |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | FR CTRL-B | 25 | H-LP UPR and HORN |
| 2 | A/F | 15 | Exhaust system |
| 3 | ETCS | 10 | Electronic throttle control system |
| 4 | ALT-S | 7.5 | Charging system |
| 5 | INJ2 | 25 | Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system |
| 6 | H-LP CLN | 30 | Headlight cleaner |
| 7 | STB-AM | 30 | ——— |
| 8 | DEICER | 25 | ——— |
| 9 | FR CTRL-AM | 30 | FR TAIL, FR FOG and WASHER |

| Fuse | | Ampere | Circuit |
|---|---|---|---|
| 10 | IG2 | 10 | Ignition system, noise filter and ECT ECU |
| 11 | EFI NO.2 | 10 | Fuel system, exhaust system, multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system, electronic engine control system, leak detection pump |
| 12 | H-LP R LWR | 15 | Headlight low beam (right) |
| 13 | H-LP L LWR | 15 | Headlight low beam (left) |
| 14 | F/PMP | 25 | Fuel system |
| 15 | EFI | 25 | Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system, ECT ECU |
| 16 | INJ | 25 | Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system |
| 17 | H-LP UPR | 15 | Headlight high beams |
| 18 | HORN | 10 | Horns |
| 19 | WASHER | 20 | Windshield wipers and washer |
| 20 | FR TAIL | 10 | Parking lights, side marker light |
| 21 | FR FOG | 15 | Front fog lights |

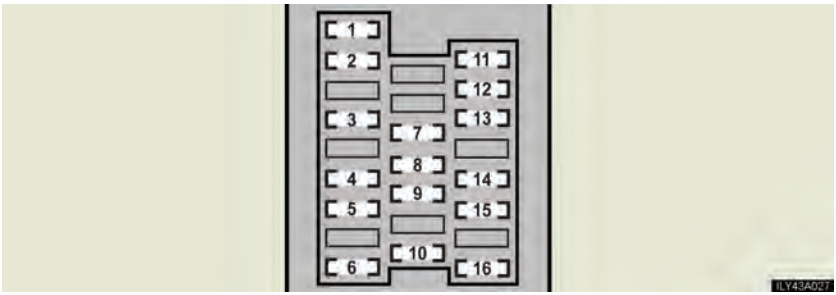
▶ GS350




| Fuse | | Ampere | Circuit |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | FR CTRL-B | 25 | H-LP UPR and HORN |
| 2 | A/F | 15 | Exhaust system |
| 3 | ETCS | 10 | Electronic throttle control system |
| 4 | ALT-S | 7.5 | Charging system |
| 5 | H-LP CLN | 30 | Headlight cleaner |
| 6 | A/C COMP | 7.5 | Air conditioning system |
| 7 | DEICER | 25 | ——— |
| 8 | FR CTRL-AM | 30 | FR TAIL, FR FOG and WASHER |
| 9 | IG2 | 10 | Ignition system and noise filter |
| 10 | EFI NO.2 | 10 | Fuel system and exhaust system |

| Fuse | | Ampere | Circuit |
|---|---|---|---|
| 11 | H-LP R LWR | 15 | Headlight low beam (right) |
| 12 | H-LP L LWR | 15 | Headlight low beam (left) |
| 13 | F/PMP | 25 | Fuel system |
| 14 | EFI NO.1 | 25 | Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system |
| 15 | INJ | 20 | Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system |
| 16 | H-LP HI | 15 | Headlight high beams |
| 17 | HORN | 10 | Horns |
| 18 | WASHER | 20 | Windshield wipers and washer |
| 19 | FR TAIL | 10 | Parking lights, side marker light |
| 20 | FR FOG | 15 | Front fog lights |

## Left side instrument panel

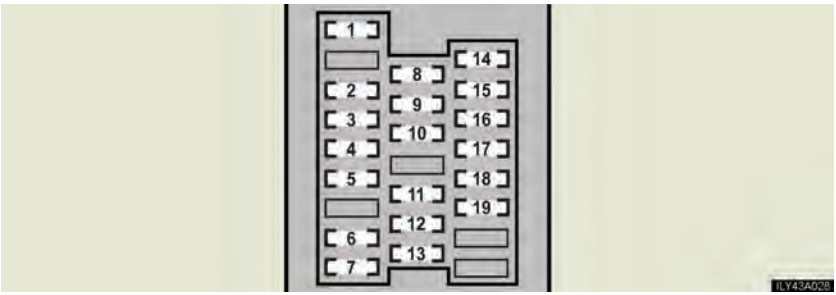



| Fuse | | Ampere | Circuit |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | FR P/SEAT LH | 30 | Power seat system |
| 2 | A/C | 7.5 | Air conditioning system |
| 3 | TV | 7.5 | Audio system, air conditioning system, rear view monitor system |
| 4 | TRK OPN | 10 | Trunk lid opener |
| 5 | LH-B | 10 | Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system |
| 6 | S/ROOF | 25 | Moon roof |

| Fuse | | Ampere | Circuit |
|---|---|---|---|
| 7 | PANEL | 7.5 | Steering switch illumination, audio system, glove box light, automatic transmission selector lever illumination, console box light, adaptive variable suspension switch illumination, cigarette lighter illumination, air conditioning system, VSC OFF switch illumination, driving pattern selector switch, seat heater or heated and ventilated seat switches, register ILL RH, register ILL LH, fuel filler door and trunk lid opener switch illumination, D-SW module |
| 8 | FUEL OPN | 10 | Fuel filler door opener, trunk lid opener |
| 9 | ECU-IG LH | 10 | VDIM, electronically controlled brake system, yaw rate and G sensor, steering sensor, cruise control system, dynamic radar cruise control system, EPS, VGRS, rear view monitor system, four-wheel drive system, front controller, moon roof, rain sensor |
| 10 | FR S/HTR LH | 15 | Seat heaters and ventilators |
| 11 | RR DOOR LH | 20 | Rear left door control system (power door lock system, door courtesy light, power window) |

| Fuse | | Ampere | Circuit |
|---|---|---|---|
| 12 | FR DOOR LH | 20 | Front left door control system (power door lock system, power rear view mirror control system, door courtesy light, outside rear view mirror heater, power window) |
| 13 | RAD NO.3 | 10 | Audio system |
| 14 | H-LP LVL | 7.5 | AFS, automatic headlight leveling control system |
| 15 | LH-IG | 10 | Charging system, headlight cleaners, exhaust gas sensor, rear window defogger, electric cooling fans, rear left door control system, front left door control system, emergency flashers, automatic transmission, seat belt pretensioners, Intuitive parking assist, power window |
| 16 | FR WIP | 30 | Windshield wipers and washer |

## Right side instrument panel

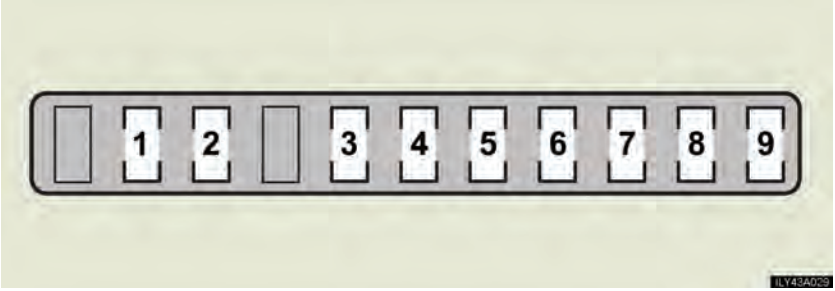



| Fuse | | Ampere | Circuit |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | FR P/SEAT RH | 30 | Power seat system |
| 2 | OBD | 7.5 | On-board diagnosis system |
| 3 | STOP SW | 7.5 | Stop/tail lights, multi-port fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system, starting system, electronically controlled brake system, Enhanced VSC system, shift lock system, ECT ECU |
| 4 | AM1 | 7.5 | ——— |
| 5 | TI & TE | 20 | Tilt and telescopic steering wheel, multiplex communication system |
| 6 | SECURITY | 7.5 | Smart access system with push-button start |
| 7 | STR LOCK | 25 | Steering lock system |
| 8 | GAUGE | 7.5 | Gauges and meters |

| Fuse | | Ampere | Circuit |
|---|---|---|---|
| 9 | IGN | 10 | Multi-port fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system, SRS airbag system, stop/tail lights, steering lock system, electronically controlled brake system, occupant classification system ECU |
| 10 | ACC | 7.5 | Multiplex communication system, smart access system with push-button start, rear view monitor system, audio system, air conditioning system |
| 11 | CIG | 15 | Cigarette lighter |
| 12 | PWR OUTLET | 15 | Power outlet |
| 13 | AIR SUS | 20 | Adaptive variable suspension system |
| 14 | RR DOOR RH | 20 | Rear right door control system (power door lock system, door courtesy light, power window) |
| 15 | FR DOOR RH | 20 | Front right door control system (power door lock system, power rear view mirror control system, door courtesy light, outside rear view mirror heater, power window), multiplex communication system |

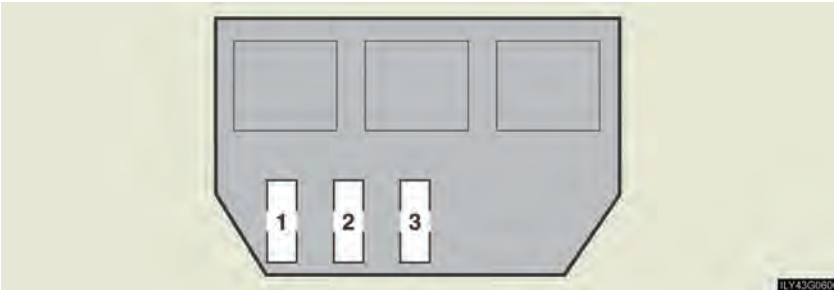
| Fuse | | Ampere | Circuit |
|---|---|---|---|
| 16 | AM2 | 7.5 | Starting system |
| 17 | RH-IG | 7.5 | Seat heater switches, front right door control system, rear right door control system, capacitor, combination switch, seat belt pretensioners, shift lever switch, power window |
| 18 | FR S/HTR RH | 15 | Seat heaters and ventilators |
| 19 | ECU-IG RH | 10 | Tilt and telescopic steering, combination switch, multiplex communication system, power seat, smart entry & start system, air conditioning system, audio system, shift lock system |

## Luggage compartment




| Fuse | | Ampere | Circuit |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | RR S/SHADE | 7.5 | Rear sunshade |
| 2 | PSB | 30 | Pre-collision seat belt |
| 3 | RR-IG2 | 10 | ——— |
| 4 | RR-IG1 | 10 | Pre-collision seat belt, seat belt pre-tensioners, A/P UNIT, rear sunshade |
| 5 | RR-B | 10 | Trunk light, noise filter |
| 6 | RR FOG | 7.5 | ——— |
| 7 | STOP LP L | 10 | Stoplights, back-up light |
| 8 | STOP LP R | 10 | High mounted stoplights |
| 9 | RR TAIL | 10 | Tail lights, license plate lights, rear side marker lights |

## Luggage compartment (vehicles with active stabilizer suspension system)




| | Fuse | Ampere | Circuit |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | STB FR | 50 | Front stabilizer |
| 2 | STB RR | 30 | Rear stabilizer |
| 3 | STB DC/DC | 30 | DC/DC converter |

### After a fuse is replaced

- If the lights do not turn on even after the fuse has been replaced, a bulb may need replacement. (→P. 512)
- If the replaced fuse blows again, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

### If there is an overload in the circuits

The fuses are designed to blow before the entire wiring harness is damaged.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ To prevent system breakdowns and vehicle fire**

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may cause damage, and possibly a fire or injury.

- Never use a fuse of a higher amperage rating than indicated, or use any other object in place of a fuse.
- Always use a genuine Lexus fuse or equivalent.
  Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary fix.
  This can cause extensive damage or even fire.
- Do not modify fuses or the fuse box.

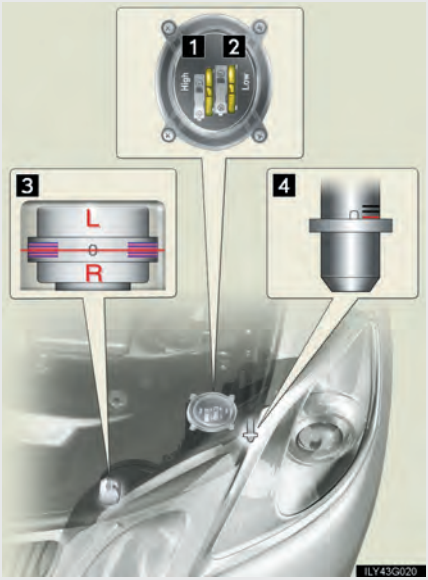
## ⚠ NOTICE

**■ Before replacing fuses**

Have the cause of electrical overload determined and repaired by your Lexus dealer.

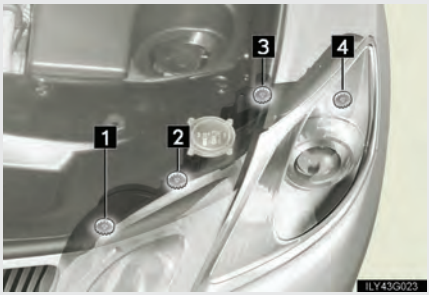
# Headlight aim

## Gauges




1 High beam vertical position
2 Low beam vertical position
3 High beam horizontal position
4 Low beam horizontal position

## Adjustment bolts




1 High beam horizontal adjustment
2 High beam vertical adjustment
3 Low beam adjustment bolt A
4 Low beam adjustment bolt B

## Before checking the headlight aim

STEP 1 Make sure the vehicle has a full tank of gas and the area around the headlight is not deformed.

STEP 2 Park the vehicle on level ground.

STEP 3 Sit in the driver's seat.

STEP 4 Bounce the vehicle several times.

## Adjusting the headlight aim

▶ Low beam (vertical adjustment)




Using a Phillips-head screwdriver, turn adjustment bolt A so that the bubble is within the 2 center lines.

Remember the turning direction and the number of turns.




Turn bolt B the same number of turns and in the same direction as step 1.

▶ Low beam (horizontal adjustment)

Turn adjustment bolt A so that the red line on the gauge is in the middle of the "0" mark (within the blue lines to either side of the gauge).

▶ High beam (vertical and horizontal adjustment)

Turn each adjustment bolt in either direction so that the bubble in within the 2 center lines (vertical), and the red line on the gauge is in the middle of the "0" mark (within the blue lines to either side of the gauge) (horizontal).

If you feel that there is a large deviation, have the headlight aim adjusted at a Lexus dealer.

# Light bulbs

You may replace the following bulbs yourself. For more information about replacing other light bulbs, contact your Lexus dealer.

## Prepare a replacement light bulb

Check the wattage of the light bulb being replaced. (→P. 600)

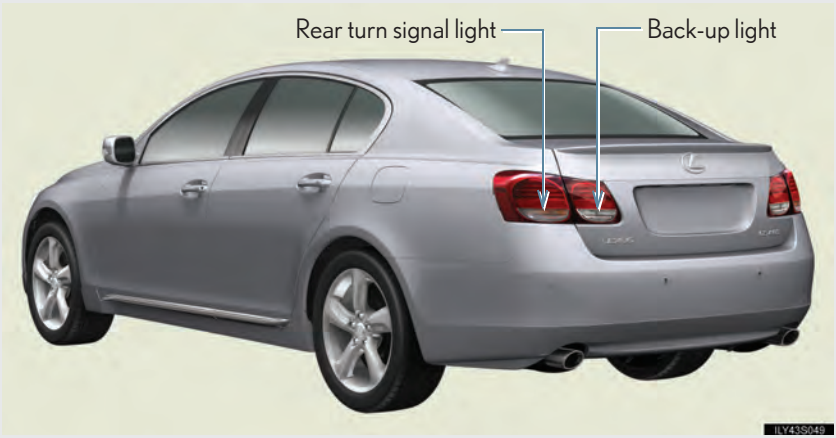
## Remove the engine compartment cover if necessary

→P. 450

## Front bulb locations



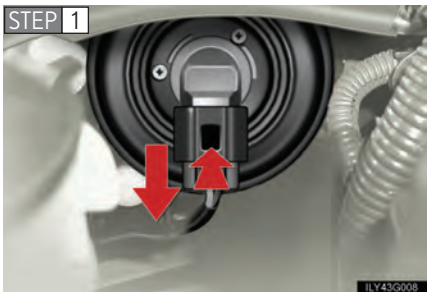

## Rear bulb locations



## Replacing light bulbs

### Headlight high beam and daytime running light

STEP 1



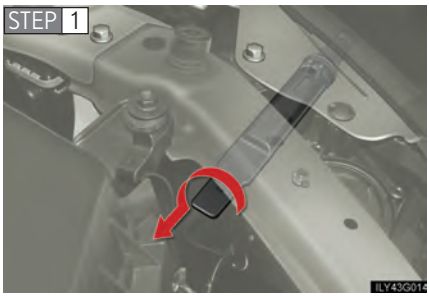
Unplug the connector while depressing the lock release.

STEP 2



Turn the bulb base counterclockwise to remove it.

## Parking light



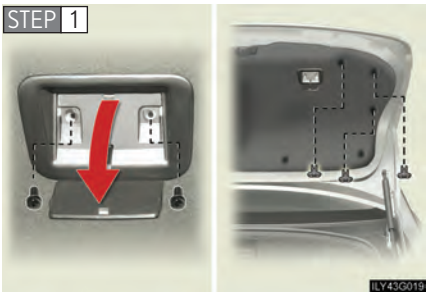

Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.




Remove the light bulb.

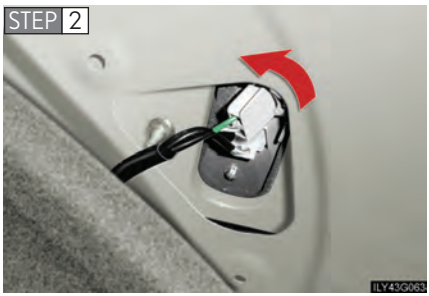
## Back-up light

STEP 1



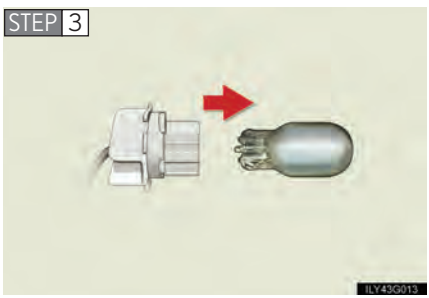

Open the trunk lid. Remove the trunk handle and panel cover clips.

STEP 2




Partly remove the trunk panel cover and turn the bulb bases counterclockwise.

STEP 3

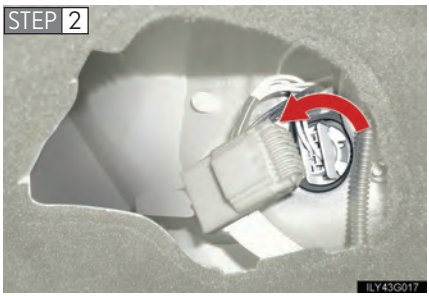



Remove the light bulb.

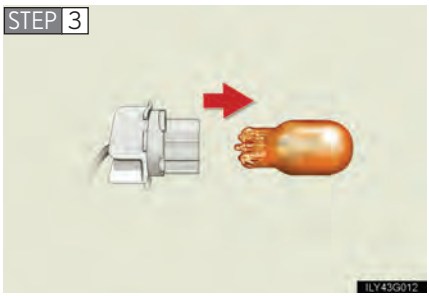
## Rear turn signal light




Open the trunk lid and remove the cover.




Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.




Remove the light bulb.

### Bulbs other than the above

If any of the bulbs listed below has burnt out, have your Lexus dealer replace it.

- Headlight low beams (high-intensity discharge bulbs)
- Fog lights
- Front turn signal lights
- Front side marker lights
- Side turn signal lights
- Tail/stop lights
- Tail lights
- Rear side marker lights
- High mounted stoplight
- License plate lights

---

### Condensation build-up on the inside of the lens

Contact your Lexus dealer for more information in the following situations. Temporary condensation build-up on the inside of the headlight lens does not indicate a malfunction.

- Large drops of water are built up on the inside of the lens.
- Water has built up inside the headlight.

### LED light bulbs

The side turn signal lights, rear side marker lights, tail lights, tail/stop lights and high mounted stoplights consist of a number of LEDs. If any of the LEDs burn out, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer to have the light replaced.

If two or more LEDs in a stoplight burn out, your vehicle may not conform to local laws (SAE).

### High-intensity discharge (HID) headlights

If voltage to the high-intensity discharge bulbs is insufficient, the light may not come on, or may go out temporarily. The high-intensity discharge bulbs will come on when normal power is restored.

### ⚠ CAUTION

#### Replacing light bulbs

- Turn off the headlights. Do not attempt to replace the bulb immediately after turning off the headlights.
  The bulbs become very hot and may cause burns.
- Do not touch the glass portion of the light bulb with bare hands. Hold the bulb by the plastic or metal portion.
  If the bulb is scratched or dropped it may blow out or crack.
- Fully install light bulbs and any parts used to secure them. Failing to do so may result in heat damage, fire, or water entering the headlight unit. This may damage the headlights or cause condensation to build up on the lens.
- Do not attempt to take apart or repair the low beam discharge headlight bulbs, connectors, power supply circuits, or related components.
  Doing so could result in electric shock and death or serious injury.

#### High-intensity discharge (HID) headlights

- Contact your Lexus dealer before replacing high-intensity discharge headlights (including light bulbs).
- Do not touch the high-intensity discharge headlight's high voltage socket when the headlights are turned on.
  An extremely high voltage of 20000 V will be discharged and could result in death or serious injury by electric shock.

#### To prevent damage or fire

Make sure bulbs are fully seated and locked.

# When trouble arises 5


**5-1. Essential information**

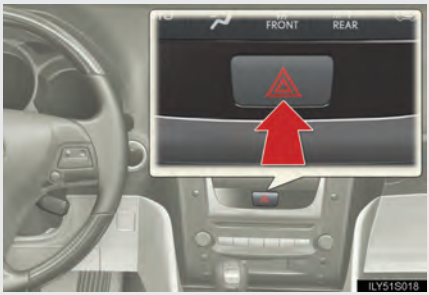
Emergency flashers ..... 520
If your vehicle needs to be towed ..... 521
If you think something is wrong ..... 530
Fuel pump shut off system ..... 531
Event data recorder ..... 532

**5-2. Steps to take in an emergency**

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds ..... 534
If a warning message is displayed ..... 543
If you have a flat tire (Vehicles with standard tires) ..... 556
If you have a flat tire (Vehicles with run-flat tires) ..... 566
If the engine will not start ..... 568
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P" ..... 569
If you lose your keys ..... 570
If the electronic key does not operate properly ..... 571
If the 12 volt battery is discharged ..... 574
If your vehicle overheats ..... 578
If the vehicle becomes stuck ..... 581
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency ..... 583

# Emergency flashers

**Use the emergency flashers if the vehicle malfunctions or is involved in an accident.**




Press the switch to flash all the turn signal lights. To turn them off, press the switch once again.

## NOTICE

**To prevent 12 volt battery discharge**

Do not leave the emergency flashers on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

# If your vehicle needs to be towed

**If towing is necessary, we recommend having your vehicle towed by your Lexus dealer or a commercial towing service, using a lift-type truck or a flat bed truck.**
**Use a safety chain system for all towing, and abide by all state/provincial and local laws.**

**If towing from the rear, the wheels and axle on the ground must be in good condition.**

**If they are damaged, use a towing dolly or flat bed truck.**

## Before towing

The following may indicate a problem with your automatic transmission. Contact your Lexus dealer before towing.

- The engine is running, but the vehicle will not move.
- The vehicle makes an abnormal sound.

## Emergency towing

If a tow truck is not available, in an emergency your vehicle may be temporarily towed using a cable or chain secured to the emergency towing eyelet. This should only be attempted on hard, surfaced roads for short distances at low speeds.
A driver must be in the vehicle to steer and operate the brakes. The vehicle's wheels, drive train, axles, steering and brakes must be in good condition.

▶ Towing eyelet




### Emergency towing procedure

STEP 1 Release the parking brake.

STEP 2 Put the shift lever in "N".

STEP 3 The "ENGINE START STOP" switch must be in the ACCESSORY mode (engine off) or the IGNITION ON mode (engine on).

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ While towing**

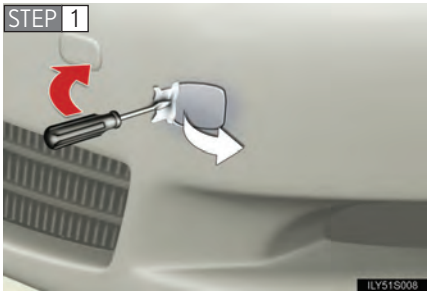
- Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle.
  Avoid sudden starts or erratic driving maneuvers which place excessive stress on the emergency towing eyelet and the cable or chain. Always use caution for the surroundings and other vehicles while towing.
- If the engine is not running, the power assist for the brakes and steering will not function, making steering and braking more difficult.

## ⚠ NOTICE

**■ To prevent causing serious damage to the automatic transmission**

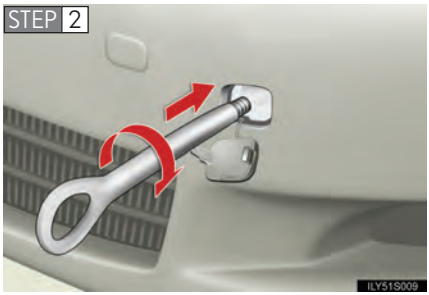
Never tow this vehicle from the front with the rear wheels (2WD models) or four wheels (4WD models) on the ground.
This may cause serious damage to the automatic transmission.

## Installing towing eyelet

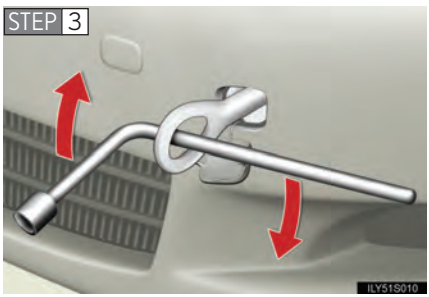



Remove the eyelet cover using a flathead screwdriver.

To protect the bodywork, place a rag between the screwdriver and the vehicle body, as shown in the illustration.




Insert the towing eyelet into the hole and tighten partially by hand.




Tighten down the towing eyelet securely using a wheel nut wrench.

■ **Location of the emergency towing eyelet**

→P. 556

**⚠ CAUTION**

■ **Installing towing eyelet to the vehicle**

Make sure that towing eyelet is installed securely.
If not securely installed, towing eyelet may come loose during towing. This may lead to accidents that cause serious injury or even death.

## Towing with a sling-type truck



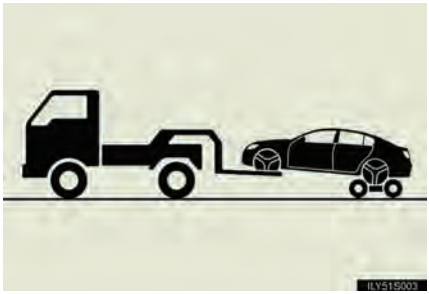

### NOTICE

**To prevent body damage**

Do not tow with a sling-type truck, either from the front or rear.

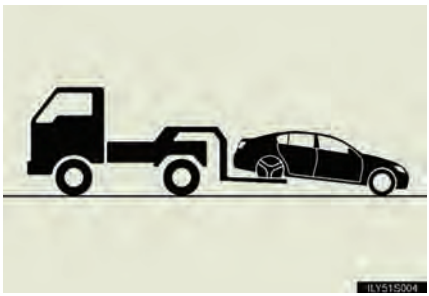
## Towing with a wheel lift-type truck

▶ From front



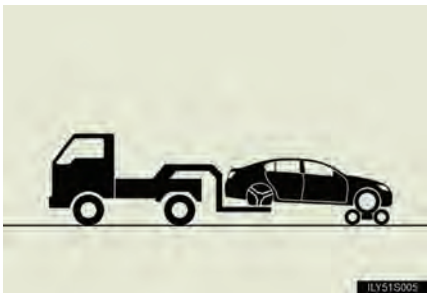
Use a towing dolly under the rear wheels.

▶ From rear (2WD models)



Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to the ACCESSORY mode so that the steering wheel is unlocked.

▶ From rear (4WD models)



Use a towing dolly under the front wheels.

NOTICE

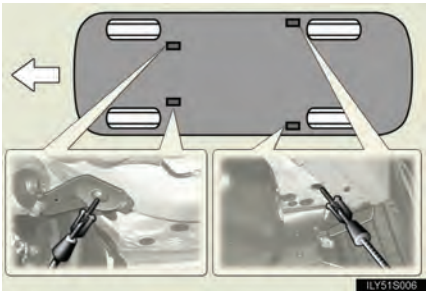
■ **To prevent causing serious damage to the automatic transmission**

Never tow this vehicle from the front with the rear wheels on the ground.

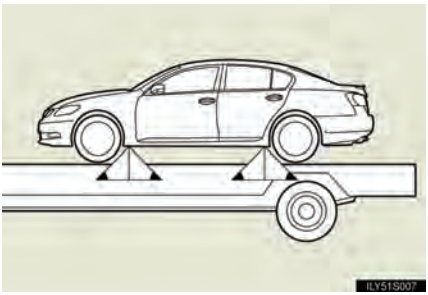
■ **To prevent damaging the vehicle**

- Do not tow the vehicle with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is OFF. The steering lock mechanism is not strong enough to hold the front wheel straight.
- When raising the vehicle, ensure adequate ground clearance for towing at the opposite end of the raised vehicle. Without adequate clearance, the vehicle could be damaged while being towed.

## Using a flat bed truck




If your Lexus is transported by a flat bed truck, it should be tied down at the locations shown in the illustration.




If you use chains or cables to tie down your vehicle, the angles shaded in black must be 45°.

Do not overly tighten the tie-downs or the vehicle may be damaged.

**If you notice any of the following symptoms, your vehicle probably needs adjustment or repair. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.**

### Visible symptoms

- Fluid leaks under the vehicle
  (Water dripping from the air conditioning after use is normal.)
- Flat-looking tires or uneven tire wear
- Engine coolant temperature gauge needle continually points higher than normal

### Audible symptoms

- Changes in exhaust sound
- Excessive tire squeal when cornering
- Strange noises related to the suspension system
- Pinging or other noises related to the engine

### Operational symptoms

- Engine missing, stumbling or running rough
- Appreciable loss of power
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when braking
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when driving on a level road
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling, pedal almost touches the floor

# Fuel pump shut off system

**To minimize the risk of fuel leakage when the engine stalls or an airbag inflates upon collision, the fuel pump shut off system stops supplying fuel to the engine.**

Follow the procedure below to restart the engine after the system is activated.

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to the ACCESSORY mode or OFF.

STEP 2 Restart the engine.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **Before starting the engine**

Inspect the ground under the vehicle.
If you find that fuel has leaked on to the ground, the fuel system has been damaged and is in need of repair. Do not restart the engine.

# Event data recorder

**Your vehicle has computers that monitor and control certain aspects of your vehicle. These computers assist in driving and maintaining optimal vehicle performance.**

**Besides storing data useful for troubleshooting, there is a system to record data in a crash or a near car crash event. This is called an Event Data Recorder (EDR).**

## In a crash or a near car crash event

The SRS airbag sensor assembly contains the EDR. In a crash or a near car crash event, this device may record some or all of the following information:

- Engine speed
- Whether the brake pedal was applied or not
- Vehicle speed
- To what extent the accelerator pedal was depressed
- Position of the automatic transmission shift lever
- Whether the driver and front passenger wore seat belts or not
- Driver's seat position
- SRS airbag deployment data
- SRS airbag system diagnostic data
- Front passenger's occupant classification

## Disclosure of the data

Lexus will not disclose the data recorded in an EDR to a third party except when:

- An agreement from the vehicle's owner (or the leasing company for a leased vehicle) is obtained
- Officially requested by the police or other authorities
- Used as a defense for Lexus in a law suit
- Ordered by a court

However, if necessary Lexus will:

- Use the data for research on Lexus vehicle safety performance
- Disclose the data to a third party for research purposes without disclosing details of the vehicle owner, and only when it is deemed necessary
- Disclose summarized data cleared of vehicle identification information to a non-Lexus organization for research purposes

**Calmly perform the following actions if any of the warning lights turn on or flash. If a light turns on or flashes, but then turns off, this does not necessarily indicate a malfunction in the system.**

## Stop the vehicle immediately. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.

The following warning indicates a possible problem in the brake system. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

| Warning light | Warning light/Details |
|---|---|
| BRAKE (U.S.A.)<br>(Canada) | **Brake system warning light (warning buzzer)**[*1]<br>• Low brake fluid<br>• Malfunction in the brake system<br>This light also comes on when the parking brake is not released. If the light turns off after the parking brake is fully released, the system is operating normally. |

[*1]: Parking brake engaged warning buzzer:
→P. 549

## Stop the vehicle immediately.

The following warning indicates the possibility of damage to the vehicle that may lead to an accident. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

| Warning light | Warning light/Details |
|---|---|
|  | **Charging system warning light**<br>Malfunction in the vehicle's charging system. |

## Have the vehicle inspected immediately.

Failure to investigate the cause of the following warnings may lead to the system operating abnormally and possibly cause an accident. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

| Warning light | Warning light/Details |
|---|---|
|  (U.S.A.)<br> (Canada) | **Malfunction indicator lamp**<br>Malfunction in:<br>• The emission control system;<br>• The electronic engine control system;<br>• The electronic throttle control system; or<br>• The automatic transmission control system. |
|  | **SRS warning light**<br>Malfunction in:<br>• The SRS airbag system;<br>• The front passenger occupant classification system; or<br>• The seat belt pretensioner system. |
|  (U.S.A.)<br> (Canada) | **ABS warning light**<br>Malfunction in:<br>• The ABS; or<br>• The brake assist system. |
| <br>(GS460) | **ECB (Electronically controlled brake system) warning light**<br>Malfunction in the electronically controlled brake system. |
|  | **Electric power steering system warning light**<br>Malfunction in the EPS. |
|  | **"PCS" warning light (if equipped)**<br>Malfunction in the pre-collision system. |

| Warning light | Warning light/Details |
|---|---|
|  | **Slip indicator**<br>Malfunction in the Enhanced VSC.<br>The indicator will blink when Enhanced VSC, TRAC or hill-start assist control is operational. (→P. 201) |

## Have the malfunction repaired immediately.

After taking the specified steps to correct the suspected problem, check that the warning light turns off.

| Warning light | Warning light/Details | Correction procedure |
|---|---|---|
|  | **Open door warning light (warning buzzer)**[*2]<br>A door or the trunk is not fully closed. | Check that all doors and the trunk are closed. |
|  | **Low fuel level warning light**<br>Remaining fuel (Approximately 3.2 gal. [12 L, 2.6 Imp.gal.] or less) | Refuel the vehicle. |
|  | **Driver's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)**[*3]<br>Warns the driver to fasten his/her seat belt. | Fasten the seat belt. |

| Warning light | Warning light/Details | Correction procedure |
|---|---|---|
|   (on the center panel) | **Front passenger's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)*3** Warns the front passenger to fasten his/her seat belt. | Fasten the seat belt. |
|  | **Tire pressure warning light** | |
| | When the light comes on: Low tire inflation pressure. | Adjust the tire inflation pressure. |
| | When the light comes on after blinking for 1 minute: Malfunction in the tire pressure warning system. | Have the system checked by your Lexus dealer. |
|  | **Master warning light** A buzzer sounds and the warning light comes on and flashes to indicate that the master warning system has detected a malfunction. | Take appropriate action in accordance with the message displayed on the multi-information display. |

*2: Open door warning buzzer:
→P. 548

*3: Driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder buzzer:

The driver's and front passenger's seat belts reminder sounds to alert the driver and front passenger that his or her seat belt is not fastened. The buzzer sounds intermittently for 10 seconds after the vehicle has reached a speed of at least 12 mph (20 km/h). Then, if the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer will sound in a different tone for 20 more seconds.

■ **If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on while driving**

First check the following:

- Is your vehicle low on gas?
  If it is, refuel the vehicle immediately.
- Is the fuel tank cap loose?
  If it is, tighten it securely.

The light will go off after taking several driving trips.
If the light does not go off even after several trips, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ **Front passenger detection sensor and passenger seat belt reminder**

- If luggage is placed on the front passenger seat, the front passenger detection sensor may cause the warning light to flash, even if a passenger is not sitting in the seat.
- If a cushion is placed on the seat, the sensor may not detect a passenger, and the warning light may not operate properly.

■ **SRS warning light**

This warning light system monitors the following:

- The airbag sensor assembly
- Front airbag sensors
- The curtain shield and rear side airbag sensors
- The side and curtain shield airbag sensors
- The front passenger occupant classification ECU
- "AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights
- The pressure sensor
- The belt tension sensor
- The seat belt buckle switches
- The driver's seat position sensor
- The inflators
- The warning light
- The interconnecting wiring and power sources

■ **When the tire pressure warning light comes on**

Check the tire inflation pressure and adjust to the appropriate level. Pushing the tire pressure warning reset switch does not turn off the tire pressure warning light.

■ **The tire pressure warning light may turn on due to natural causes**

The tire pressure warning light may turn on due to natural causes such as natural air leaks or tire inflation pressure changes caused by temperature. In this case, adjusting the tire inflation pressure will turn off the warning light (after a few minutes).

■ **When a tire is replaced with a spare tire**

The compact spare tire is not equipped with the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter. If a tire goes flat, the tire pressure warning light will not turn off even though the flat tire is replaced with the spare tire. Replace the spare tire with the repaired tire and adjust the proper tire inflation pressure. The tire pressure warning light will turn off after a few minutes.

■ **If the tire pressure warning system is inoperative**

The tire pressure warning system will be disabled in the following conditions: (When the condition becomes normal, the system will work properly.)

- If tires not equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are used.
- If the ID code on the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters is not registered in the tire pressure warning computer.
- If the tire pressure warning select switch is set to a different tire setting.
- If the tire inflation pressure is 73 psi (500 kPa, 5.1 kgf/cm$^2$ or bar) or higher.

The tire pressure warning system may be disabled in the following conditions: (When the condition becomes normal, the system will work properly.)

- If electronic devices or facilities using similar radio wave frequencies are nearby.
- If a radio set at similar frequencies is in use in the vehicle.
- If a window tint that affects the radio wave signals is installed.
- If there is a lot of snow or ice on the vehicle, in particular around the wheels or wheel housings.
- If non-genuine Lexus wheels are used. (Even if you use Lexus wheels, the tire pressure warning system may not work properly with some types of tires.)
- If tire chains are used.

### If the tire pressure warning light comes on after blinking for 1 minute frequently

If the tire pressure warning light comes on after blinking for 1 minute frequently when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

## ⚠ CAUTION

### If the tire pressure warning light comes on

Be sure to observe the following precautions. Failure to do so could cause loss of vehicle control and result in death or serious injury.

- Vehicles with standard tires:
  - Stop your vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Adjust the tire inflation pressure immediately.
  - If the tire pressure warning light comes on even after tire inflation pressure adjustment, it is probable that you have a flat tire. Check the tires. If the tire is flat, change to the spare tire and have the flat tire repaired by the nearest Lexus dealer.
  - Avoid abrupt maneuvering and braking. If the vehicle tires deteriorate, you could lose control of the steering wheel or the brakes.
- Vehicles with run-flat tires:
  - Decelerate to the lowest appropriate speed as soon as possible. Do not drive over 55 mph (90 km/h).
  - Check and adjust the tire inflation pressure immediately.
  - If the tire pressure warning light comes on even after tire inflation pressure adjustment, it is probable that you have a flat tire. Have the tire replaced by the nearest Lexus dealer.
  - Avoid abrupt maneuvering and braking. If the vehicle tires deteriorate, you could lose control of the steering wheel or the brakes.

### If a blowout or sudden air leakage should occur

The tire pressure warning system may not activate immediately.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**Maintenance of the tires**

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label (tire and load information label). (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label [tire and load information label], you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS-tire pressure warning system) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light) when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light) illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light).

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light). When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) to continue to function properly.

NOTICE

**Precaution when installing a different tire**

When a tire of a different specification or maker is installed, the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.

**If a warning is shown on the multi-information display, stay calm and perform the following actions:**




1 Multi-information display

2 Master warning light

The master warning light also comes on or flashes in order to indicate that a message is currently being displayed on the multi-information display.

If any of the warning light turns on again after performing the following actions, contact your Lexus dealer.

## Stop the vehicle immediately.

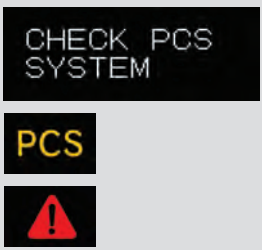
A buzzer sounds and a warning message is shown on the multi-information display. The following warnings indicate the possibility of damage to the vehicle that may lead to an accident. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

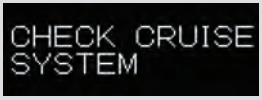
| Warning message | Details |
|---|---|
| LOW OIL PRESSURE (U.S.A.)<br>LOW OIL PRESSURE (Canada)<br>(Flashing) | **Abnormal engine oil pressure.**<br>The warning light may turn on if the engine oil pressure is too low. |

## Have the vehicle inspected immediately.

A buzzer sounds and a warning message is shown on the multi-information display. Failure to investigate the cause of the following warnings may lead to the system operating abnormally and possibly cause an accident. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

| Warning message | Details |
|---|---|
|  | **Malfunction in the automatic headlight leveling system.** |
|  | **Malfunction in the rear lights system.** |
|  (Flashing) | **Malfunction in the steering lock system.** |

| Warning message | Details |
|---|---|
|  (AWD models) | **Malfunction in the AWD system.** |
|  (If equipped) | **Intuitive parking assist malfunction.** The malfunctioning sensor is shown flashing on the display. |
|  (If equipped) | **Malfunction in the active stabilizer suspension system.** |
|  (If equipped) | **Malfunction in the PCS.** |

| Warning message | Details |
|---|---|
|   (Flashing)  (If equipped) | **Malfunction in the radar cruise control system.** Stop the vehicle in a safe place. Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to OFF and then to IGNITION ON mode again to reset the cruise control system. |
|   | **Malfunction in the charging system.** |
|   | **Malfunction in the power steering system.** |
|  | **Malfunction in the brake system.** |
|  | **Malfunction in the ABS.** |

## Have the vehicle inspected immediately.

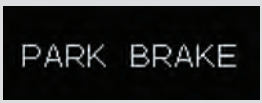
Failure to investigate the cause of the following warnings may lead to the system operating abnormally and possibly cause an accident. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

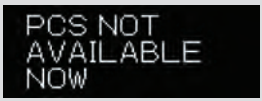
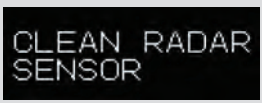
| Warning message | Details |
|---|---|
|  (GS460) | **Malfunction in the VGRS.** |
|  (If equipped, steering guide symbol and arrows are flashing) | **The steering sensor cable is broken and signals cannot be received.** |

## Have the malfunction repaired immediately.

A buzzer sounds and a warning message is shown on the multi-information display. After taking the specified steps to correct the suspected problem, check that the warning message turns off.

| Warning message | Details | Correction procedure |
|---|---|---|
|  | **One or more of the doors is not fully closed.**<br>The system also indicates which doors are not fully closed.<br>flashes and a buzzer sounds to indicate that one or more of the doors is not fully closed (with the vehicle having reached a speed of 3 mph [5 km/h]). | Make sure that all of the doors are closed. |
|  | **The hood is not fully closed.**<br>flashes and a buzzer sounds to indicate that hood is not fully closed (with the vehicle having reached a speed of 3 mph [5 km/h]). | Close the hood. |

| Warning message | Details | Correction procedure |
|---|---|---|
|  | **The trunk is not fully closed.**<br> flashes and a buzzer sounds to indicate that trunk is not fully closed (with the vehicle having reached a speed of 3 mph [5 km/h]). | Close the trunk. |
| <br> (Flashing)<br>(If equipped) | **The moon roof is not fully closed (with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is OFF and the driver's door opened).** | Close the moon roof. |
| <br> (Flashing) | **The parking brake is still engaged (with the vehicle having reached a speed of more than 3 mph [5 km/h]).** | Release the parking brake. |
| <br> | **The washer fluid level is low.** | Add washer fluid. |
| <br> | **The engine oil level is low.** | Check the engine oil level, and add if necessary. |

| Warning message | Details | Correction procedure |
|---|---|---|
| <br><br>(U.S.A. only) | **The engine oil should be changed.**<br>**Comes on approximately 5000 miles (8000 km) after the engine oil is changed (and the oil maintenance data has been reset).** | Check and change the engine oil. |
| <br><br>(If equipped) | **Intuitive parking assist is dirty or covered with ice.** | Clean the sensor. |
| <br> (Flashing)<br>(If equipped) | **The PCS is not currently functional.** | • Clean the grille and the sensor.<br>• This message appears when the pre-collision system is hot. In this case, wait until the system cools down. |
| <br> (Flashing)<br><br>(If equipped) | **The radar cruise control sensor is dirty or covered with ice.** | Clean the sensor. |

| Warning message | Details | Correction procedure |
|---|---|---|
|   (Flashing)  (If equipped) | **The radar cruise control system is unable to judge vehicle-to-vehicle distance.** | • Turn the mode select switch to either the normal or power mode.<br>• If the windshield wipers are on, turn them off or set them to either the intermittent or the slow mode. |
|  (If equipped, flashing) | **Your vehicle is nearing the vehicle ahead (in radar cruise mode).** | Slow the vehicle by applying the brakes. |
|   (Flashing) (If equipped) | **Alerts the driver that there is a high possibility of collision or the pre-collision braking has activated.** | Depress the brake pedal. |

■ **After changing the engine oil (U.S.A. only)**

Make sure to reset the oil maintenance data. (→P. 453)

■ **Approach warning message**

In the following instances, there is the possibility that the approach warning will not activate even when the vehicle-to-vehicle distance decreases.

- When your vehicle and the vehicle ahead are traveling at the same speed or the vehicle ahead is traveling more quickly than your vehicle.
- When the vehicle ahead is traveling at very low speed.
- Immediately after cruise control speed is set.
- At the instant the accelerator pedal is depressed.

## Other messages

If the following message is displayed, take appropriate action and confirm that the message has disappeared.

| Message | Details |
|---|---|
|  (If equipped) | **Calibrate the neutral position of the steering wheel.** |

### Initializing the steering sensor

Use one of the following methods.

- With the vehicle stopped, turn the steering wheel all the way to the left and right. (The order is not important.)
- Drive for more than 5 minutes on an un-crowded road with as few curves and corners as possible.

If the steering guide symbol disappears, the steering sensor has been initialized. If the steering guide symbol does not disappear, have the vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

## Have the malfunction repaired immediately.

After taking the specified steps to correct the suspected problem, check that the warning message and light turn off.

| Interior buzzer | Exterior buzzer | Warning message | Details | Correction procedure |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Once | — | KEY IS NOT DETECTED (Comes on for 10 seconds)  (Flashing) | The electronic key is not detected when attempting to start the engine. | Confirm the location of the electronic key. |
| Once | 3 times | KEY IS NOT DETECTED  (Flashing) | An open door other than the driver's door is closed while the electronic key is outside the detection range and the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode. | Confirm the location of the electronic key. |

| Interior buzzer | Exterior buzzer | Warning message | Details | Correction procedure |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Once | 3 times | KEY IS NOT DETECTED<br> (Flashing) | The electronic key was carried outside the vehicle and the driver's door was opened and closed with the shift lever in P without turning off the "ENGINE START STOP" switch. | Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to OFF or confirm the location of the electronic key. |
| Continuous | Continuous | SHIFT TO P RANGE<br>KEY IS NOT DETECTED<br>(Displayed alternately)<br> (Flashing) | The electronic key was carried outside the vehicle and the driver's door was opened and closed while any shift position other than P was selected without turning off the "ENGINE START STOP" switch. | • Shift the shift lever to "P".<br>• Confirm the location of the electronic key. |
| Once | — | LOW KEY BATTERY<br>(Comes on for 10 seconds)<br> (Flashing) | The electronic key battery is low. | Replace the battery. (→P. 482) |

| Interior buzzer | Exterior buzzer | Warning message | Details | Correction procedure |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| — | — | WHEN STARTING THE ENGINE, DEPRESS THE BRAKE PEDAL | An open door has been closed and the "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been turned twice to the ACCESSORY mode from OFF. | Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch while applying the brakes. |
| — | — | S/T IS NOT UNLOCKED  (Flashing) | The steering lock has not released within 3 seconds of pressing the "ENGINE START STOP" switch. The "ENGINE START STOP" switch indicator will flash green for 15 seconds. | Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch again while turning the steering wheel with the brake pedal depressed. |
| Once | — | DEPRESS THE BRAKE PEDAL, AND TOUCH THE ENGINE SWITCH WITH THE KEY (Comes on for 60 seconds) | The electronic key does not operate properly. | →P. 571 |
| — | — | TO START, DEPRESS THE BRAKE PEDAL, AND PUSH THE ENGINE SWITCH (Comes on for 10 seconds) | | |

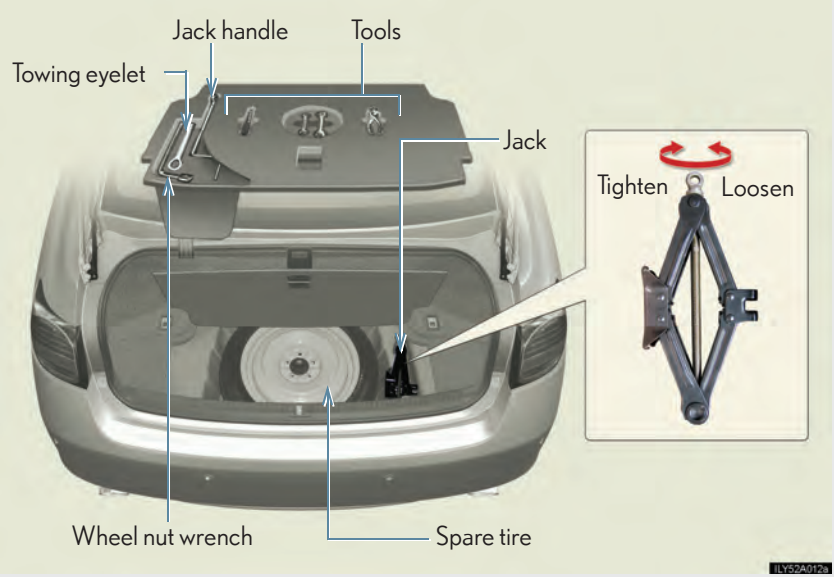
# If you have a flat tire (Vehicles with standard tires)

**Remove the flat tire and replace it with the spare provided.**

## Before jacking up the vehicle

- Stop the vehicle on a hard, flat surface.
- Set the parking brake.
- Shift the shift lever to "P".
- Stop the engine.
- Turn on the emergency flashers.

## Location of the spare tire, jack and tools



## Compact spare tire

The compact tire saves space in your luggage compartment, and its lighter weight helps to enhance fuel economy and permits easier installation in case of a flat tire.




The compact spare tire is designed for temporary emergency use only.

### The compact spare tire

- The compact spare tire is identified by the label "TEMPORARY USE ONLY" on the tire sidewall.
  Use the compact spare tire temporarily only in an emergency.
- Make sure to check the tire inflation pressure of the compact spare tire. (→P. 598)

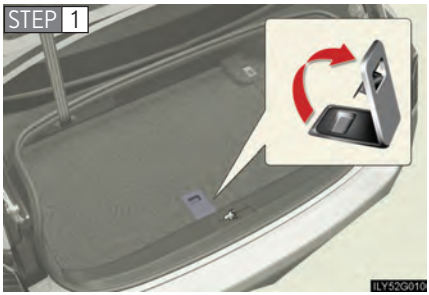
### Tread life

The compact spare tire can be used many times, if necessary. It has tread life of up to 3000 miles (4800 km) depending on road conditions and your driving habits. When treadwear indicators appear on the tire, replace the tire. (→P. 463)

### When using the compact spare tire

As the compact spare tire is not equipped with the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, low inflation pressure of the spare tire will not be warned. Also, if you replace the compact spare tire after the tire pressure warning light comes on, the light remains on.

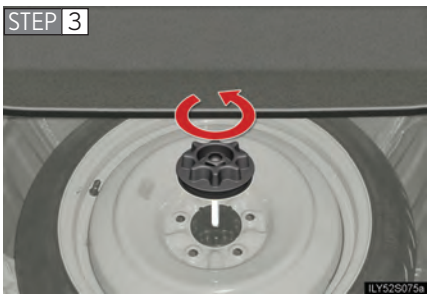
## Taking out the spare tire




Lift up the hook of the panel on the trunk floor.




Secure the panel using the hook provided. Then take out the tool tray.




Loosen the center fastener that secures the spare tire.

If the center fastener cannot be turned by hand, use the wrench that is stored in the trunk. (To secure the tire, tighten the center fastener by hand. Do not use the wrench or other tools.)

## Replacing a flat tire

STEP 1



Chock the tires.

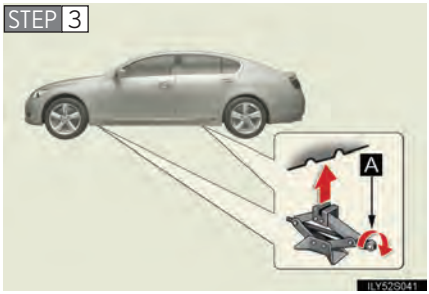
| Flat tire | | Wheel chock positions |
|---|---|---|
| Front | Left-hand side | Behind the rear right-hand side tire |
| | Right-hand side | Behind the rear left-hand side tire |
| Rear | Left-hand side | In front of the front right-hand side tire |
| | Right-hand side | In front of the front left-hand side tire |

STEP 2



Slightly loosen the wheel nuts (one turn).

STEP 3




Turn the tire jack portion "A" by hand until the notch of the jack is in contact with the jack point.

STEP 4




Raise the vehicle until the tire is slightly raised off the ground.

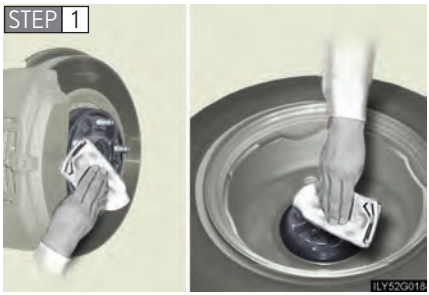
STEP 5




Remove all the wheel nuts and the tire.

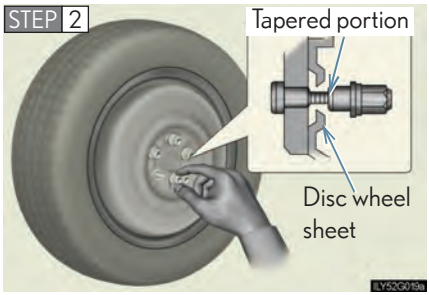
When resting the tire on the ground, place the tire so that the wheel design faces up to avoid scratching the wheel surface.

## Installing the spare tire



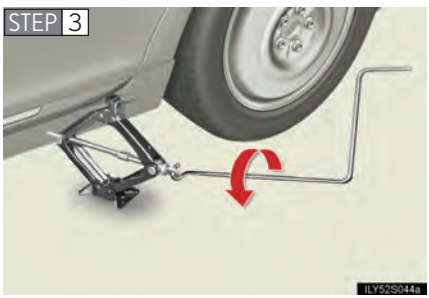

Remove any dirt or foreign matter from the wheel contact surface.

If foreign matter is on the wheel contact surface, the wheel nuts may loosen while the vehicle is in motion, and the tire may come off the vehicle.

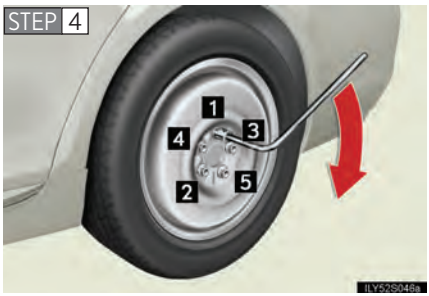



Install the spare tire and loosely tighten each wheel nut by hand to approximately the same amount.

Tighten the wheel nuts until the tapered portion comes into loose contact with the disc wheel sheet.




Lower the vehicle.




Firmly tighten each nut two or three times in the order shown in the illustration.

**Tightening torque:**
76 ft•lbf (103 N•m, 10.5 kgf•m)

STEP 5 Stow the flat tire, tire jack and all tools.

---

■ **If you have a flat rear tire on a road covered with snow or ice**

Install the compact spare tire on the front of the vehicle. Perform the following steps and fit tire chains to the rear tires.

STEP 1 Replace a front tire with the compact spare tire.

STEP 2 Replace the flat rear tire with the tire removed from the front of the vehicle.

STEP 3 Fit tire chains to the rear tires.

■ **After completing the tire change**

The tire pressure warning system must be reset. (→P. 464)

## ⚠ CAUTION

### ■ Using the tire jack

Improper use of the tire jack may lead to death or serious injuries due to the vehicle suddenly falling off the jack.

- Do not use the tire jack for any purpose other than replacing tires or installing and removing tire chains.
- Only use the tire jack that comes with this vehicle for replacing a flat tire. Do not use it on other vehicles, and do not use other tire jacks for replacing tires on this vehicle.
- Always check that the tire jack is securely set to the jack point.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is in it.
- When raising the vehicle, do not put an object on or under the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle to a height greater than that required to replace the tire.
- Use a jack stand if it is necessary to get under the vehicle.
- Do not put any part of your body under the vehicle supported by a jack.
- Do not start or run the engine while your vehicle is supported by the jack.

Take particular care when lowering the vehicle to ensure that no one working on or near the vehicle may be injured.

### ■ Replacing a flat tire

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of death or serious injury.

- Never use oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts. Oil and grease may cause the wheel nuts to be excessively tightened, leading to bolt or disc wheel damage. In addition, the oil or grease can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel may fall off, causing a serious accident. Remove any oil or grease from the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
- Have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 76 ft•lbf (103 N•m, 10.5 kgf•m) as soon as possible after changing wheels. Failure to follow these precautions could cause the nuts to loosen and the wheels may fall off, which could lead to an accident causing death or serious injury.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ When using the compact spare tire**

- Remember that your spare tire is specifically designed for use with your vehicle. Do not use your spare tire on another vehicle.
- Do not use two spare tires simultaneously.
- Replace the spare tire with a standard tire as soon as possible.
- Avoid sudden acceleration, deceleration and braking, as well as sharp cornering.

**■ Speed limit when using the compact spare tire**

Do not drive at speeds in excess of 50 mph (80 km/h) when a compact spare tire is installed on the vehicle.

The compact spare tire is not designed for driving at high speeds. Failing to observe this precaution may lead to an accident causing death or serious injury.

**■ When the compact spare tire is attached**

The vehicle speed may not be correctly detected, and the following systems may not operate correctly:

- ABS
- Brake assist
- Enhanced VSC
- TRAC
- EPS
- VGRS (GS460)
- VDIM
- Cruise control (if equipped)
- Dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped)
- Navigation system (if equipped)
- Intuitive parking assist (if equipped)
- Rear view monitor system (if equipped)
- Active stabilizer suspension system (if equipped)
- AVS (if equipped)

## ⚠ NOTICE

**■ Do not drive the vehicle with a flat tire**

Do not continue driving with a flat tire.
Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair.

**■ Be careful when driving over bumps with the compact spare tire installed on the vehicle**

The vehicle becomes lower when driving with the compact spare tire compared to when driving with standard tires. Be careful when driving over uneven road surfaces.

**■ Driving with tire chains and the compact spare tire**

Do not fit tire chains to the compact spare tire.
Tire chains may damage the vehicle body and adversely affect driving performance.

**■ When replacing the tires**

When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.

**■ To avoid damaging the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters**

Do not use liquid sealants on flat tires.

# If you have a flat tire (Vehicles with run-flat tires)

**Take your vehicle to the nearest Lexus dealer or authorized tire dealer as soon as possible.**

## Run-flat tires (A "RFT" or "DSST" mark is molded on the sidewall)




You can continue driving the vehicle with run-flat tires even if any tire goes flat.

The vehicle is able to run for a maximum of 100 miles (160 km) at a speed below 55 mph (90 km/h) after the tire pressure warning light comes on.
(→P. 537)

---

**In some condition (such as at high temperatures)**

You can not continue driving for up to 100 miles (160 km).

**Spare tire**

A spare tire is not provided on the vehicle with run-flat tires.

**If you cannot distinguish between standard tires and run-flat tires**

Consult your Lexus dealer.

**For detailed information on run-flat tires**

See the tire warranty book.

NOTICE

**When replacing the tires**

When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.

**To avoid damaging the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters**

Do not use liquid sealants on flat tires.

# If the engine will not start

**If the engine will not start even though correct starting procedures are being followed (→P. 135), consider each of the following points.**

## The engine will not start even if you are carrying the correct electronic key

One of the following may be the cause of the problem.

- There may not be sufficient fuel in the vehicle's tank.
  Add fuel to the vehicle.
- The engine may be flooded.
  Try to restart the engine once more following correct starting procedures. (→P. 135)
- There may be a malfunction in the immobilizer system. (→P. 85)

## The starter motor turns over slowly, the interior lights and headlights are dim, or the horn does not sound or sounds at a low volume

One of the following may be the cause of the problem.

- The 12 volt battery may be discharged. (→P. 574)
- The 12 volt battery terminal connections may be loose or corroded.

## The starter motor does not turn over, the interior lights and headlights do not turn on, or the horn does not sound

One of the following may be the cause of the problem.

- One or both of the 12 volt battery terminals may be disconnected.
- The 12 volt battery may be discharged. (→P. 574)

Contact your Lexus dealer if the problem cannot be repaired, or if repair procedures are unknown.

# If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P"

**If the shift lever cannot be shifted with your foot on the brake, there may be a problem with the shift lock system (a system to prevent accidental operation of the shift lever). Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

**The following steps may be used as an emergency measure to ensure that the shift lever can be shifted.**

STEP 1 Set the parking brake.

STEP 2 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to the ACCESSORY mode.

STEP 3 Depress the brake pedal.

STEP 4




Pry the cover up with a flathead screwdriver or equivalent.

STEP 5




Press the shift lock override button.

The shift lever can be shifted while the button is pressed.

# If you lose your keys

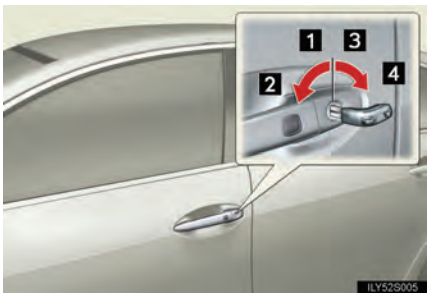
New genuine Lexus keys can be made by your Lexus dealer using one of the other keys and the key number stamped on your key number plate.

# If the electronic key does not operate properly

If communication between the electronic key and vehicle is interrupted (→P. 33) or the electronic key cannot be used because the battery is depleted, the smart access system with push-button start and wireless remote control cannot be used. In such cases, the doors and trunk can be opened or the engine can be started by following the procedure below.

## Locking and unlocking the doors, unlocking the trunk and key linked functions

▶ Doors




Using the mechanical key (→P. 25) in order to perform the following operations:

1 Locks all doors

2 Closes the windows/moon roof (turn and hold)

3 Unlocks the door

Turning the key rearward unlocks the driver's door.

Turning the key once again unlocks the other doors.

4 Opens the windows/moon roof (turn and hold)

▶ Trunk



Turn the mechanical key clockwise to open.

## Changing "ENGINE START STOP" switch modes and starting the engine

STEP 1 Put the shift lever in "P" and apply the brakes.



STEP 2 Touch the Lexus emblem side of the electronic key to the "ENGINE START STOP" switch.

An alarm will sound to indicate that the start function cannot detect the electronic key that is touched to the "ENGINE START STOP" switch if any of the doors is opened and closed while the key is touched to the switch.

STEP 3 To change the "ENGINE START STOP" switch modes: Within 10 seconds of the buzzer sounding, release the brake pedal and press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch. Modes can be changed each time the switch is pressed. (→P. 136)

To start the engine: Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch within 10 seconds after the buzzer sounds, keeping the brake pedal depressed.

If the "ENGINE START STOP" switch still cannot be operated, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Stopping the engine**

Shift the shift lever to "P" and press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch as you normally do when stopping the engine.

■ **Replacing the key battery**

As the above procedure is a temporary measure, it is recommended that the electronic key battery be replaced immediately when the battery depletes. (→P. 482)

# If the 12 volt battery is discharged

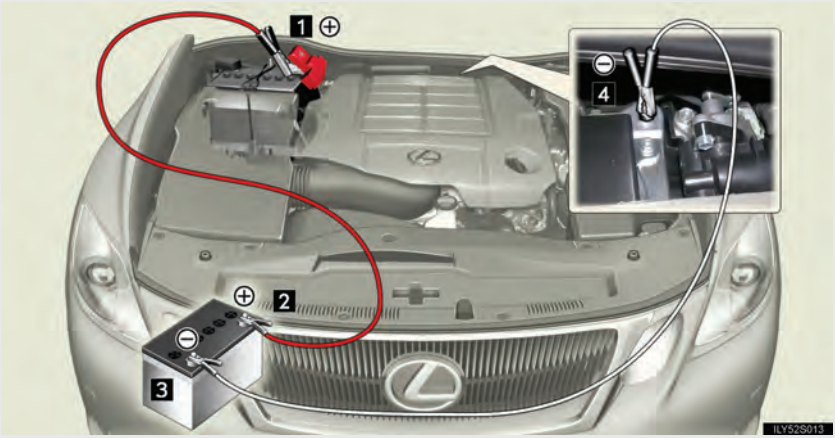
**The following procedures may be used to start the engine if the 12 volt battery is discharged.**
**You can call your Lexus dealer or qualified repair shop.**

If you have a set of jumper (or booster) cables and a second vehicle with a 12 volt battery, you can jump start your Lexus following the steps below.

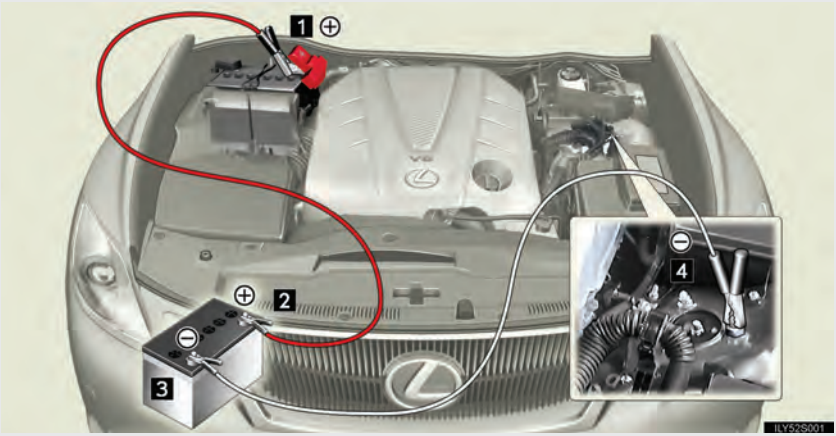
STEP 1 Open the door using the mechanical key, then open the hood.
GS350: Remove the engine compartment covers.

STEP 2 Connect the jumper cables.

▶ GS460



▶ GS350




1 Positive (+) battery terminal on your vehicle.

2 Positive (+) battery terminal on the second vehicle.

3 Negative (-) battery terminal on the second vehicle.

4 Connect the jumper cable to ground on your vehicle as shown.

STEP 3 Start the engine of the second vehicle. Increase the engine speed slightly and maintain at that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the 12 volt battery of your vehicle.

STEP 4 Open and close any of the doors with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is OFF.

STEP 5 Maintain the engine speed on the second vehicle and turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to the IGNITION ON mode, then start the vehicle's engine.

STEP 6 Once the vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the exact reverse order in which they were connected.

Once the engine starts, have the vehicle checked at your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ **Starting the engine when the 12 volt battery is discharged**

The engine cannot be started by push-starting.

■ **To prevent 12 volt battery discharge**

- Turn off the headlights and the audio system while the engine is turned off.
- Turn off any unnecessary electrical components when the vehicle is running at a low speed for an extended period, such as in heavy traffic, etc.

■ **When the 12 volt battery is removed or discharged**

The intuitive parking assist must be initialized. (→P. 552)

**⚠ CAUTION**

■ **Avoiding battery fires or explosions**

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidentally igniting the flammable gas that may be emitted from the battery.

- Make sure the jumper cable is connected to the correct terminal and that it is not unintentionally in contact with any part other than the intended terminal.
- Do not allow the jumper cables to come into contact with the "+" and "-" terminals.
- Do not allow open flame or use matches, cigarette lighters or smoke near the battery.

## CAUTION

**Battery precautions**

The battery contains poisonous and corrosive acidic electrolyte, while related parts contain lead and lead compounds. Observe the following precautions when handling the battery:

- When working with the battery, always wear safety glasses and take care not to allow any battery fluids (acid) to come into contact with skin, clothing or the vehicle body.
- Do not lean over the battery.
- If the battery fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, immediately wash the affected area with water and seek medical attention.
  Place a wet sponge or cloth over the affected area until medical attention can be received.
- Always wash your hands after handling the battery support, terminals, and other battery-related parts.
- Do not allow children near the battery.

## NOTICE

**When handling jumper cables**

Be careful that the jumper cables do not become tangled in the cooling fan or any of the belts when connecting or disconnecting them.

**If your engine overheats:**

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the air conditioning system.

STEP 2 Check to see if steam is coming out from under the hood.

If you see steam:

Stop the engine. Carefully lift the hood after the steam subsides and then restart the engine.

If you do not see steam:

Leave the engine running and carefully lift the hood.

STEP 3 Remove the engine compartment cover. (→P. 450)

STEP 4 Check to see if the cooling fan is operating.

If the fan is operating:

Wait until the engine coolant temperature gauge begins to fall and then stop the engine.

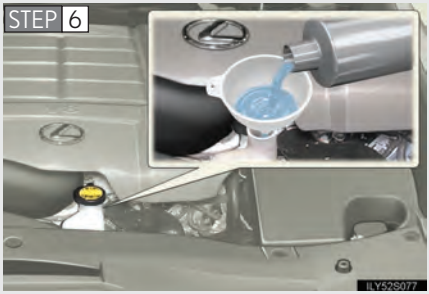
If the fan is not operating:

Stop the engine immediately and call your Lexus dealer.

STEP 5




After the engine has cooled down sufficiently, check the coolant level and inspect the radiator core (radiator) for any leaks.




Add coolant if necessary.

Water can be used in an emergency measure if coolant is unavailable. (→P. 594)

Have the vehicle checked at your nearest Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

### Overheating

In the following situations, your vehicle may be overheating.

- The engine coolant temperature gauge enters the red zone or a loss of power is experienced.
- Steam is coming from under the hood.

**CAUTION**

**To prevent an accident or injury when inspecting under the hood of your vehicle**

- If steam is seen coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the steam has subsided. The engine compartment may be very hot, causing serious injury such as burns.
- Keep hands and clothing away from the fan and engine drive belt while the engine is running.
- Do not loosen the radiator cap while the engine and radiator are hot.
  Serious injury, such as burns, may result from hot coolant and steam released under pressure.

NOTICE

**When adding coolant**

Wait until the engine has cooled down before adding coolant.
When adding coolant, do so slowly. Adding cool coolant to a hot engine too quickly can cause damage to the engine.

# If the vehicle becomes stuck

**Carry out the following procedures if the tires spin or the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt, or snow.**

STEP 1 Stop the engine. Set the parking brake and shift the shift lever in "P".

STEP 2 Remove the mud, snow, or sand from around the stuck tire.

STEP 3 Place wood, stones or some other material to help provide traction under the tires.

STEP 4 Restart the engine.

STEP 5 Shift the shift lever to the "D" or "R" position and carefully apply the accelerator to free the vehicle.

Turn off TRAC/Enhanced VSC if these functions are hampering your attempts to free the vehicle. (→P. 202)

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ When attempting to free a stuck vehicle**

If you choose to rock the vehicle back and forth to free it, make sure the surrounding area is clear, to avoid striking other vehicles, objects or persons. The vehicle may also lunge forward or lunge back suddenly as it becomes free. Use extreme caution.

**■ When shifting the shift lever**

Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed.
This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ To avoid damaging the automatic transmission and other components

- Avoid spinning the wheels and racing the engine.
- If the vehicle remains stuck after trying these procedures, the vehicle may require towing to be freed.

# If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency

**Only in an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way, stop the vehicle using the following procedure:**

STEP 1 Steadily step on the brake pedal with both feet and firmly depress it.

Do not pump the brake pedal repeatedly as this will increase the effort required to slow the vehicle.

STEP 2 Shift the shift lever to "N".

▶ If the shift lever is shifted to "N"

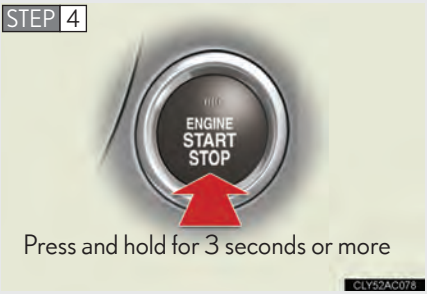
STEP 3 After slowing down, stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

STEP 4 Stop the engine.

▶ If the shift lever cannot be shifted to "N"

STEP 3 Keep depressing the brake pedal with both feet to reduce vehicle speed as much as possible.

STEP 4




Stop the engine by pressing and holding the "ENGINE START STOP" switch for 3 consecutive seconds or more.

STEP 5 Stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

## CAUTION

**■ If the engine has to be turned off while driving**

Power assist for the brakes and steering wheel will be lost, making the brake pedal harder to depress and the steering wheel heavier to turn. Decelerate as much as possible before turning off the engine.

# Vehicle specifications 6


**6-1. Specifications**

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.) ..... 586

Fuel information ..... 601

Tire information ..... 604

**6-2. Customization**

Customizable features ..... 618

**6-3. Initialization**

Items to initialize ..... 624

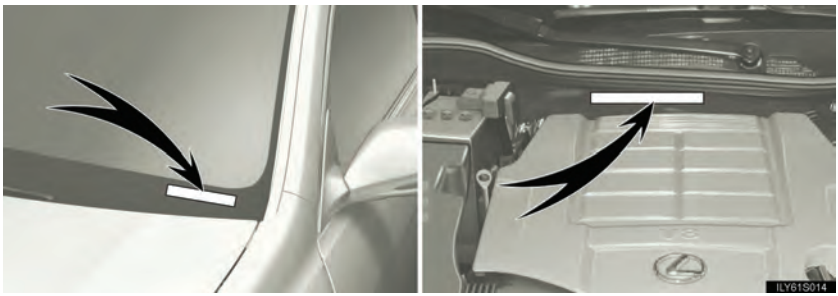
## Dimensions and weight

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Overall length | | 190.7 in. (4845 mm) |
| Overall width | | 71.6 in. (1820 mm) |
| Overall height* | 2WD | 56.1 in. (1425 mm) |
| | 4WD | 56.4 in. (1435 mm) |
| Wheelbase | | 112.2 in. (2850 mm) |
| Tread | Front | 60.4 in. (1535 mm) |
| | Rear<br>2WD<br>4WD | <br>60.6 in. (1540 mm)<br>60.4 in. (1535 mm) |
| Vehicle capacity weight (Occupants + luggage) | | 815 lb. (370 kg) |

*: Unladen vehicle

## Vehicle identification

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the legal identifier for your vehicle. This is the primary identification number for your Lexus. It is used in registering the ownership of your vehicle.




This number is stamped on the top left of the instrument panel and in the engine compartment.



This number is also on the Certification Label.

## Engine number

▶ GS460




▶ GS350




The engine number is stamped on the location as shown.

## Engine

| | GS460 | GS350 |
|---|---|---|
| Model | 1UR-FSE | 2GR-FSE |
| Type | 8-cylinder V type, 4-cycle, gasoline | 6-cylinder V type, 4-cycle, gasoline |
| Bore and stroke | 3.70 × 3.27 in. (94.0 × 83.0 mm) | |
| Displacement | 281.2 cu.in. (4608 $cm^3$) | 210.9 cu.in. (3456 $cm^3$) |
| Drive belt tension | Automatic adjustment | |

## Fuel

| | |
|---|---|
| Fuel type | Premium unleaded gasoline only |
| Octane Rating | 91 (Research Octane Number 96) or higher |
| Fuel tank capacity | 18.7 gal. (71 L, 15.6 Imp.gal.) |

## Lubrication system

▶ GS460

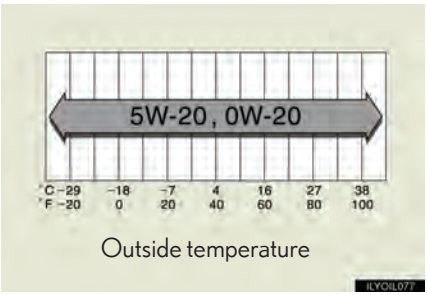
| | |
|---|---|
| Oil capacity<br>Drain and refill<br>(Reference)<br>With filter<br>Without filter | <br><br><br>9.1 qt. (8.6 L, 7.6 Imp.qt.)<br>8.9 qt. (8.4 L, 7.4 Imp.qt.) |

### Engine oil selection

"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" is used in your Lexus vehicle. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent to satisfy the following grade and viscosity.

Oil grade: ILSAC multigrade engine oil

Recommended viscosity: SAE 5W-20 or 0W-20




SAE 5W-20 or 0W-20 engine oil may be used. However, SAE 0W-20 is the best choice for good fuel economy and good starting in cold weather.

The 0W portion of the oil viscosity rating indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.

The 20 in 0W-20 indicates the oil viscosity when the oil is at its operating temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity may be better suited if the vehicle is operated at high speeds, or under extreme load conditions.

How to read oil container label:

The ILSAC (International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee) Certification Mark is added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.



▶ GS350

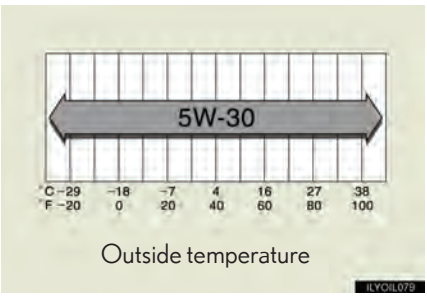
| | 2WD | 4WD |
|---|---|---|
| Oil capacity<br>Drain and refill<br>(Reference)<br>With filter<br>Without filter | <br><br><br>6.6 qt. (6.3 L, 5.5 Imp.qt.)<br>6.2 qt. (5.9 L, 5.2 Imp.qt.) | <br><br><br>6.7 qt. (6.4 L, 5.6 Imp.qt.)<br>6.3 qt. (6.0 L, 5.3 Imp.qt.) |

### Engine oil selection

"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" is used in your Lexus vehicle. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent to satisfy the following grade and viscosity.

Oil grade: ILSAC multigrade engine oil

Recommended viscosity: SAE 5W-30




SAE 5W-30 is the best choice for good fuel economy and good starting in cold weather.

If SAE 5W-30 is not available, SAE 10W-30 oil may be used. However, it should be replaced with SAE 5W-30 at the next oil change.

The 5W portion of the oil viscosity rating indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.

The 30 in 5W-30 indicates the oil viscosity when the oil is at its operating temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity may be better suited if the vehicle is operated at high speeds, or under extreme load conditions.

How to read oil container label:

The ILSAC (International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee) Certification Mark is added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.



## Cooling system

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Capacity | GS460 | 11.7 qt. (11.0 L, 9.7 Imp.qt.) |
| | GS350 | 9.6 qt. (9.1 L, 8.0 Imp.qt.) |
| Coolant type | | Use either of the following:<br>• "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant"<br>• Similar high-quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology<br>Do not use plain water alone. |

## Ignition system

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Spark plug | | |
| Make | DENSO | FK20HBR11 |
| Gap | | 0.043 in. (1.1 mm) |

### ⚠ NOTICE

**■ Iridium-tipped spark plugs**

Use only iridium-tipped spark plugs. Do not adjust gap when tuning engine.

## Electrical system

| | |
|---|---|
| 12 volt battery<br>Open voltage at 68°F (20°C): | 12.6—12.8V Fully charged<br>12.2—12.4V Half charged<br>11.8—12.0V Discharged<br>(Voltage is checked 20 minutes after the engine and all lights are turned off.) |
| Charging rates | 5A max. |

## Differential

| | GS460/ GS350 (2WD) | GS350 (4WD) | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | Front | Rear |
| Oil capacity | 1.42 qt. (1.35 L, 1.19 Imp.qt.) | 0.73 qt. (0.70 L, 0.61 Imp.qt.) | 1.42 qt. (1.35 L, 1.19 Imp.qt.) |
| Oil type and viscosity | Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil LT 75W-85 GL-5 or equivalent | Hypoid gear oil API GL-5<br>Above 0°F (-18°C): SAE 90<br>Below 0°F (-18°C): SAE 80W or SAE 80W-90 | Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil LT 75W-85 GL-5 or equivalent |

Rear differential: "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" is filled in your Lexus vehicle at factory fill. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" or an equivalent of matching quality to satisfy the above specification. Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

## Automatic transmission

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Fluid capacity* | GS460 | 11.4 qt. (10.8 L, 9.5 Imp.qt.) |
| | GS350 (2WD) | 8.3 qt. (7.9 L, 7.0 Imp.qt.) |
| | GS350 (4WD) | 10.6 qt. (10.0 L, 8.8 Imp.qt.) |
| Fluid type | | Toyota Genuine ATF WS |

*: The fluid capacity is the quantity of reference. If replacement is necessary, contact your Lexus dealer.

### NOTICE

**Automatic transmission fluid type**

Using automatic transmission fluid other than "Toyota Genuine ATF WS" may cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your automatic transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage the automatic transmission of your vehicle.

## Brakes

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pedal clearance | GS460 *1 | 2.9 in. (74 mm) Min. |
| | GS350 *2 | 2.6 in. (65 mm) Min. |
| Pedal free play | GS460 | Less than 0.08 in. (2.0 mm) |
| | GS350 | 0.04 — 0.08 in. (1.0 — 2.0 mm) |
| Brake pad wear limit | | 0.04 in. (1.0 mm) |
| Parking brake pedal travel *3 | | 7 — 9 clicks |
| Parking brake lining wear limit | | 0.04 in. (1.0 mm) |
| Fluid type | | SAE J1703 or FMVSS No. 116 DOT 3 |

*1: Minimum pedal clearance when depressed with a force of 196 N (20.0 kgf, 44 lbf) while the engine is running.

*2: Minimum pedal clearance when depressed with a force of 490 N (50.0 kgf, 110 lbf) while the engine is running.

*3: Parking brake pedal travel when depressed with a force of 300 N (30.6 kgf, 67.4 lbf).

## Steering

| | |
|---|---|
| Free play | Less than 1.2 in. (30 mm) |

## Tires and wheels

▶ Type A

| | |
|---|---|
| Tire size | 245/40R18 93Y, 245/40RF18 93Y, P245/40R18 93V, P245/40RF18 93V, 245/40ZR18, T155/70D17 110M (spare) |
| Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure) | Driving under normal conditions<br>Front: 33 psi (230 kPa, 2.3 kgf/cm$^2$ or bar)<br>Rear: 33 psi (230 kPa, 2.3 kgf/cm$^2$ or bar)<br>Driving at high speeds above 100 mph (160 km/h) (in countries where such speeds are permitted by law)<br>Add 9 psi (60 kPa, 0.6 kgf/cm$^2$ or bar) to the front tires and rear tires. Never exceed the maximum cold tire inflation pressure indicated on the tire sidewall. |
| Spare tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure) | 60 psi (420 kPa, 4.2 kgf/cm$^2$ or bar) |
| Wheel size | 18 × 8 J, 17 × 4T (spare) |
| Wheel nut torque | 76 ft•lbf (103 N•m, 10.5 kgf•m) |

▶ Type B

| | |
|---|---|
| Tire size | 225/50R17 94W, P225/50R17 93V, P225/50RF17 93V, T155/70D17 110M (spare) |
| Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure) | Driving under normal conditions<br>Front: 33 psi (230 kPa, 2.3 kgf/cm$^2$ or bar)<br>Rear: 33 psi (230 kPa, 2.3 kgf/cm$^2$ or bar)<br>Driving at high speeds above 100 mph (160 km/h) (in countries where such speeds are permitted by law)<br>Add 7 psi (50 kPa, 0.5 kgf/cm$^2$ or bar) to the front tires and rear tires. Never exceed the maximum cold tire inflation pressure indicated on the tire sidewall. |
| Spare tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure) | 60 psi (420 kPa, 4.2 kgf/cm$^2$ or bar) |
| Wheel size | 17 × 7 1/2 J, 17 × 4T (spare) |
| Wheel nut torque | 76 ft•lbf (103 N•m, 10.5 kgf•m) |

## Light bulbs

| | Light bulbs | Bulb No. | W | Type |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Exterior | Headlights (low beam) | D4S | 35 | A |
| | Headlights (high beam) | HB3 | 60 | B |
| | Front turn signal lights | — | 21 | C |
| | Parking lights | — | 5 | D |
| | Fog lights | HB4 | 51 | E |
| | Front side marker light | 194 | 5 | D |
| | Rear turn signal lights | — | 21 | C |
| | Back-up lights | 921 | 16 | D |
| | Trunk light | — | 5 | F |
| Interior | Vanity lights | — | 8 | D |

A: D4S high-intensity discharge bulbs
B: HB3 halogen bulbs
C: Wedge base bulbs (amber)
D: Wedge base bulbs (clear)
E: HB4 halogen bulbs
F: Double end bulbs

# Fuel information

**Your vehicle must use only unleaded gasoline.**
**Premium unleaded gasoline with an octane rating of 91 (Research Octane Number 96) or higher required for optimum engine performance. If 91 octane cannot be obtained, you may use unleaded gasoline with an octane rating as low as 87 (Research Octane Number 91). Use of unleaded gasoline with an significantly reduced performance. Persistent knocking can lead to engine damage and should be corrected by refueling with higher octane unleaded gasoline.**

At minimum, the gasoline you use should meet the specifications of ASTM D4814 in the U.S.A. and CGSB3.5-M93 in Canada.

## ■ Fuel tank opening for unleaded gasoline

To help prevent incorrect fueling, your Lexus has a fuel tank opening that only accommodates the special nozzle on unleaded fuel pumps.

## ■ If your engine knocks

- Consult your Lexus dealer.
- You may occasionally notice light knocking for a short time while accelerating or driving uphill. This is normal and there is no need for concern.

## ■ Gasoline quality

In very few cases, driveability problems may be caused by the brand of gasoline you are using. If driveability problems persist, try changing the brand of gasoline. If this does not correct the problem, consult your Lexus dealer.

■ **Gasoline quality standards**

- Automotive manufacturers in the US, Europe and Japan have developed a specification for fuel quality called World-Wide Fuel Charter (WWFC) that is expected to be applied worldwide.
- The WWFC consists of four categories that are based on required emission levels. In the US, category 4 has been adopted.
- The WWFC improves air quality by lowering emissions in vehicle fleets, and customer satisfaction through better performance.

■ **Lexus recommends the use of gasoline containing detergent additives**

- Lexus recommends the use of gasoline that contains detergent additives to avoid build-up of engine deposits.
- All gasoline sold in the US contains detergent additives to clean and/or keep clean intake systems.

■ **Lexus recommends the use of cleaner burning gasoline**

Cleaner burning gasoline, including reformulated gasoline that contains oxygenates such as ethanol or MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) is available in many areas.

Lexus recommends the use of cleaner burning gasoline and appropriately blended reformulated gasoline. These types of gasoline provide excellent vehicle performance, reduce vehicle emissions and improve air quality.

■ **Lexus does not recommend blended gasoline**

- Lexus allows the use of oxygenate blended gasoline where the oxygenate content is up to 10% ethanol or 15% MTBE.
- If you use gasohol in your Lexus, be sure that it has an octane rating no lower than 87.
- Lexus DOES NOT recommend the use of gasoline containing methanol.

### Lexus does not recommend gasoline containing MMT

Some gasoline contains octane enhancing additive called MMT (Methylcy clopentadienyl Manganese Tricarbonyl).

Lexus DOES NOT recommend the use of gasoline that contains MMT. If fuel containing MMT is used, your emission control system may be adversely affected.

The malfunction indicator lamp on the instrument cluster may come on. If this happens, contact your Lexus dealer for service.

### ⚠ NOTICE

### Notice on fuel quality

- Do not use improper fuels. If improper fuels are used the engine will be damaged.
- Do not use leaded gasoline.
  Leaded gasoline can cause damage to your vehicle's three-way catalytic converters causing the emission control system to malfunction.
- Do not use gasohol other than that stated here.
  Other gasohol may cause fuel system damage or vehicle performance problems.
- Using unleaded gasoline with an octane number or rating lower than that stated here will cause persistent heavy knocking.
  At worst, this will lead to engine damage.

### Fuel-related poor driveability

If after using a different type of fuel, poor driveability is encountered (poor hot starting, vaporization, engine knocking, etc.), discontinue the use of that type of fuel.

### When refueling with gasohol

Take care not to spill gasohol. It can damage your vehicle's paint.

## Typical tire symbols






1 Tire size (→P. 607)

2 DOT and Tire Identification Number (TIN) (→P. 606)

3 Location of treadwear indicators (→P. 463)

4 Run-flat tire (RFT) or standard tire (→P. 566)

This vehicle can be equipped with either run-flat tires (RFT) or standard tires. A "RFT" or "DSST" mark is molded on the sidewall of the run-flat tire.

5 Tire ply composition and materials

Plies are layers of rubber-coated parallel cords. Cords are the strands which form the plies in a tire.

6 Radial tires or bias-ply tires

A radial tire has RADIAL on the sidewall. A tire not marked RADIAL is a bias-ply tire.

7 TUBELESS or TUBE TYPE

A tubeless tire does not have a tube and air is directly filled in the tire. A tube type tire has a tube inside the tire and the tube maintains the air pressure.

8 Load limit at maximum cold tire inflation pressure (→P. 611)

9 Maximum cold tire inflation pressure (→P. 611)

This means the pressure to which a tire may be inflated.

10 Uniform tire quality grading

For details, see "Uniform Tire Quality Grading" that follows.

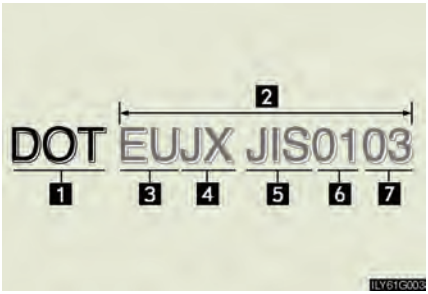
11 Summer tire or all season tire (→P. 468)

An all season tire has "M+S" on the sidewall. A tire not marked "M+S" is a summer tire.

12 "TEMPORARY USE ONLY"

A compact spare tire is identified by the phrase "TEMPORARY USE ONLY" molded into its sidewall. This tire is designed for temporary emergency use only.

## Typical DOT and tire identification number (TIN)



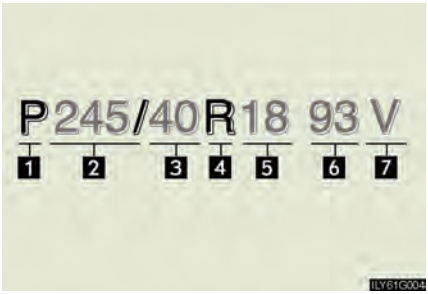

1 DOT symbol*
2 Tire Identification Number (TIN)
3 Tire manufacturer's identification mark
4 Tire size code
5 Manufacturer's optional tire type code (3 or 4 letters)
6 Manufacturing week
7 Manufacturing year

*: The DOT symbol certifies that the tire conforms to applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards.

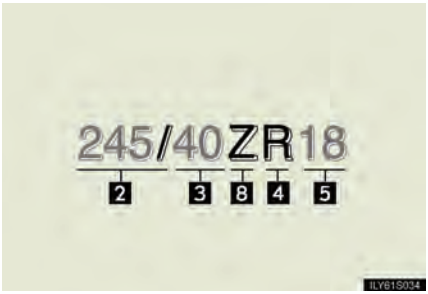
## Tire size

### Typical tire size information

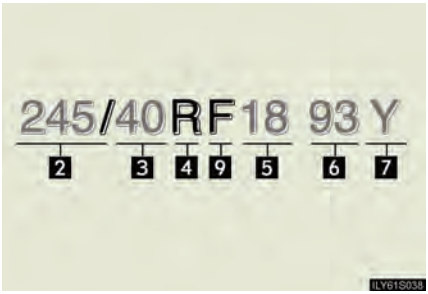
▶ Type A




▶ Type B




▶ Type C




The illustration indicates typical tire size.

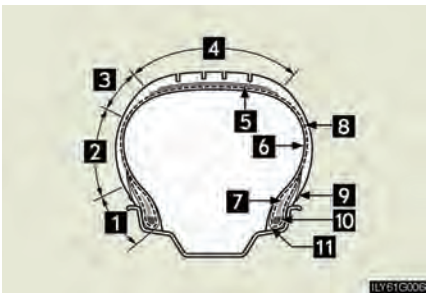
1 Tire use
(P = Passenger car,
T = Temporary use)
2 Section width (millimeters)
3 Aspect ratio
(tire height to section width)
4 Tire construction code
(R = Radial, D = Diagonal)
5 Wheel diameter (inches)
6 Load index (2 or 3 digits)
7 Speed symbol
(alphabet with one letter)
8 Speed category
(alphabet with one letter)
9 Run-flat tire code

## Tire dimensions




1 Section width
2 Tire height
3 Wheel diameter

## Tire section names




1 Bead
2 Sidewall
3 Shoulder
4 Tread
5 Belt
6 Inner liner
7 Reinforcing rubber
8 Carcass
9 Rim lines
10 Bead wires
11 Chafer

## Uniform Tire Quality Grading

This information has been prepared in accordance with regulations issued by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration of the U.S. Department of Transportation.
It provides the purchasers and/or prospective purchasers of Lexus vehicles with information on uniform tire quality grading.

Your Lexus dealer will help answer any questions you may have as you read this information.

### DOT quality grades

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades. Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example: Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A

### Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and a half (1 - 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.
The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

### Traction AA, A, B, C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C, and they represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete.

A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on braking (straight ahead) traction tests and does not include cornering (turning) traction.

### Temperature A, B, C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure.

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109.

Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Warning: The temperature grades for this tire are established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded.
Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

## Glossary of tire terminology

| Tire related term | Meaning |
|---|---|
| Cold tire inflation pressure | Tire pressure when the vehicle has been parked for three hours or more, or has not been driven more than 1 mile or 1.5 km under that condition |
| Maximum inflation pressure | The maximum cold inflated pressure to which a tire may be inflated, shown on the sidewall of the tire |
| Recommended inflation pressure | Cold tire inflation pressure recommended by a manufacturer |
| Accessory weight | The combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not) |
| Curb weight | The weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment, including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil and coolant, and if so equipped, air conditioning and additional weight optional engine |
| Maximum loaded vehicle weight | The sum of:<br>(a) Curb weight<br>(b) Accessory weight<br>(c) Vehicle capacity weight<br>(d) Production options weight |
| Normal occupant weight | 150 lb. (68 kg) times the number of occupants specified in the second column of Table 1* that follows |
| Occupant distribution | Distribution of occupants in a vehicle as specified in the third column of Table 1* below |

| Tire related term | Meaning |
|---|---|
| Production options weight | The combined weight of installed regular production options weighing over 5 lb. (2.3 kg) in excess of the standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy duty battery, and special trim |
| Rim | A metal support for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated |
| Rim diameter (Wheel diameter) | Nominal diameter of the bead seat |
| Rim size designation | Rim diameter and width |
| Rim type designation | The industry manufacturer's designation for a rim by style or code |
| Rim width | Nominal distance between rim flanges |
| Vehicle capacity weight (Total load capacity) | The rated cargo and luggage load plus 150 lb. (68 kg) times the vehicle's designated seating capacity |
| Vehicle maximum load on the tire | The load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight, and dividing by two |
| Vehicle normal load on the tire | The load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed in accordance with Table 1* below), and dividing by two |
| Weather side | The surface area of the rim not covered by the inflated tire |

| Tire related term | Meaning |
|---|---|
| Bead | The part of the tire that is made of steel wires, wrapped or reinforced by ply cords and that is shaped to fit the rim |
| Bead separation | A breakdown of the bond between components in the bead |
| Bias ply tire | A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at alternate angles substantially less than 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread |
| Carcass | The tire structure, except tread and sidewall rubber which, when inflated, bears the load |
| Chunking | The breaking away of pieces of the tread or sidewall |
| Cord | The strands forming the plies in the tire |
| Cord separation | The parting of cords from adjacent rubber compounds |
| Cracking | Any parting within the tread, sidewall, or innerliner of the tire extending to cord material |
| CT | A pneumatic tire with an inverted flange tire and rim system in which the rim is designed with rim flanges pointed radially inward and the tire is designed to fit on the underside of the rim in a manner that encloses the rim flanges inside the air cavity of the tire |
| Extra load tire | A tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire |
| Groove | The space between two adjacent tread ribs |

| Tire related term | Meaning |
|---|---|
| Innerliner | The layer(s) forming the inside surface of a tubeless tire that contains the inflating medium within the tire |
| Innerliner separation | The parting of the innerliner from cord material in the carcass |
| Intended outboard sidewall | (a) The sidewall that contains a whitewall, bears white lettering, or bears manufacturer, brand, and/or model name molding that is higher or deeper than the same molding on the other sidewall of the tire, or<br>(b) The outward facing sidewall of asymmetrical tire that has a particular side that must always face outward when mounted on a vehicle |
| Light truck (LT) tire | A tire designated by its manufacturer as primarily intended for use on lightweight trucks or multipurpose passenger vehicles |
| Load rating | The maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure |
| Maximum load rating | The load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire |
| Maximum permissible inflation pressure | The maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated |
| Measuring rim | The rim on which a tire is fitted for physical dimension requirements |
| Open splice | Any parting at any junction of tread, sidewall, or innerliner that extends to cord material |
| Outer diameter | The overall diameter of an inflated new tire |

| Tire related term | Meaning |
|---|---|
| Overall width | The linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, including elevations due to labeling, decorations, or protective bands or ribs |
| Passenger car tire | A tire intended for use on passenger cars, multipurpose passenger vehicles, and trucks, that have a gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) of 10,000 lb. or less |
| Ply | A layer of rubber-coated parallel cords |
| Ply separation | A parting of rubber compound between adjacent plies |
| Pneumatic tire | A mechanical device made of rubber, chemicals, fabric and steel or other materials, that, when mounted on an automotive wheel, provides the traction and contains the gas or fluid that sustains the load |
| Radial ply tire | A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at substantially 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread |
| Reinforced tire | A tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire |
| Section width | The linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, excluding elevations due to labeling, decoration, or protective bands |
| Sidewall | That portion of a tire between the tread and bead |
| Sidewall separation | The parting of the rubber compound from the cord material in the sidewall |

| Tire related term | Meaning |
|---|---|
| Snow tire | A tire that attains a traction index equal to or greater than 110, compared to the ASTM E-1136 Standard Reference Test Tire, when using the snow traction test as described in ASTM F-1805-00, Standard Test Method for Single Wheel Driving Traction in a Straight Line on Snow-and Ice-Covered Surfaces, and which is marked with an Alpine Symbol (  ) on at least one sidewall |
| Test rim | The rim on which a tire is fitted for testing, and may be any rim listed as appropriate for use with that tire |
| Tread | That portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road |
| Tread rib | A tread section running circumferentially around a tire |
| Tread separation | Pulling away of the tread from the tire carcass |
| Treadwear indicators (TWI) | The projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread |
| Wheel-holding fixture | The fixture used to hold the wheel and tire assembly securely during testing |

*: Table 1 — Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities

| Designated seating capacity, Number of occupants | Vehicle normal load, Number of occupants | Occupant distribution in a normally loaded vehicle |
|---|---|---|
| 2 through 4 | 2 | 2 in front |
| 5 through 10 | 3 | 2 in front, 1 in second seat |
| 11 through 15 | 5 | 2 in front, 1 in second seat, 1 in third seat, 1 in fourth seat |
| 16 through 20 | 7 | 2 in front, 2 in second seat, 2 in third seat, 1 in fourth seat |

# Customizable features

**Your vehicle includes a variety of electronic features that can be personalized to your preferences. Programming these preferences requires specialized equipment and may be performed by an authorized Lexus dealership.**

Some function settings are changed simultaneously with other functions being customized. Contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

| Item | Function | Default setting | Customized setting |
|---|---|---|---|
| Smart access system with push-button start (→P. 29) | Smart access system with push-button start | ON | OFF |
| | Operation signal (Emergency flashers) | ON | OFF |
| | Operation signal (Buzzer) | ON | OFF |

| Item | Function | Default setting | Customized setting |
|---|---|---|---|
| Wireless remote control (→P. 41) | Unlocking operation | Driver's door unlocked in 1-step, all doors unlocked in 2-step | All doors unlocked in 1-step |
| | Time elapsed before automatic door lock function is activated if door is not opened after being unlocked | 60 seconds | OFF |
| | | | 30 seconds |
| | | | 120 seconds |
| | Operation signal (Emergency flashers) | ON | OFF |
| | Operation signal (Buzzer) | ON | OFF |
| | Trunk unlocking function | ON | OFF |
| | Trunk unlocking operation | Push and hold | Push twice |
| | | | One short push |
| | Panic function | ON | OFF |
| | Buzzer sounds when pushing with any door not closed | ON | OFF |

| Item | Function | Default setting | Customized setting |
|---|---|---|---|
| Door lock (→P. 43) | Unlocking using a key | Driver's door unlocked in 1-step, all doors unlocked in 2-step | All doors unlocked in 1-step |
| | Speed-detecting automatic door lock function | OFF | ON |
| | Opening driver's door unlocks all doors | OFF | ON |
| | Shifting the shift lever to "P" unlocks all doors | ON | OFF |
| | Shifting the shift lever to position other than "P" locks all doors | ON | OFF |
| Power windows (→P. 75) | Linked door key operation | Open and close | Open only |
| | | | Close only |
| | Wireless remote control linked operation | OFF | Open |

| Item | Function | Default setting | Customized setting |
|---|---|---|---|
| Moon roof (→P. 78) | Linked door key operation | Open and close | Open only |
| | | | Close only |
| | Linked operation of components when door key is used | Slide only | Tilt only |
| | Wireless remote control linked operation*1 | OFF | Open |
| | Linked operation of components when wireless remote control used*1 | OFF | Slide only |
| | | | Tilt only |
| Automatic light control system (→P. 157) | Light sensor sensitivity | Level 3 | Levels 1 to 5 |
| | Time elapsed before headlights automatically turn off after doors are closed | 30 seconds | 0 seconds |
| | | | 60 seconds |
| | | | 90 seconds |
| | Daytime running light | ON | OFF*2 |

*1: This function cannot be customized unless power window operation using the wireless remote control is enabled.

*2: Vehicles sold outside Canada

| Item | Function | Default setting | Customized setting |
|---|---|---|---|
| Windshield wipers and washer (→P. 161) | Switching operation when the vehicle is stationary | ON | OFF |
| | Drip prevention function | ON | OFF |
| | Time elapsed before the drip prevention function operates | Variable depending on the vehicle speed | 3 seconds |
| Illumination (→P. 382) | Time elapsed before lights turn off | 15 seconds | 7.5 seconds |
| | | | 30 seconds |
| | Operation when the doors are unlocked | ON | OFF |
| | Operation after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch turned OFF | ON | OFF |
| | Front/rear personal lights turned on when a door is opened | Corresponding light only | All lights |
| | | | OFF |
| | Foot lights | ON | OFF |
| | Shift lever light | ON | OFF |
| | Outer foot light | ON | OFF |
| | Front/rear personal lights turned on when the interior lights are switched "ON" | ON | OFF |
| Rear sunshade (→P. 403) | Time elapsed before the reverse operation feature activates | 0.7 seconds | 0 seconds |
| | | | 0.9 seconds |
| | | | 1.2 seconds |

## Multi-information display (→P. 154)

| Country | Available language |
|---|---|
| Canada | English and French |

# Items to initialize

**The following items must be initialized for normal system operation in cases such as after the battery is reconnected, or maintenance is performed on the vehicle.**

| Item | When to initialize | Reference |
|---|---|---|
| Intuitive parking assist | • After reconnecting or changing the battery<br>• After changing a fuse | P. 552 |
| Engine oil maintenance data | • After changing engine oil | P. 453 |
| Tire pressure warning system | • When changing the tire inflation pressure by changing traveling speed or load weight, etc.<br>• When changing the tire size. | P. 465 |

# For owners 7

Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners..... 626
Seat belt instructions for Canadian owners (in French)..... 627

# Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying the Lexus Division of Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc. (Toll-free: 1-800-25-LEXUS).

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or the Lexus Division of Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to *http://www.safercar.gov*; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Ave, S.E., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from *http://www.safercar.gov*.

**The following is a French explanation of seat belt instructions extracted from the seat belt section in this manual.**

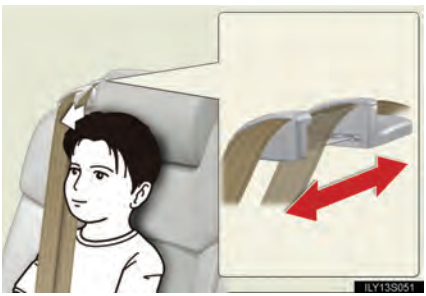
See the seat belt section for more detailed seat belt instructions in English.

## Utilisation adéquate des ceintures de sécurité




1. Tirez sur la ceinture épaulière jusqu'à ce qu'elle recouvre entièrement l'épaule; elle ne doit cependant pas toucher le cou ni glisser de l'épaule.
2. Placez la ceinture abdominale le plus bas possible sur les hanches.
3. Réglez la position du dossier du siège. Tenez-vous assis dans le fond du siège, le dos droit.
4. Ne vrillez pas la ceinture de sécurité.

## Guide des ceintures de sécurité (sièges latéraux arrière)




Si la ceinture épaulière est trop près du cou d'une personne, glissez le guide de la ceinture vers l'avant.

## Entretien et soin

### Ceintures de sécurité

Avec un tissu ou une éponge, nettoyez à l'aide d'un savon doux et de l'eau tiède. Vérifiez aussi les ceintures régulièrement pour vous assurer qu'elles ne présentent pas d'usure excessive, d'effilochage ou de coupures.

**⚠ ATTENTION**

**Dommages et usure de la ceinture de sécurité**

Vérifiez périodiquement le système de ceintures de sécurité. Assurez-vous qu'il n'y a pas de coupures, d'effilochures ni de pièces desserrées. N'utilisez pas une ceinture de sécurité endommagée avant qu'elle soit remplacée. Les ceintures de sécurité endommagées ne peuvent pas protéger les occupants contre les blessures.

# Index

**Abbreviation list ..... 630**

**Alphabetical index..... 632**

**What to do if... ..... 642**

For details of equipment related to the navigation system, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

# Abbreviation/Acronym list

| ABBREVIATIONS | MEANING |
|---|---|
| A/C | Air Conditioning |
| ABS | Anti-Lock Brake System |
| AFS | Adaptive Front-lighting System |
| ALR | Automatic Locking Retractor |
| CRS | Child Restraint System |
| DISP | Display |
| ECU | Electronic Control Unit |
| EDR | Event Data Recorder |
| ELR | Emergency Locking Retractor |
| Enhanced VSC | Enhanced Vehicle Stability Control |
| EPS | Electric Power Steering |
| GAWR | Gross Axle Weight Ratings |
| GPS | Global Positioning System |
| I/M | Emission inspection and maintenance |
| INFO | Information |
| LATCH | Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children |
| LED | Light Emitting Diode |
| MMT | Methylcy clopentadienyl Manganese Tricarbonyl |
| M + S | Mud and Snow |
| MTBE | Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether |
| OBD | On Board Diagnostics |

| ABBREVIATIONS | MEANING |
|---|---|
| PCS | Pre-Collision System |
| SRS | Supplemental Restraint System |
| TIN | Tire Identification Number |
| TPMS | Tire Pressure Monitoring (Warning) System |
| TRAC | Traction Control |
| VDIM | Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Management |
| VGRS | Variable Gear Ratio Steering |
| VIN | Vehicle Identification Number |

# Alphabetical index


A

A/C ..... 246
ABS ..... 200
ACCESSORY mode ..... 136
Active stabilizer suspension system ..... 200
Adaptive variable suspension system ..... 199
Air conditioning system
- Air conditioning filter ..... 479
- Automatic air conditioning system ..... 246

Airbags
- Airbag operating conditions ..... 96
- Airbag precautions for your child ..... 100
- Airbag warning light ..... 535
- Curtain shield airbag precautions ..... 103
- General airbag precautions ..... 100
- Locations of airbags ..... 93
- Modification and disposal of airbags ..... 104
- Proper driving posture ..... 91
- Side airbag precautions ..... 100
- Side and curtain shield airbags operating conditions ..... 96
- SRS airbags ..... 93

Alarm ..... 87
Antenna ..... 266
Anti-lock brake system ..... 200
Armrest ..... 402
Ashtrays ..... 397
Audio input ..... 328
Audio system
- Antenna ..... 266
- Audio input ..... 328
- AUX port ..... 328
- Bluetooth® audio ..... 308
- CD player/changer ..... 269
- DVD information ..... 297
- DVD player/changer ..... 280
- DVD video/audio ..... 280
- iPod® ..... 316
- MP3/WMA disc ..... 276
- Optimal use ..... 326
- Portable music player ..... 328
- Radio ..... 260
- Steering switches ..... 329
- USB memory ..... 316
- Video CD ..... 294

Automatic headlight leveling system ..... 159
Automatic light control system ..... 157
Automatic transmission
- If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P" ..... 569
- Mode select switch ..... 140
- S mode ..... 141

AUX port ..... 328

B
Back-up lights
Wattage ... 600
Battery
12 volt battery ... 459
Checking ... 459
If the 12 volt battery is discharged ... 574
Preparing and checking before winter ... 219
Bluetooth® audio ... 308
Bluetooth® phone ... 332
Brake
Fluid ... 457
Parking brake ... 145
Brake assist ... 200

C
Care
Exterior ... 430
Interior ... 433
Seat belts ... 434
Cargo capacity ... 214
Cargo hooks ... 408
CD player/changer ... 269
Chains ... 220
Child-protectors ... 44
Child restraint system
Definition ... 110
Installation ... 114
Installing CRS with lower anchors ... 115
Installing CRS with seatbelts ... 117
Installing CRS with top straps ... 121
Child safety
Airbag precautions ... 100
Battery precautions ... 460, 577
Child restraint system ... 110
Child-protectors ... 44
How your child should wear the seatbelt ... 66
Installing child restraints ... 114
Moon roof precautions ... 81
Power window lock switch ... 75
Power window precautions ... 75
Removed electronic key battery precautions ... 483
Seat belt comfort guide ... 64
Seat belt precautions ... 67
Seat heater precautions ... 401
Trunk precautions ... 50
Cigarette lighter ... 398
Cleaning
Exterior ... 430
Interior ... 433
Seat belts ... 434
Clock ... 395
Coin holder ... 390
Compass ... 417
Condenser ... 457
Console box ... 388
Cooling system
Engine overheating ... 578
Cruise control
Cruise control ... 167
Dynamic radar cruise control ... 171
Cup holders ... 391
Curtain shield airbags ... 93
Customizable features ... 618

D
Daytime running light system ..... 158
Defogger
Rear window ..... 255
Side mirror ..... 255
Dimension ..... 586
Dinghy towing ..... 225
Display
Multi-information display ..... 154
Touch screen ..... 228
Trip information ..... 155
Warning message ..... 543
Do-it-yourself maintenance ..... 442
Door courtesy lights ..... 382
Door pocket ..... 392
Doors
Door lock ..... 29, 41, 43
Rear door child protector ..... 44
Driver's seat belt reminder light ..... 536
Driver's seat position memory ..... 55
Driving
Correct posture ..... 91
Procedures ..... 126
DVD player/changer ..... 280

E
Electric power steering ..... 200
Electronic key
If the electronic key does not operate properly ..... 571
Replacing battery ..... 482
Emergency, in case of
If a warning light turns on ..... 534
If a warning message is displayed ..... 543
If the electronic key does not operate properly ..... 571
If the engine will not start ..... 568
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P" ..... 569
If the 12 volt battery is discharged ..... 574
If you have a flat tire ..... 556, 566
If you lose your keys ..... 570
If you think something is wrong ..... 530
If your vehicle becomes stuck ..... 581
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency ..... 583
If your vehicle needs to be towed ..... 520
If your vehicle overheats ..... 578
Engine
ACCESSORY mode ..... 136
Compartment ..... 448
Engine (ignition) switch ..... 135
Hood ..... 445
How to start the engine ..... 135
If the engine will not start ..... 568
Overheating ..... 578
Engine compartment cover ..... 450
Engine coolant temperature gauge ..... 147

Engine coolant
Capacity ..... 594
Checking ..... 455
Preparing and checking before winter ..... 219
Engine oil
Capacity ..... 590
Checking ..... 451
Preparing and checking before winter ..... 219
Engine oil maintenance data ..... 453
Engine (ignition) switch ..... 135
Enhanced vehicle stability control ..... 200
Event data recorder ..... 532

F
First-aid kit storage belt ..... 408
Floor mats ..... 406
Fluid
Brake ..... 457
Washer ..... 462
Fog lights
Switch ..... 160
Wattage ..... 600
Foot light ..... 382
Front passenger occupant classification system ..... 105
Front passenger's seat belt reminder light ..... 537
Front seats
Adjustment ..... 53
Driver's seat position memory ..... 55
Front turn signal lights
Wattage ..... 600
Fuel
Capacity ..... 589
Fuel gauge ..... 147
Gas station information ..... 648
Information ..... 601
Refueling ..... 82
Fuel door ..... 82
Fuel filler door ..... 82
Fuses ..... 484

G
Garage door opener ..... 411
Gas station information ..... 648
Gauges ..... 147
Glove box ..... 387

H
Hands-free system (for cellular phone) ..... 332
Head restraints ..... 60
Headlight aim ..... 509
Headlight cleaner ..... 166
Headlights
Adaptive front lighting system ..... 158
Discharge headlights precautions ..... 518
Replacing light bulbs ..... 512
Switch ..... 157
Wattage ..... 600
Heaters
Seat heaters ..... 400
Side mirror ..... 255
Hill-start assist control ..... 200
Hood ..... 445
Hooks
Cargo ..... 408
Shopping bag ..... 408
Horn ..... 146

I
Identification
Engine ..... 588
Vehicle ..... 587
Ignition switch
Engine switch ..... 135
Illuminated entry system ..... 382
I/M test ..... 441
Immobilizer system ..... 85
Indicator lights ..... 151
Initialization
Items to initialize ..... 624
Inside rear view mirror ..... 71
Instrument panel light control ..... 148
Interior lights
Interior lights ..... 383
Wattage ..... 600
Intuitive parking assist ..... 183

J
Jack
Positioning a floor jack ..... 446
Vehicle-equipped jack ..... 556
Jack handle ..... 556

K
Keyless entry ..... 41
Keys
Engine (ignition) switch ..... 135
If the electronic key does not operate properly ..... 571
If you lose your keys ..... 570
Key number plate ..... 24
Keys ..... 24
Mechanical key ..... 25
Wireless remote control key ..... 41

L
Lexus Link System ..... 421
Light bulbs
Replacing ..... 512
Wattage ..... 600
Light sensitive optitron meter ..... 149
Lights
Fog light switch ..... 160
Headlights switch ..... 157
Interior lights list ..... 382
Replacing light bulbs ..... 512
Turn signal lever ..... 144
Vanity lights ..... 394
Wattage ..... 600

M
Maintenance
Do-it-yourself maintenance ..... 442
General maintenance ..... 438
Maintenance data ..... 586
Maintenance requirements ..... 436
Meter
Instrument panel light control ..... 148
Meters ..... 147
Micro dust and pollen filter ..... 251
Mirrors
Inside rear view mirror ..... 71
Side mirror heater ..... 255
Side mirrors ..... 73
Vanity mirrors ..... 394
Moon roof ..... 78
MP3 disc ..... 276
Multi-information display ..... 154

N

Noise from under the vehicle ..... 18

O

Odometer ..... 147
Oil
- Engine oil ..... 451

Opener
- Fuel filler door ..... 82
- Hood ..... 445
- Trunk ..... 48

Outer foot lights ..... 382
Outside rear view mirrors
- Adjusting and folding ..... 73
- Mirror position memory ..... 55

Outside temperature display ..... 156, 396
Overhead console ..... 389
Overheating, Engine ..... 578

P

Parking brake ..... 145
Parking lights
- Replacing light bulbs ..... 512
- Switch ..... 157
- Wattage ..... 600

Personal lights ..... 384
Portable music player ..... 328
Power outlet ..... 399
Power windows ..... 75
Pre-collision system ..... 207

R

Radar cruise control ..... 171
Radiator ..... 457
Radio ..... 260
Radio data system ..... 262
Rear sunshade ..... 403
Rear turn signal lights
- Replacing light bulbs ..... 512
- Wattage ..... 600

Rear view monitor system ..... 196
Rear window defogger ..... 255
Replacing
- Electronic key battery ..... 482
- Fuses ..... 484
- Light bulbs ..... 512

Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners ..... 626

S

Safety Connect ..... 421
Seat belts
- Adjusting the seat belt ..... 63
- Automatic locking retractor ..... 66
- Child restraint system installation ..... 114
- Cleaning and maintaining the seat belts ..... 434
- Emergency locking retractor ..... 66
- How to wear your seat belt ..... 63
- How your child should wear the seat belt ..... 66
- Pre-collision seat belts ..... 65
- Pregnant women, proper seat belt use ..... 66
- Reminder light ..... 536
- Seat belt extenders ..... 67
- Seat belt pretensioners ..... 65

Seat heaters/ventilators....401
Seating capacity....218
Seats
Adjustment....53
Adjustment precautions....54
Child seats/child restraint system installation....114
Cleaning....433
Driver's seat position memory....55
Head restraint....60
Properly sitting in the seat....91
Seat heaters....400
Service reminder indicators....151
Shift lever
Automatic transmission....139
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P"....569
Shift lock system....569
Shopping bag hooks....408
Side airbags....93
Side marker lights
Switch....157
Side mirror
Adjusting and folding....73
Mirror position memory....55
Smart access system with push-button start
Antenna location....31
Entry function....29
Starting the engine....135
Spare tire
Inflation pressure....598
Storage location....557
Spark plug....594
Specifications....586
Speedometer....147
Steering wheel
Adjustment....70
Audio switches....329
Steering wheel position memory....55
Storage compartment....390
Storage feature....385
Stuck
If your vehicle becomes stuck....581
Sun visors....393
Switch
"ENGINE START STOP" switch....135
Fog light switch....160
Ignition switch....135
Light switches....157
Mode select switch....140
Power door lock switch....43
Power window switch....75
Tire pressure warning reset switch....464
Tire pressure warning select switch....466
Window lock switch....75
Wipers and washer switch....161

T

Tachometer....147
Tail lights
Switch....157
Theft deterrent system
Alarm....87
Immobilizer system....85
Theft prevention labels....90
Tire inflation pressure....598

Tire information
Glossary ..... 611
Size ..... 607
Tire identification number ..... 606
Uniform Tire Quality Grading ..... 609
Tires
Chains ..... 220
Checking ..... 463
Compact spare tire ..... 557
If you have a flat tire ..... 556, 566
Inflation pressure ..... 598
Information ..... 604
Replacing ..... 556
Rotating tires ..... 463
Size ..... 598
Snow tires ..... 222
Tire pressure warning system ..... 463
Tools ..... 556
Total load capacity ..... 218
Touch screen ..... 228
Towing
Dinghy towing ..... 225
Emergency towing ..... 522
Trailer towing ..... 224
Traction control ..... 200
Trip meter ..... 147
Trunk
Opener ..... 48
Trunk light ..... 49
Wattage ..... 600
Turn signal lights
Replacing light bulbs ..... 512
Switch ..... 144
Wattage ..... 600

V
Vanity lights
Vanity lights ..... 394
Wattage ..... 600
Vanity mirrors ..... 394
Variable gear ratio steering ..... 201
Vehicle dynamics integrated management ..... 201
Vehicle identification number ..... 587
Vehicle load limits ..... 218
Ventilators ..... 400

W
Warning buzzers
Brake system ..... 534
Downshifting ..... 142
Open door ..... 536
Seat belt reminder ..... 536
Warning lights
Anti-lock brake system ..... 535
Brake system ..... 534
Charging system ..... 534
Electric power steering warning light ..... 535
Electronically controlled brake system ..... 535
Low fuel level ..... 536
Malfunction indicator lamp ..... 535
Master warning light ..... 537
Open door ..... 536
Pre-collision system ..... 535
Seat belt reminder light ..... 536
SRS airbags ..... 535
Tire pressure warning light ..... 537

Warning messages
Anti-lock brake system....535
Brake assist....535
Charging system....534
Dynamic radar cruise control....546
Engine oil level....549
Engine oil maintenance....550
Engine oil pressure....543
Headlight....544
Hood....548
Intuitive parking assist....545, 550, 552
Moon roof....549
Open door....548
Parking brake....549
Pre-collision system....545, 550
Rear lights system....544
Smart access system with push-button start....553
Steering lock....535, 544, 555
Trunk....549
VGRS....547
Washer fluid....549
Washer
Checking....462
Preparing and checking before winter....219
Switch....161
Washing and waxing....430
Weight
Cargo capacity....214
Load limits....218
Weight....586
Wheels....477
Window glasses....43
Window lock switch....43
Windows
Power windows....75
Rear window defogger....255
Washer....161
Windshield wipers
Position....221
Windshield wipers....161
Windshield wiper de-icer....256
Winter driving tips....219
Wireless remote control key
Locking/Unlocking....41
Replacing the battery....482
WMA disc....276

# What to do if...

| | | |
|---|---|---|
|  A tire punctures | P. 556/ 566 | If you have a flat tire |
|  The engine does not start | P. 85 | Immobilizer system |
| | P. 568 | If the engine will not start |
| | P. 574 | If the 12 volt battery is discharged |
|  The shift lever cannot be moved out | P. 569 | If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P" |
|  The engine coolant temperature gauge enters the red zone | P. 578 | If your vehicle overheats |
|  Steam can be seen coming from under the hood | | |
|  The key is lost | P. 570 | If you lose your keys |
|  The 12 volt battery runs out | P. 574 | If the 12 volt battery is discharged |
|  The doors cannot be locked | P. 43 | Doors |
|  The horn begins to sound | P. 87 | Alarm |
|  The vehicle is stuck in mud or sand | P. 581 | If the vehicle becomes stuck |

The warning light or indicator light comes on

P. 534 If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds...



■Warning lights

Brake system warning light
or
P. 534

ABS warning light
or
P. 535

ECB* warning light
P. 535

Low fuel level warning light
P. 536

SRS warning light
P. 535

Open door warning light
P. 536

Charging system warning light
P. 534

Malfunction indicator lamp
or
P. 535

Driver's seat belt reminder light
P. 536

Front passenger's seat belt reminder light
P. 537

Tire pressure warning light
P. 537

Electric power steering warning light
P. 535

Pre-collision system warning light
P. 535

Slip indicator
P. 536

Master warning light
P. 537

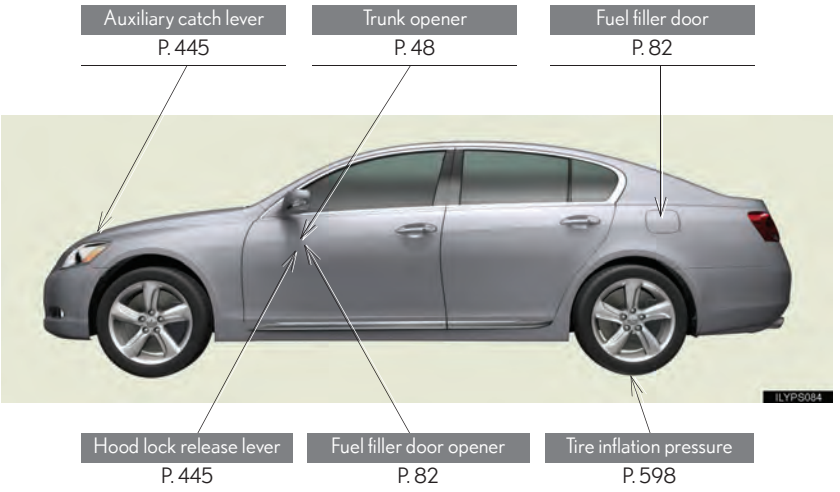
*: Electronically Controlled Brake System




The warning message is displayed

P. 543 If a warning message is displayed

## GAS STATION INFORMATION




| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Fuel tank capacity | 18.7 gal. (71 L, 15.6 Imp.gal.) | | |
| Fuel type | Premium unleaded gasoline only | | P. 83, 589 |
| Cold tire inflation pressure | | | P. 598 |
| Engine oil capacity (Drain and refill) | | | qt. (L, Imp.qt.) |
| | GS460 | GS350 (2WD) | GS350 (4WD) |
| With filter | 9.1 (8.6, 7.6) | 6.6 (6.3, 5.5) | 6.7 (6.4, 5.6) |
| Without filter | 8.9 (8.4, 7.4) | 6.2 (5.9, 5.2) | 6.3 (6.0, 5.3) |
| Engine oil type | "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent<br>Oil grade: ILSAC multigrade engine oil | | P. 590 |



Owner's Manual:
Publication No. OM30C80U
Part No. 01999-30C80
Printed in Japan 01-1003-00 Z
GS 460 / GS 350（北米U）